DESY-07-154
CERN-PH-TH/2008-048

DESY-07-154, CERN-PH-TH/2008-048

Phases Of $\mathcal{N} = 2$ Theories In $1 + 1$ Dimensions With Boundary

Manfred Herbst,[u] Kentaro Hori[v] and David Page[v]

[u] *Theory Division, Department of Physics, CERN, CH–1211 Geneva 23, Switzerland*

[v] *Department of Physics, University of Toronto, 60 St. George Street, Toronto, Ontario, M5S 1A7, Canada*

arXiv:0803.2045v1 [hep-th] 14 Mar 2008

Abstract

We study B-type D-branes in linear sigma models with Abelian gauge groups. The most important finding is the grade restriction rule. It classifies representations of the gauge group on the Chan-Paton factor, which can be used to define a family of D-branes over a region of the Kähler moduli space that connects special points of different character. As an application, we find a precise, transparent relation between D-branes in various geometric phases as well as free orbifold and Landau-Ginzburg points. The result reproduces and unifies many of the earlier mathematical results on equivalences of D-brane categories, including the McKay correspondence and Orlov's construction.

March, 2008

Contents

1 Introduction **1**

1.1 A guide to read the paper 5

2 D-branes In $\mathcal{N} = 2$ Theories **8**

2.1 $\mathcal{N} = 1$ Supersymmetric Interactions 8

2.1.1 Brane-Antibrane System And Open String Tachyons 9

2.2 Non-Linear Sigma Models: Complex Of Vector Bundles 12

2.2.1 Condition Of $\mathcal{N} = 2$ Supersymmetry 12

2.2.2 R-Symmetry 16

2.2.3 Chiral Sector 18

2.3 Orbifolds 27

2.4 Landau-Ginzburg Models: Matrix Factorizations 29

2.4.1 Landau-Ginzburg Orbifold 34

3 Renormalization Group Flows **37**

3.1 D-Term Deformations And Brane-Antibrane Annihilation 38

3.1.1 Binding D-Branes: Cone Construction 43

3.1.2 D-Isomorphisms Versus Quasi-Isomorphisms 44

3.2 Lower-Dimesional Branes As Complexes Of Vector Bundles 48

3.3 The Landau-Ginzburg Case 51

3.4 Knörrer Periodicity 52

3.5 D-brane Transport On The Kähler Moduli Space 57

4 Linear Sigma Models **61**

4.1 The Lagrangian 61

4.2 Phases 62

4.3 Singularity 65

4.4 Examples . . . 67
4.5 Phase Boundary And Deleted Sets . . . 74

5 D-branes In Linear Sigma Models 75

5.1 The Bulk Action And Boundary Counter Terms . . . 75
5.2 The Wilson Line . . . 76
5.3 Interaction Of Wilson Lines . . . 78
5.4 Matrix Factorizations . . . 81
5.5 A First Look At The Boundary Condition . . . 83
5.6 The Ultra-Violet Limit: $e = 0$ . . . 85

6 The Vacuum Energy/Charge On The Interval 88

6.1 The System At Large σ . . . 88
6.2 Mode Expansions . . . 89
6.2.1 Ramond Sector . . . 90
6.2.2 Neveu-Schwarz Sector . . . 91
6.3 The Ground State . . . 96
6.4 The Energy . . . 97
6.4.1 Total Energy . . . 98
6.4.2 Energy Density . . . 101
6.5 The Charge . . . 107
6.6 Note On Supersymmetry . . . 110
6.7 The Case Of The Half-Space . . . 111
6.8 Cases With Several Matters . . . 114
6.9 Gauge Dynamics . . . 115
6.10 Mass From Superpotential . . . 121
6.10.1 The Ground State . . . 123
6.10.2 $L \to \infty$ Limit . . . 127

6.10.3 $L \to 0$ Limit 128

7 The Grade Restriction Rule **130**

7.1 A-branes In LG-Models 130

7.2 Asymptotic Condition In The Coulomb Branch 136

7.3 Rules Of D-Brane Transport 138

7.3.1 $U(1)$ Gauge Group —The Grade Restriction 139

7.3.2 Higher Rank Gauge Group — The Band Restriction 141

7.4 The Nature Of The Rule 142

7.5 The Full Boundary Conditions 144

8 Non-Compact Models **147**

8.1 Low Energy Boundary Conditions 147

8.2 Crossing Phase Boundaries By Grade (Band) Restriction Rule 153

8.3 Monodromies 158

8.4 More Examples 166

8.4.1 Flop Transition Of The Resolved Conifold 166

8.4.2 McKay Correspondence 170

8.5 Center Of Multiparameter Moduli Space 181

9 Some Mathematical Background **185**

9.1 $\mathbf{C}^\times$ Action On $\mathbf{C}^n$ — Grading Of The Coordinate Ring 186

9.2 Generalization To Toric Manifolds 188

9.3 Complexes 189

9.4 Graded Case 192

9.5 Grade Restriction 195

9.6 Multi-Graded Case 198

9.7 Generalizations 199

10 Compact Models **200**

10.1 The D-Brane Transport 200

10.2 Landau-Ginzburg Orbifold Point 207

10.2.1 The $U(1)$ Theory 207

10.2.2 General Case 211

10.3 Geometric Phase 213

10.3.1 $MF_W(X) \to D(M)$ 213

10.3.2 $D(M) \longrightarrow MF_W(X)$ 220

10.4 CY/LG Correspondence — More Examples 225

10.4.1 Fermat Quintic 226

10.4.2 Two-Parameter Model 236

10.5 Monodromy 240

10.6 Relation To Orlov's Functors 245

A Supersymmetry **253**

A.1 Non-Linear Sigma Models And Landau-Ginzburg Models 253

A.2 Linear Sigma Model 255

Notation

The time coordinate of the worldsheet is denoted $t = s^0$ and the space coordinate is $s = s^1$, except in Section 6 where we use x for the space coordinate. Light cone coordinates are $s^\pm = t \pm s = s^0 \pm s^1$ and their derivatives are $\partial_\pm = \frac{1}{2}(\partial_0 \pm \partial_1)$. The worldsheet itself is denoted as $\mathbb{S}$. Supercharges are denoted by bold face $\mathbf{Q}$. For example, $(2,2)$ generators are $\mathbf{Q}_\pm$, $\overline{\mathbf{Q}}_\pm$. On the other hand, Q is used for the holomorphic part of an open string tachyon profile.

1 Introduction

D-branes in Calabi-Yau manifolds play central roles in string theory and related fields. They can be used to construct and study models of particle physics and cosmology with spontaneously broken or unbroken $\mathcal{N} = 1$ supersymmetry. They also determine extremal black holes in four-dimensional $\mathcal{N} = 2$ supergravity or BPS states in $\mathcal{N} = 2$ field theory. A lot of efforts have been devoted to this subject in the past twelve years. Most are done in large volume regimes where the α' corrections are small or negligible and the ten-dimensional supergravity can be used. There are also studies of D-branes at special non-geometric backgrounds with exactly solvable worldsheet conformal field theories, such as Gepner models and free orbifolds. Furthermore, some works probe singular points of the moduli space where the worldsheet description breaks down. Although there are still many things to be understood, a body of solid knowledge is accumulating at special points of the moduli space where convenient descriptions of the theory are available.

A natural and important problem is to connect the information at the special points and to obtain a global picture of D-branes over the entire moduli space of backgrounds. For example, this will be necessary to understand the totality of $\mathcal{N} = 1$ vacua. Some quantities are protected from quantum corrections and are either constant or holomorphic as functions of the moduli fields. For those, we may be able to glue together the information at special points trivially or by analytic continuation. Ramond-Ramond (RR) charges of D-branes are good examples — the connection between large volume regimes and Gepner points was successfully found in the seminal paper [1]. However, most quantities do not possess such properties. We would like to have at least some hint to study the vast unexplored regions.

For closed strings, linear sigma models [2] provide an ultra-violet description of the worldsheet theories over the entire moduli space in a large class of examples. They were used to find a simple and global picture of the stringy moduli space that had been available only via mirror symmetry, and they had also been used to derive mirror symmetry itself. A natural idea is to use them also to study D-branes. The main goal of the present paper is to construct an ultra-violet description of the worldsheet theory with boundary, using linear sigma models, that is valid in regions of the moduli space that encompass various special points of different character. Just as in the bulk theories, we would like to have a workable method of construction which is very explicit and transparent.

To be precise our focus will be on the description of B-type D-branes over the bulk of the Kähler moduli space. The moduli space of $(2, 2)$ superconformal field theories is

a product of two spaces, $\mathfrak{M}_C$ and $\mathfrak{M}_K$, which are referred to as the "complex structure moduli space" and the "Kähler moduli space" according to their interpretation in large volume regimes. It is the Kähler moduli space that has special points with various different descriptions. Relevant D-branes are those preserving a half of the $(2,2)$ supersymmetry, and there are two types: A-branes and B-branes. In a large volume regime, A-branes are wrapped on Lagrangian submanifolds and B-branes are wrapped on complex submanifolds. They have chiral sectors that are protected from renormalization. The chiral sector of B-branes depends holomorphically on $\mathfrak{M}_C$ and is invariant under deformations in $\mathfrak{M}_K$. Correspondingly, the tree-level spacetime superpotential depends holomorphically on the complex structure moduli fields but is independent of the Kähler moduli fields. Note that this does not mean that B-branes do not depend at all on $\mathfrak{M}_K$. The spacetime D-term potential and stability of the branes depend primarily on the Kähler moduli. These facts make it feasible and yet interesting to study B-branes over the Kähler moduli space.

Linear sigma models are a simple class of (2,2) supersymmetric gauge theories. In this paper, we only consider models with Abelian gauge groups. Fayet-Iliopoulos (FI) parameters enter into the worldsheet D-term equations and determine the pattern of gauge symmetry breaking and massless fields. The pattern decomposes the space of FI parameters into domains called "phases". On a "phase boundary", there is a classical vacuum configuration with an unbroken continuous subgroup which is generically a $U(1)$. The quantum gauge theory also depends on the theta angles, which are interpreted as the background electric fields. The Kähler moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$ is thus spanned by the FI parameters as well as the theta angles.

A part of the data to specify a D-brane in a linear sigma model is the representation of the gauge group on the Chan-Paton space, that is, the charges of the Chan-Paton vectors. The most important result of the present paper is the *grade (or band) restriction rule*. It provides the necessary and sufficient condition so that a "parallel family" of D-branes can be defined over a region of the moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$ which covers two adjacent phases and their phase boundary. The condition is on the Chan-Paton charges of the brane with respect to the unbroken $U(1)$ subgroup at the phase boundary, and goes as follows. Let $\mathbb{S}$ be the sum of all positive charges under that $U(1)$ of the bulk matter fields. Then the condition on the Chan-Paton charge q is that

$$-\frac{\mathbb{S}}{2} < \frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q < \frac{\mathbb{S}}{2} \tag{1.1}$$

for any value of θ at the phase boundary in the region of $\mathfrak{M}_K$ under consideration.

The present work is strongly motivated by recent developments in mathematics. The D-brane category, which has the same information as the chiral sector of all possible

boundary interactions in a fixed bulk theory, provides active areas of research in algebraic geometry and symplectic geometry, after M. Kontsevich's homological mirror symmetry conjecture [3]. The category of B-branes in a large volume regime is the derived category of the target space, while in an orbifold theory it is the derived category of objects with orbifold group action. In a Landau-Ginzburg model it is the category of matrix factorizations of the superpotential. The categories of B-branes of bulk theories that are related by Kähler deformations must be equivalent, as a consequence of the invariance of the chiral sector. Mathematically, an equivalence of categories is given by a pair of maps of objects and morphisms with certain isomorphism conditions. Recently, such equivalences of D-brane categories were constructed. One example is the categorical version of McKay correspondence [4], that is, the equivalence of the derived category of a non-compact toric Calabi-Yau manifold and the derived category for the orbifold theory which sits at a different point of the same Kähler moduli space. Also, D. Orlov constructed equivalences between the derived category of the Calabi-Yau hypersurface defined by a polynomial and the category of matrix factorizations of the same polynomial [5]. A natural question is whether these equivalences are the ones relevant for physics. Our work grew out of an attempt to answer this question.

The organization of the rest of the paper is as follows.

In Section 2, we describe B-type D-branes in non-linear sigma models, Landau-Ginzburg models, and their orbifolds. We determine the condition of $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetry and $U(1)$ R-symmetry on the $\mathcal{N} = 1$ invariant boundary interactions given by Quillen's superconnections. This leads to complexes of vector bundles as the data of D-branes in non-linear sigma models and homogeneous matrix factorizations of the superpotential for Landau-Ginzburg models. We also study the chiral sector of each system and describe the corresponding D-brane category.

In Section 3, we look into D-term deformations and brane-antibrane annihilation, which are operations that do not change the low energy behaviour of the boundary interactions. We show that a quasi-isomorphism between complexes of vector bundles can be obtained by a chain of D-term deformations and brane-antibrane annihilation. This clarifies the relevance of quasi-isomorphisms in brane-antibrane systems, which was discussed earlier in [6] from the spacetime point of view. We also study relevant and marginal deformations of the bulk theory. We study what happens to D-branes when a pair of bulk fields with F-term mass are integrated out, and find the map of D-branes from the high energy theory to the low energy theory (we call it *Knörrer's map*). We end the section with the study of marginal Kähler deformations which is the main subject of this paper.

We determine the rule of D-brane transport along a path in the Kähler moduli space, and show that it defines the notion of a "flat connection" for the "bundle" of D-branes over $\mathfrak{M}_K$.

In Section 4, we review bulk linear sigma models and make some new observations that play important rôles later in the paper. In particular, we present a simple way to find the phase structure and the symmetry breaking patterns by plotting the charges of the fields in the space of FI parameters. We also find a simple relation of the symmetry breaking patterns between adjacent phases.

In Section 5, we classify $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetric boundary interactions in linear sigma models with $U(1)$ R-symmetry. (Earlier works on this subject can be found in [7–10].) We first introduce the Wilson line branes as the basic building blocks. Their interactions with the required symmetry are determined by gauge invariant and homogeneous matrix factorizations of the superpotential. In a system with vanishing superpotential, they are given by complexes of Wilson line branes. We also describe the chiral sector of the theory with zero gauge coupling.

In Section 6, we study the boundary contribution to the energy and charge density of the ground state of a class of matter systems. This is to find the low energy effective theory on the Coulomb branch of the linear sigma model. One of the most important findings is the presence of normalizable modes localized near the boundary, that become zero modes in a particular direction of the Coulomb branch. In such a direction, the effective theory in terms of vector multiplet fields becomes singular. We also digress to study, for later purpose, the vacuum energy and charge of the open string system in a massive Landau-Ginzburg model.

Section 7 is the main part in which we derive the grade restriction rule. The key is the Lagrangian boundary condition on the Coulomb branch. We first re-examine the condition for A-branes in Landau-Ginzburg models and find the condition that the boundary potential must be bounded below. This is then applied to the effective theory on the Coulomb branch. For a brane that violates the grade restriction rule, the Lagrangian submanifold must rotate as the phase boundary is crossed. It cannot avoid overlaping with a part of the singular line on which the effective description breaks down. We expect a non-trivial effect from such an overlap. On the other hand, for a brane satisfying the grade restriction rule, the Lagrangian submanifold is stable and nothing special happens on the Coulomb branch as the phase boundary is crossed.

In Section 8, we apply the grade restriction rule to models with vanishing superpotential. We first study the reduction of the linear sigma model branes to the low energy

theory. Worldsheet D-term equations give rise to a tachyon condensation pattern that depends on the respective phase in $\mathfrak{M}_K$. The change of the condensation pattern across phase boundaries fits perfectly with the grade restriction rule. As an application, we derive the monodromy along a closed loop in the Kähler moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$ that encircles a singular point. We find that the effect is to bind the brane that becomes massless at the singular point, as expected from the spacetime picture and mirror symmetry. We also demonstrate the power of our construction in several key examples, including the flop of the resolved conifold and McKay correspondence. We close the section with a comment on D-brane transport through the center of the moduli space where multiple phase boundaries meet.

Section 9 is a mathematical digression in which we introduce some important notions in plain words and prove some key facts used in the previous section. This also paves the way to discuss compact models in the next section where we need elaborate commutative algebra at some point. We make a number of mathematical statements that follow from our construction.

In Section 10, we apply the grade restriction rule to models with non-trivial superpotential. The problem of D-brane transport itself is equally simple as in the models without superpotential. An extra complication shows up when the superpotential gives mass to some of the bulk fields: we need to integrate them out to arrive at the low energy theory. To this end, we apply the Knörrer map developed in Section 3 to find the low energy description of the D-branes. We exhibit the D-brane transport in some examples, including the large volume images of Recknagel-Schomerus branes in the quintic and a two-parameter model. We also randomly pick some brane at the geometric regime and find its Landau-Ginzburg image. We discuss monodromy and again find that the effect is to bind a brane that becomes massless at the singular point. We end by showing the relation of our work to that of Orlov [5] in a class of models. We also include a review of relevant mathematical backgrounds [11, 12].

We include an appendix which summarizes the supersymmetry transformations of the bulk fields and the bulk Lagrangians, in non-linear sigma models, Landau-Ginzburg models and linear sigma models.

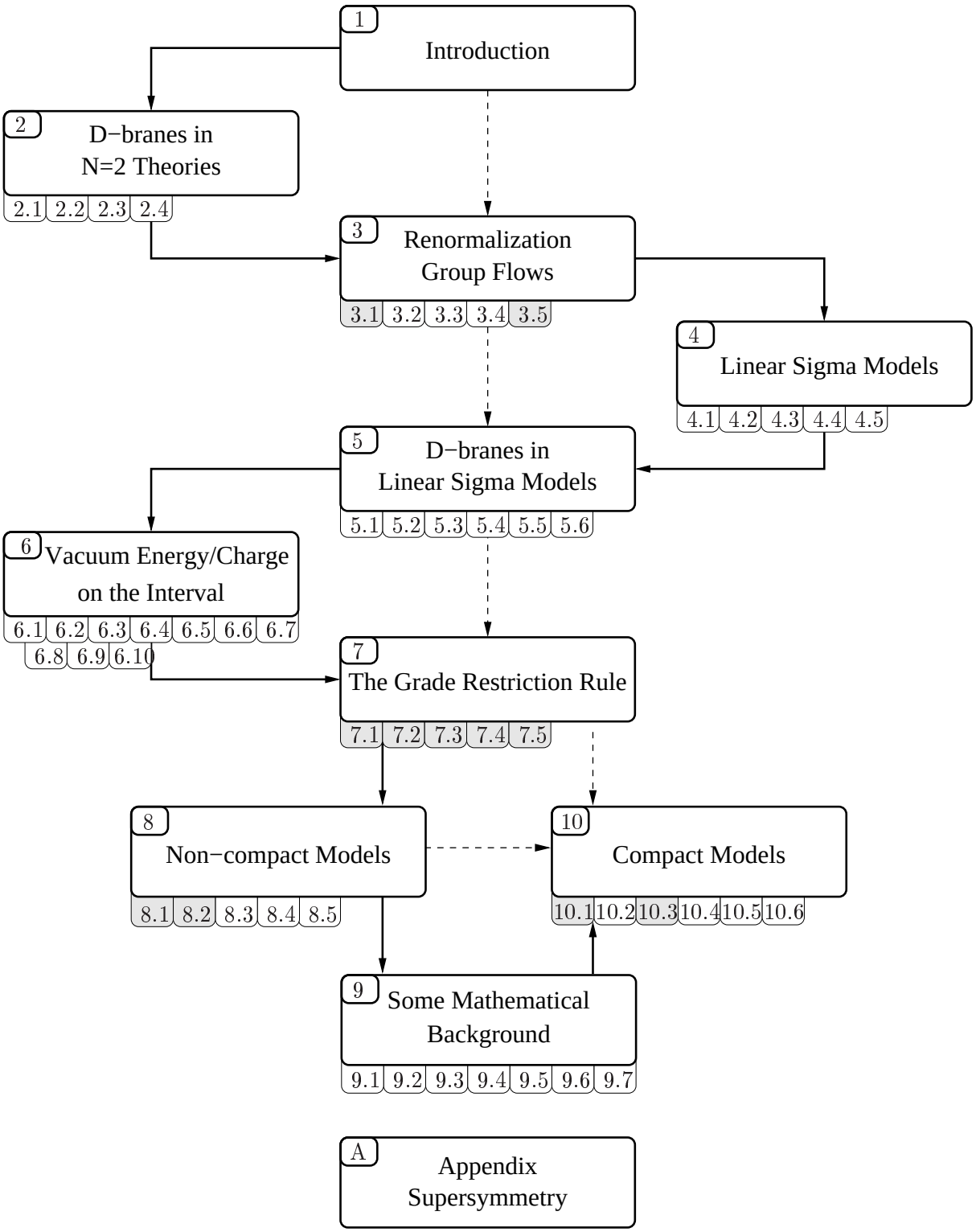
1.1 A guide to read the paper

We tried to write this work in a self-contained manner, and as a result it turned out quite comprehensive. In the following flow chart we therefore suggest various routes

through the paper. We believe though that the most comprehendible way of doing so is to read through all sections, indicated by the bold arrows.

Alternatively the reader may take short cuts along the dashed arrows without missing the most important conceptual points in the shaded subsections. Depending on interests the reader may proceed after Section 7 with D-branes in non-compact or compact models.

A remark on Section 6 is in order. It provides the basis for discussing the grade restriction rule in Section 7. Together these two sections are the heart of the paper. However, for getting the main conceptual ideas Section 6 may be left out in a first reading.


1 Introduction
2 D−branes in N=2 Theories
2.1 2.2 2.3 2.4
3 Renormalization Group Flows
3.1 3.2 3.3 3.4 3.5
4 Linear Sigma Models
4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5
5 D−branes in Linear Sigma Models
5.1 5.2 5.3 5.4 5.5 5.6
6 Vacuum Energy/Charge on the Interval
6.1 6.2 6.3 6.4 6.5 6.6 6.7
6.8 6.9 6.10
7 The Grade Restriction Rule
7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4 7.5
8 Non−compact Models
8.1 8.2 8.3 8.4 8.5
10 Compact Models
10.1 10.2 10.3 10.4 10.5 10.6
9 Some Mathematical Background
9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4 9.5 9.6 9.7
A Appendix Supersymmetry

2 D-branes In $\mathcal{N} = 2$ Theories

In this section, we study D-branes in various $(2, 2)$ supersymmetric field theories that preserve a diagonal $\mathcal{N} = 2$ supersymmetry. In Sections 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4, we describe D-branes in non-linear sigma models, in orbifolds and in Landau-Ginzburg models. We pay special attention to R-symmetry and the ground state sector. We start out in Section 2.1 with the construction of $\mathcal{N} = 1$ supersymmetric boundary Lagrangians based on open string tachyon profile, which will be used throughout this paper.

2.1 $\mathcal{N} = 1$ Supersymmetric Interactions

We first construct $\mathcal{N} = 1$ supersymmetric boundary interactions that are marginal or relevant. For simplicity, we consider a string propagating in flat Euclidean space $\mathbf{R}^n$, which is described by real scalar fields x^I and Majorana fermions $\psi^I_\pm$ $(I = 1, ..., n)$, with the Lagrangian density

$$\mathcal{L} = \sum_{I=1}^{n} \left(\frac{1}{2}(\partial_t x^I)^2 - \frac{1}{2}(\partial_s x^I)^2 + \frac{i}{2}\psi^I_-(\partial_t + \partial_s)\psi^I_- + \frac{i}{2}\psi^I_+(\partial_t - \partial_s)\psi^I_+ \right). \tag{2.1}$$

The system has $\mathcal{N} = (1, 1)$ supersymmetry — the action is invariant under the transformations $\delta x^I = i\epsilon^1_-\psi^I_+ - i\epsilon^1_+\psi^I_-$, and $\delta\psi^I_\pm = \mp\epsilon^1_\mp(\partial_t \pm \partial_s)x^I$. If formulated on the worldsheet with boundary, for instance on the strip $\mathbb{S} = [0, L] \times \mathbf{R}$, a diagonal $\mathcal{N} = 1$ subalgebra can be preserved when a suitable boundary term is added. In particular, the Lagrangian

$$L_{\text{bulk}} = \int_0^L \mathcal{L}\, \mathrm{d}s \; + \; \left[-\frac{i}{2}\sum_{I=1}^{n} \psi^I_+\psi^I_- \right]_0^L \tag{2.2}$$

is invariant under the variation with $\epsilon^1_- = -\epsilon^1_+ = \epsilon_1$:

$$\delta x^I = i\epsilon_1\psi^I, \quad \delta\psi^I = -2\epsilon_1\dot{x}^I, \quad \delta\widetilde{\psi}^I = -2\epsilon_1\partial_s x^I, \tag{2.3}$$

where $\psi^I = \psi^I_+ + \psi^I_-$ and $\widetilde{\psi}^I = \psi^I_+ - \psi^I_-$. The boundary term is needed so that L_{bulk} is supersymmetric without using equations of motion nor boundary conditions. We shall assume this type of term (the "standard boundary term") throughout this paper. In a curved background with metric g_{IJ}, the standard boundary term is $-\frac{i}{2}g_{IJ}\psi^I_+\psi^J_-$. If there is a closed B-field, the action is supplemented by

$$\int_{\mathbb{S}} \frac{1}{2}B_{IJ}(x)(\partial_t x^I\partial_s x^J - \partial_s x^I\partial_t x^J)\mathrm{d}^2 s + \frac{i}{4}\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} B_{IJ}(x)\psi^I\psi^J\,\mathrm{d}t. \tag{2.4}$$

There is another $\mathcal{N} = 1$ subalgebra, $\epsilon^1_- = \epsilon^1_+$, for which the standard boundary term has the opposite sign and the boundary term for the B-field is $\frac{i}{4}B_{IJ}(x)\widetilde{\psi}^I\widetilde{\psi}^J$.

2.1.1 Brane-Antibrane System And Open String Tachyons

We recall that the vertex operators for the tachyon and the massless vector boson take the following form (see, for example, [13])

$$V_T = k \cdot \psi \ \mathrm{e}^{ik\cdot x}, \quad (k^2 = 1), \tag{2.5}$$

$$V_A^\epsilon = (\epsilon \cdot \dot{x} - (\epsilon \cdot \psi)(k \cdot \psi)) \ \mathrm{e}^{ik\cdot x}, \quad (k^2 = k \cdot \epsilon = 0). \tag{2.6}$$

We would like to find off-shell extension of these operators and their finite version that can be included in the boundary Lagrangian. The off-shell and finite version of (2.6) is well-known:

$$\mathcal{A}_t = \dot{x}^I A_I(x) - \frac{i}{4} F_{IJ}(x)\psi^I\psi^J, \tag{2.7}$$

where A_I is a $U(1)$ gauge field on $\mathbf{R}^n$ and F_{IJ} is its field strength $F_{IJ} = \partial_I A_J - \partial_J A_I$. The $\mathcal{N} = 1$ variation of $\mathcal{A}_t$ is a total time derivative, and hence it can be added to the boundary Lagrangian preserving the $\mathcal{N} = 1$ supersymmetry. Note that the full Lagrangian including the boundary term $-\mathcal{A}_t$ is invariant under the simultaneous shift by a one-form Λ:

$$B \to B + \mathrm{d}\Lambda, \qquad A \to A - \Lambda. \tag{2.8}$$

Let us next consider the off-shell and finite version of (2.5). We first note that V_T is fermionic and one cannot include it in the boundary Lagrangian. This is how the standard GSO projection eliminates the tachyon. However, one can include it by introducing a $\mathbf{Z}_2$-graded Chan-Paton space, a vector space of the form

$$\mathcal{V} = \mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{ev}} \oplus \mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{od}}, \tag{2.9}$$

where $\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{ev}}$ is the even (or bosonic) subspace and $\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{od}}$ is the odd (or fermionic) subspace. We call a linear map between such vector spaces *even* (resp. *odd*) when it maps even to even and odd to odd subspaces (resp. even to odd and odd to even subspaces). We define the action of the fermionic fields $\psi_\pm^I$ and the fermionic parameters (such as ϵ_1) so that they anticommutes with all odd linear maps of $\mathcal{V}$. Then, one can consider the following off-shell version of (2.5)

$$\mathcal{A}_t^{(1)} = \frac{i}{2}\psi^I \partial_I \mathbf{T}(x) \tag{2.10}$$

where $\mathbf{T}(x)$ is an odd endomorphism of $\mathcal{V}$, mapping $\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{ev}}$ to $\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{od}}$ and $\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{od}}$ to $\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{ev}}$. This $\mathcal{A}_t^{(1)}$ is bosonic and can be included in the boundary Lagrangian. Let us see if it is $\mathcal{N} = 1$ invariant:

$$\delta\mathcal{A}_t^{(1)} = \frac{i}{2}\left(-2\epsilon_1\dot{x}^I\right)\partial_I\mathbf{T} + \frac{i}{2}\psi^I i\epsilon_1\psi^I\partial_I\partial_J\mathbf{T} = -i\epsilon_1\dot{\mathbf{T}}. \tag{2.11}$$

This is a total derivative and it appears good at first sight. However, since the Chan-Paton space has rank larger than one, the term $\mathcal{A}_t$ is placed in the *path-ordered* exponential

$$U(t_f, t_i) = \mathrm{P} \exp\left(-i \int_{t_i}^{t_f} \mathcal{A}_t \mathrm{d}t\right).$$

A variation

$$\delta U(t_f, t_i) = -i \int_{t_i}^{t_f} U(t_f, t) \delta\mathcal{A}_t U(t, t_i)\, \mathrm{d}t.$$

is a symmetry only when the whole integrand is a total derivative $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}[U(t_f, t)X(t)U(t, t_i)]$, which holds when $\delta\mathcal{A}_t$ is a total *covariant* derivative

$$\delta\mathcal{A}_t = \dot{X} + i[\mathcal{A}_t, X] =: \mathcal{D}_t X. \tag{2.12}$$

For the first trial (2.10), this almost holds with $X = -i\epsilon_1 \mathbf{T}$, see (2.11), but there is an error term $-i[\mathcal{A}_t^{(1)}, X] = -\epsilon_1[\mathcal{A}_t^{(1)}, \mathbf{T}]$. Thus, we would like to modify $\mathcal{A}_t^{(1)}$ by a term whose variation cancels it. Note that

$$\begin{aligned}
\epsilon_1[\mathcal{A}_t^{(1)}, \mathbf{T}] &= \epsilon_1 \left(\frac{i}{2}\psi^I \partial_I \mathbf{T} \cdot \mathbf{T} - \mathbf{T} \cdot \frac{i}{2}\psi^I \partial_I \mathbf{T}\right) \\
&= \frac{i}{2}\epsilon_1 \psi^I \left(\partial_I \mathbf{T} \cdot \mathbf{T} + \mathbf{T} \cdot \partial_I \mathbf{T}\right) = \frac{i}{2}\epsilon_1 \psi^I \partial_I(\mathbf{T}^2) = \delta\left(\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{T}^2\right),
\end{aligned}$$

where we have used the anticommutativity $\mathbf{T}\psi^I = -\psi^I \mathbf{T}$ in the second equality. Thus, if we modify the first trial to $\mathcal{A}_t = \mathcal{A}_t^{(1)} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{T}^2$, we have $\delta\mathcal{A}_t = \dot{X} + i[\mathcal{A}_t^{(1)}, X]$. Fortunately, $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{T}^2$ commutes with $X = -i\epsilon_1 \mathbf{T}$, and hence we have $[\mathcal{A}_t^{(1)}, X] = [\mathcal{A}_t, X]$ which means that $\delta\mathcal{A}_t = \dot{X} + i[\mathcal{A}_t, X]$. The symmetry condition (2.12) holds. In this way, we find that

$$\mathcal{A}_t = \frac{i}{2}\psi^I \partial_I \mathbf{T}(x) + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{T}(x)^2 \tag{2.13}$$

provides the $\mathcal{N} = 1$ supersymmetric Wilson line $\mathrm{P} \exp\left(-i \int \mathcal{A}_t \mathrm{d}t\right)$. The expression (2.13) is the off-shell and finite version of the tachyon vertex operator (2.5). Note that it requires a $\mathbf{Z}_2$-graded Chan-Paton space $\mathcal{V} = \mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{ev}} \oplus \mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{od}}$. The standard interpretation is that $\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{ev}}$ and $\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{od}}$ are the Chan-Paton spaces corresponding to branes and antibranes respectively.

When the Chan-Paton space has rank larger than one, F_{IJ} in (2.7) must be the full curvature $F_{IJ} = \partial_I A_J - \partial_J A_I + i[A_I, A_J]$. The quadratic part $i[A_I, A_J]$ is needed for the same reason as the tachyon Lagrangian needs $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{T}^2$. We can also combine (2.7) and (2.13). Let $E = E^{\mathrm{ev}} \oplus E^{\mathrm{od}}$ be a $\mathbf{Z}_2$-graded vector bundle over $\mathbf{R}^n$. For an odd endomorphism $\mathbf{T}$ of E and an even gauge connection A of E, we have an invariant interaction

$$\mathcal{A}_t = \dot{x}^I A_I(x) - \frac{i}{4}F_{IJ}(x)\psi^I\psi^J + \frac{i}{2}\psi^I D_I \mathbf{T}(x) + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{T}(x)^2, \tag{2.14}$$

where F_{IJ} is the curvature of A_I and $D_I\mathbf{T}$ is the ordinary covariant derivative $\partial_I\mathbf{T} + i[A_I, \mathbf{T}]$. $E^{\rm ev}$ is the Chan-Paton vector bundle suppoerted by branes and $E^{\rm od}$ is the one supported by antibranes. The expression (2.14) was first obtained in [9, 14, 15] using boundary fermions. The part other than $\dot{x}^I A_I$ is the curvature of Quillen's super-connection [16], and provides a concise expression for the Ramond-Ramond charge of a brane-antibrane system [14, 15].

We obtained boundary interactions that are off-shell extensions of the ones generated by tachyon and gauge boson vertex operators, which are relevant and marginal operators of the free theory. Here we comment on those generated by a class of operators with higher dimensions that have higher powers in the fermions ψ. (Other possibilities are those with higher derivatives $\ddot{x}$, $\mathrm{d}^3x/\mathrm{d}t^3$,..., $\dot{\psi}$, $\ddot{\psi}$,..., which we do not discuss here.) The idea is to allow $\mathbf{T}$ to depend not only on x but also on ψ. It turns out that modifying (2.13) by giving ψ-dependence to $\mathbf{T}$ and adding one simple term does the job. Namely, for

$$\mathcal{A}_t = -\dot{x}^I \frac{\partial}{\partial \psi^I}\mathbf{T}(x,\psi) + \frac{i}{2}\psi^I \frac{\partial}{\partial x^I}\mathbf{T}(x,\psi) + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{T}(x,\psi)^2, \tag{2.15}$$

we find

$$\delta\mathcal{A}_t = \mathcal{D}_t\left(-i\epsilon_1\mathbf{T}\right).$$

In fact, the one including the non-Abelian gauge field (2.14) can be regarded as a special case of this: For $\mathbf{T}(x,\psi) = \mathbf{T}(x) - \psi^I A_I(x)$ we find that (2.15) reproduces (2.14).

The Landau-Ginzburg Case

Finally, we comment on the case where the bulk theory has a superpotential term

$$\mathcal{L}_h = -\frac{1}{2}\sum_{I=1}^{n}(\partial_I h(x))^2 - i\psi_+^I\psi_-^J\partial_I\partial_J h(x). \tag{2.16}$$

In this case, the $\mathcal{N}=1$ supersymmetry variation for $\widetilde{\psi}^I$ is modified to $\delta\widetilde{\psi}^I = -2\epsilon_1\partial_s x^I - 2\epsilon_1\partial_I h(x)$ while the variation for x^I and ψ^I are intact. Under this, the action varies as

$$\delta\left[\int_{\mathbb{S}}(\mathcal{L}+\mathcal{L}_h)\,\mathrm{d}^2s + \int_{\partial\mathbb{S}}\left[-\frac{i}{2}\sum_{I=1}^{n}\psi_+^I\psi_-^I\right]\mathrm{d}t\right] = \int_{\partial\mathbb{S}}\left[i\epsilon_1\psi^I\partial_I h(x)\right]\mathrm{d}t. \tag{2.17}$$

The right hand side is the same as the variation of $\int h(x)\,\mathrm{d}t$, and thus the action is $\mathcal{N}=1$ invariant provided that the following boundary term is added to the Lagrangian

$$\Delta L = \Big[-h(x)\Big]_{\partial\mathbb{S}}. \tag{2.18}$$

Since the variation of x^I and ψ^I are not modified, the boundary interactions considered above, such as (2.13) and (2.14), remain invariant.

We next consider various $(2,2)$ supersymmetric bulk theories and determine the condition for the gauge connection A and the tachyon $\mathbf{T}$ to preserve a diagonal $\mathcal{N}=2$ supersymmetry of B-type, or $\mathcal{N}=2_B$ supersymmetry. The latter is a symmetry generated by a linear combination of $\overline{\mathbf{Q}}_+$ and $\overline{\mathbf{Q}}_-$ and its complex conjugate, such as

$$\mathbf{Q} = \overline{\mathbf{Q}}_+ + \overline{\mathbf{Q}}_-, \tag{2.19}$$

and its complex conjugate, $\mathbf{Q}^\dagger = \mathbf{Q}_+ + \mathbf{Q}_-$. These supercharges obey the anticommutation relations $\mathbf{Q}^2 = \mathbf{Q}^{\dagger 2} = 0$ and $\{\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{Q}^\dagger\} = 2H$, where H is the Hamiltonian.

2.2 Non-Linear Sigma Models: Complex Of Vector Bundles

Let us first consider the non-linear sigma model on a Kähler manifold (X, g). If formulated on the worldsheet with boundary, a diagonal $\mathcal{N}=2$ subalgebra of the $(2,2)$ supersymmetry can be preserved. If we add the standard boundary term as in (2.2),

$$L^{(0)}_{\rm bdry} = \left[-\frac{i}{2} g_{i\overline{j}} (\psi^i_+ \overline{\psi}^{\overline{j}}_- + \overline{\psi}^{\overline{j}}_+ \psi^i_-) \right]_{\partial \mathbb{S}}, \tag{2.20}$$

the action is invariant under the $\mathcal{N}=2_B$ supersymmetry

$$\delta x^i = \epsilon \psi^i, \quad \delta \psi^i = -2i\overline{\epsilon} \dot{x}^i, \quad \delta \widetilde{\psi}^i = -2i\overline{\epsilon} \partial_s x^i - \epsilon \Gamma^i_{jk} \psi^j_+ \psi^k_-. \tag{2.21}$$

In this expression, $i, j, k, ...$ are indices of complex coordinates, ϵ is a complex variation parameter, $\epsilon = i(\epsilon_1 + i\epsilon_2)$, and $\overline{\epsilon}$ is its complex conjugate, $\overline{\epsilon} = -i(\epsilon_1 - i\epsilon_2)$. The B-field term (2.4) is $\mathcal{N}=2_B$ invariant if B obeys $B(Jv, Jw) = B(v, w)$, that is, if B is a $(1,1)$-form. We stress again that the $\mathcal{N}=2_B$ invariance holds using neither equations of motion nor boundary conditions, provided that the standard boundary term is added.

2.2.1 Condition Of $\mathcal{N}=2$ Supersymmetry

We now determine the condition on the superconnection $(A, \mathbf{T})$ of a $\mathbf{Z}_2$ graded vector bundle $E = E^{\rm ev} \oplus E^{\rm od}$ so that the corresponding boundary interaction (2.14) has $\mathcal{N}=2_B$ supersymmetry. Let us first provide the answer. The condition on the gauge connection A is that its curvature is a $(1,1)$-form, namely vanishing of the $(0,2)$ (and therefore $(2,0)$) components

$$F_A^{(0,2)} = 0. \tag{2.22}$$

Holomorphic structures are then defined on $E^{\rm ev}$ and $E^{\rm od}$ by the Cauchy-Riemann operator $\overline{\partial}_A$, which obeys the integrability condition $(\overline{\partial}_A)^2 = F_A^{(0,2)} = 0$. The condition on the tachyon $\mathbf{T}$ is that it can be decomposed as

$$\mathbf{T} = iQ - iQ^\dagger, \tag{2.23}$$

where Q is holomorphic

$$D_{\overline{i}}Q = 0, \tag{2.24}$$

and its square is proportional to the identity

$$Q^2 = c \cdot \mathrm{id}_E, \tag{2.25}$$

in which c is a numerical (field independent) constant. The condition of the gauge connection (2.22) is well-known [17], and the proof is omitted here. The condition for $\mathbf{T}$ was derived in [9] for those based on boundary fermions. We provide a general derivation below.

We start for simplicity with the case with trival gauge connection $A = 0$. We first note that the additional supersymmetry variation can be expressed in terms of the real coordiantes as

$$\delta_2 x^I = i\epsilon_2 J^I{}_K \psi^K, \qquad \delta_2 \psi^I = 2\epsilon_2 J^I{}_K \dot{x}^K, \tag{2.26}$$

where J is the complex structure of X. According to this, $\mathcal{A}_t$ varies as

$$\delta_2 \mathcal{A}_t = i\epsilon_2 \dot{x}^K J^I{}_K \partial_I \mathbf{T} + \cdots$$

where the ellipsis refers to terms without time derivative. In order for this to be a total time derivative, we would like $J^I{}_K \partial_I \mathbf{T}$ to be $\partial_K Y$ for some Y which should be a linear recombination of $\mathbf{T}$. Since J is a complex structure, $J^2 = -1$, the only possibility is that $\mathbf{T}$ is a sum of two terms $\mathbf{T}_+$ and $\mathbf{T}_-$ such that $J^I{}_K \partial_I \mathbf{T}_\pm = \pm i \partial_K \mathbf{T}_\pm$, for which $Y = i\mathbf{T}_+ - i\mathbf{T}_-$ does the job. Writing $\mathbf{T}_+ = iQ$ and using the hermiticity of $\mathbf{T}$, one can write $\mathbf{T} = iQ - iQ^\dagger$ where $\partial_{\overline{i}} Q = 0$. The boundary interaction then takes the form

$$\mathcal{A}_t = -\frac{1}{2}\psi^i \partial_i Q + \frac{1}{2}\overline{\psi}^{\overline{j}} \partial_{\overline{j}} Q^\dagger + \frac{1}{2}\{Q, Q^\dagger\} - \frac{1}{2}Q^2 - \frac{1}{2}Q^{\dagger 2}.$$

Let us compute the full $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ variation of $\mathcal{A}_t$. As in the $\mathcal{N} = 1$ case, we would like the

variation to be the total covariant derivative $\mathcal{D}_t Z = \dot{Z} + i[\mathcal{A}_t, Z]$ for some Z:

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta\mathcal{A}_t &= i\overline{\epsilon}\dot{x}^i\partial_i Q + \frac{1}{2}\{Q, -\overline{\epsilon}\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}\partial_{\overline{\jmath}}Q^\dagger\} - \frac{1}{2}\epsilon\psi^i\partial_i Q^2 \ + \ h.c. \\
&= i\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}(\overline{\epsilon}Q) + i\left[\frac{1}{2}\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}\partial_{\overline{\jmath}}Q^\dagger, \overline{\epsilon}Q\right]\right) - \frac{1}{2}\epsilon\psi^i\partial_i Q^2 \ + \ h.c. \\
&= i\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}(\overline{\epsilon}Q) + i[\mathcal{A}_t, \overline{\epsilon}Q]\right) + \left[-\frac{1}{2}\psi^i\partial_i Q + \frac{1}{2}\{Q, Q^\dagger\} - \frac{1}{2}Q^2 - \frac{1}{2}Q^{\dagger 2}, \overline{\epsilon}Q\right] \\
&\quad -\frac{1}{2}\epsilon\psi^i\partial_i Q^2 \ + \ h.c. \\
&= i\mathcal{D}_t(\overline{\epsilon}Q) - \frac{1}{2}(\overline{\epsilon}+\epsilon)\psi^i\partial_i Q^2 - \frac{1}{2}(\overline{\epsilon}+\epsilon)[Q^2, Q^\dagger] \ + \ h.c. \\
&= i\mathcal{D}_t(\overline{\epsilon}Q + \epsilon Q^\dagger) + 2\mathrm{Re}\left(\epsilon_2\psi^i\partial_i Q^2 - [\epsilon_2 Q^\dagger, Q^2]\right). \qquad (2.27)
\end{aligned}$$

We would like the second term to vanish so that we are left with $i\mathcal{D}_t(\overline{\epsilon}Q + \epsilon Q^\dagger)$. This is so if and only if Q^2 is field independent and proportional to the identity matrix. When the gauge connection is non-trivial $A \neq 0$, the above consideration goes through with only a slight modification, and we obtain the conditions (2.23), (2.24) and (2.25).

If we require $Q^2 = c \cdot \mathrm{id}_E$ with a constant c, the term $-\frac{1}{2}Q^2 - \frac{1}{2}Q^{\dagger 2}$ in $\mathcal{A}_t$ is a constant multiple of the identity and we may omit it. From now on, we use the following version of the boundary interaction without $-\mathrm{Re}(Q^2)$

$$\mathcal{A}_t = A_I\dot{x}^I - \frac{i}{4}F_{IJ}\psi^I\psi^J - \frac{1}{2}\psi^i D_i Q + \frac{1}{2}\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\imath}}D_{\overline{\imath}}Q^\dagger + \frac{1}{2}\{Q, Q^\dagger\}. \qquad (2.28)$$

Under the holomorphicity conditions (2.22) and (2.24), its $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetry variation with time dependent parameters $\epsilon(t), \overline{\epsilon}(t)$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta\mathcal{A}_t &= i\mathcal{D}_t\Big(\overline{\epsilon}(Q - \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}A_{\overline{\jmath}}) + \epsilon(Q^\dagger - \psi^i A_i)\Big) \\
&\quad -\mathrm{Re}\Big(\overline{\epsilon}\psi^i D_i Q^2 - [\overline{\epsilon}Q^\dagger, Q^2]\Big) \\
&\quad -i\Big(\dot{\overline{\epsilon}}Q + \dot{\epsilon}Q^\dagger\Big). \qquad (2.29)
\end{aligned}$$

where $\mathcal{D}_t$ is the covariant derivative with respect to the new $\mathcal{A}_t$ in (2.28). Under the additional condition (2.25), the variantion $\delta\mathcal{A}_t$ is a total covariant derivative up to $\dot{\epsilon}$ terms. The $\dot{\overline{\epsilon}}$, $\dot{\epsilon}$ terms in (2.29) show that Q and $Q^\dagger$ provide the boundary contribution to the supercharges $\mathbf{Q}$ and $\mathbf{Q}^\dagger$. On the strip $\mathbb{S} = [0, L] \times \mathbf{R}$ with boundary interactions (E_1, A_1, Q_1) and (E_2, A_2, Q_2), the supercharge $\mathbf{Q}$ found by the standard Noether procedure is given by $\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{Q}_{\mathrm{bulk}} + \mathbf{Q}_{\mathrm{bdry}}$,

$$\mathbf{Q}_{\mathrm{bulk}} = \int_0^L \mathrm{d}s\left\{g_{i\overline{\jmath}}(\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_+ + \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_-)\partial_t x^i + g_{i\overline{\jmath}}(\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_+ - \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_+)\partial_s x^i\right\} \qquad (2.30)$$

$$\mathbf{Q}_{\mathrm{bdry}} = -iQ_2\Big|_{s=L} + iQ_1\Big|_{s=0}. \qquad (2.31)$$

The boundary part acts only on the Chan-Paton factor,

$$i\mathbf{Q}_{\rm bdry}(\Psi_{\rm CP}\otimes\Psi_{\rm internal}) = \left(Q_2\big|_L\Psi_{\rm CP} - (-1)^{|\Psi_{\rm CP}|}\Psi_{\rm CP}Q_1\big|_0\right)\otimes\Psi_{\rm internal},$$

where $(-1)^{|\Psi_{\rm CP}|}$ is $+1$ or -1 depending on whether $\Psi_{\rm CP}$ is even or odd. The supercharge $\mathbf{Q}$ squares to zero as required by the $\mathcal{N}=2$ supersymmetry algebra, as long as Q_1^2 and Q_2^2 are the same constants.

More General Interactions

Let us next consider the tachyon profile $\mathbf{T}$ that depends also on the fermions $\psi, \overline{\psi}$. We have seen that the boundary interaction

$$\mathcal{A}_t = -\dot{x}^I\frac{\partial}{\partial\psi^I}\mathbf{T} + \frac{i}{2}\psi^I\frac{\partial}{\partial x^I}\mathbf{T} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{T}^2$$

is $\mathcal{N}=1$ supersymmetric. We would like to see the condition for $\mathcal{N}=2$ invariance. Assuming again the form $\mathbf{T} = iQ - iQ^\dagger$, where Q is independent of ψ^i's,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial\psi^i}Q = 0, \tag{2.32}$$

we find the following supersymmetry variation of the above $\mathcal{A}_t$

$$\begin{aligned}\delta\mathcal{A}_t \;=\;& \mathcal{D}_t\left(i\overline{\epsilon}Q + i\epsilon Q^\dagger\right)\\ &-\frac{i}{2}(\overline{\epsilon}+\epsilon)\delta_{\overline{\mathbf{Q}}}\left(\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}\partial_{\overline{\jmath}}Q + Q^2\right) + \frac{i}{2}(\overline{\epsilon}+\epsilon)\delta_{\mathbf{Q}}\left(-\psi^i\partial_i Q^\dagger + Q^{\dagger 2}\right)\\ &-i\dot{\overline{\epsilon}}\left(Q - \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\imath}}\frac{\partial}{\partial\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\imath}}}Q\right) - i\dot{\epsilon}\left(Q^\dagger - \psi^i\frac{\partial}{\partial\psi^i}Q^\dagger\right)\end{aligned} \tag{2.33}$$

where

$$i\delta_{\mathbf{Q}}Y := \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}\partial_{\overline{\jmath}}Y + QY - (-1)^{|Y|}YQ + 2i\dot{x}^i\frac{\partial}{\partial\psi^i}Y, \tag{2.34}$$

$$i\delta_{\overline{\mathbf{Q}}}Y := \psi^i\partial_i Y - Q^\dagger Y + (-1)^{|Y|}YQ^\dagger + 2i\dot{x}^{\overline{\imath}}\frac{\partial}{\partial\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\imath}}}Y. \tag{2.35}$$

We see that the interaction preserves the $\mathcal{N}=2$ supersymmetry if and only if Q satisfies, in addition to (2.32),

$$\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}\partial_{\overline{\jmath}}Q + Q^2 = c\cdot\mathrm{id}_E \tag{2.36}$$

where c is a field independent constant. Under these conditions, the boundary interaction takes the following form up to an additive constant

$$\mathcal{A}_t = -i\dot{x}^{\overline{\jmath}}\frac{\partial}{\partial\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}}Q + i\dot{x}^i\frac{\partial}{\partial\psi^i}Q^\dagger - \frac{1}{2}\psi^i\partial_i Q + \frac{1}{2}\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}\partial_{\overline{\jmath}}Q^\dagger + \frac{1}{2}\{Q, Q^\dagger\}. \tag{2.37}$$

For the case where $Q(x,\overline{\psi})$ is at most linear in $\overline{\psi}$, i.e., $Q(x,\overline{\psi}) = Q(x) - \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}} A_{\overline{\jmath}}(x)$, the equation (2.36) splits into two equations, $D_{\overline{\jmath}}Q(x) = 0$ and $Q(x)^2 = c \cdot \mathrm{id}_E$, which are nothing but the condition obtained previously.

For the most part of this paper, we will not consider such higher dimensional boundary interactions, except for Section 3 where we discuss D-term deformations.

2.2.2 R-Symmetry

The bulk non-linear sigma model always has vector $U(1)$ R-symmetry that acts trivially on the target space coordinates. If preserved by the boundary interaction, the bulk vector $U(1)$ R-symmetry becomes an R-symmetry of the $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ superalgebra under which the supercharge $\mathbf{Q}$ transforms as $\mathbf{Q} \to \lambda\mathbf{Q}$ for some phase $\lambda = \mathrm{e}^{i\alpha}$. We restrict our attention to D-branes with such $U(1)$ R-symmetry.

Since the holomorphic part of the tachyon Q enters into the supercharge $\mathbf{Q}$, which has R-charge 1, Q must also have R-charge 1. Namely, the Chan-Paton bundle E must admit a $U(1)$ action $R(\mathrm{e}^{i\alpha}) : E \to E$ such that

$$R(\lambda)Q(x)R(\lambda)^{-1} = \lambda Q(x). \tag{2.38}$$

This in particular requires $c = 0$ in (2.25), so that

$$Q^2 = 0. \tag{2.39}$$

We of course require that the connection A is invariant under the same action

$$R(\lambda)A_I(x)R(\lambda)^{-1} = A_I(x). \tag{2.40}$$

Let us denote the subbundle of E of R-charge j by E^j. That is, E^j is the $R(\lambda) = \lambda^j$ eigenbundle. Each E^j has a holomorphic structure determined by the connection A restricted to E^j. We denote the corresponding holomorphic vector bundle by $\mathcal{E}^j$. Then, by (2.38) the Q action on $\mathcal{E} = \oplus_j \mathcal{E}^j$ is decomposed as

$$\cdots \xrightarrow{Q} \mathcal{E}^{j-1} \xrightarrow{Q} \mathcal{E}^j \xrightarrow{Q} \mathcal{E}^{j+1} \xrightarrow{Q} \cdots . \tag{2.41}$$

The condition (2.39) means that this is a *complex* of holomorphic vector bundles where Q plays the rôle of a boundary operator. We shall sometimes denote this complex by $\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{C}(\mathcal{E}, Q)$. We may assume that the R-charges j are all integers, or equivalently, that $\lambda \mapsto R(\lambda)$ is an honest $U(1)$ action — one can always redefine $R(\lambda)$ by multiplying some phase λ^{δ_j} in each irreducible factor. Since Q is odd, the mod 2 reduction of the

grading by such integral R-charges matches with or is opposite to the original $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading, $E = E^{\rm ev} \oplus E^{\rm od}$, or mixture of the two cases. We choose $R(\,{\rm e}^{i\alpha})$ so that they match:

$$E^{\rm ev} = \bigoplus_{j:\,\text{even}} E^j, \quad E^{\rm od} = \bigoplus_{j:\,\text{odd}} E^j. \tag{2.42}$$

The reason is the charge integrality that is present in the bulk non-linear sigma model, i.e., any bulk operator has integral vector R-charge which agrees modulo 2 with the statistics of the operator. By the requirement (2.42) we extend this charge integrality to the boundary.

Let us consider two branes with such R-symmetry, say, $\mathcal{B}_1 = (E_1, A_1, Q_1)$ with symmetry R_1 and $\mathcal{B}_2 = (E_2, A_2, Q_2)$ with symmetry R_2. Then, there is an action of R-symmetry on the space of open string states $\mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2)$. The action on the Chan-Paton factor is governed by R_1 and R_2;

$$\mathbf{R}(\lambda) : \Psi_{\rm CP} \otimes \Psi_{\rm internal} \longmapsto R_2(\lambda)\Psi_{\rm CP}R_1(\lambda)^{-1} \otimes R_{\rm internal}(\lambda)\Psi_{\rm internal}. \tag{2.43}$$

This introduces a grading on the space of open string states, $\mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2) = \oplus_p \mathcal{H}^p(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2)$, with

$$\mathcal{H}^p(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2) = \left\{ \Psi \in \mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2) \;\middle|\; \mathbf{R}(\lambda)\Psi = \lambda^p \Psi \right\}. \tag{2.44}$$

The R-charges p of states are not necessarily integers since the R-action on the internal part may not be integral.

There is an ambiguity in the choice of $R(\lambda)$ — the uniform shift $j \to j + 2m$ does not violate the condition (2.38) and (2.42). This shift of R-charges does not change the physical property of the brane. However, for a given action $R_{\rm internal}(\lambda)$ on the internal part, different shifts of R_1 and R_2 will shift the grading of the space of states (2.44). We sometimes keep this grading as a part of the information of the D-brane. We call such branes with additional information *graded D-branes*.

Let us briefly comment on the more general interaction (2.37) for $\overline{\psi}$-dependent Q that obeys the equation (2.36). The R-symmetry condition is

$$R(\lambda)Q(x, \lambda\overline{\psi})R(\lambda)^{-1} = \lambda Q(x, \overline{\psi}).$$

This again requires $c = 0$ in (2.36). If we write $Q = Q^0 + Q^1 + \cdots$ where Q^m is the part that has power m in $\overline{\psi}$, then the condition is $R(\lambda)Q^m R(\lambda)^{-1} = \lambda^{1-m}Q^m$. Thus, if we replace $\overline{\psi}^{\overline{i}}$ by the one form ${\rm d}x^{\overline{i}}$ one can interpret Q^m as a $(0, m)$ form that sends E^j to E^{j+1-m}. Then the supersymmetry condition (2.36) becomes

$$\overline{\partial} Q + Q^2 = 0. \tag{2.45}$$

for the total sum $Q = \sum_{m=0}^{n} Q^m$ of forms. This data for D-branes is called a *twisted complex*. It is found from the point of view of string field theory in [18, 19] as a physical realization of an object of the "enhanced triangulated category" of Bondal and Kapranov [20]. Here we showed its realization as an ordinary $\mathcal{N} = 2$ supersymmetric boundary interaction. This generalization is not necessary when X is algebraic, in the sense that will be explained at the end of Section 2.2.3 and in Section 3.

If the target space X is a Calabi-Yau manifold, the bulk theory flows to a non-trivial fixed point in the infra-red limit, where vector and axial R-symmetries of the classical Lagrangian become parts of the $(2,2)$ superconformal symmetry. If it has a large volume limit, the correct R-symmetries are the ones such that the target space coordinates have zero R-charges. This is so even if X has a non-trivial $U(1)$ symmetry by which the R-symmetries could be modified [21]. The superconformal field theory obtained this way is of special type — the R-charges in the NS-NS sector are all integers and reduce modulo 2 to the $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading that determines the spin and statistics. Also, there exist chiral *spectral flow operators* $\mathcal{O}_{\frac{1}{2},0}$ and $\mathcal{O}_{0,\frac{1}{2}}$ in the NS-R and R-NS sectors, which are responsible for spacetime supersymmetry [22] in the context of string compactifications. In superconformal field theories of this type, *BPS D-branes* are those such that the two spectral flow operators are related by $\mathcal{O}_{\frac{1}{2},0} = \mathrm{e}^{i\varphi}\mathcal{O}_{0,\frac{1}{2}}$ for some phase $\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi}$ [23]. In the context of string theory, this phase determines the spacetime supersymmetry preserved by the D-branes. For an open string stretched bewteen BPS branes with phases $\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi_1}$ and $\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi_2}$, the R-charges of the states in the NS-sector are $\varphi_1 - \varphi_2$ plus integers [6]. The brane defined by a boundary interaction (E, A, Q) may or may not flow to such a BPS D-brane. If it does, then the R-symmetry of (E, A, Q) is expected to become a part of the superconformal symmetry of the infra-red brane. Often the brane (E, A, Q) flows to the decoupled sum of several BPS branes with different phases $\mathrm{e}^{i\varphi}$. In that case the R-symmetry of (E, A, Q) may not correspond to the infra-red R-symmetry.

2.2.3 Chiral Sector

In a supersymmetric field theory with a supercharge $\mathbf{Q}$ that squares to zero, such as $4d$ $\mathcal{N} = 1$ and $2d$ $(2,2)$ theories, the *chiral ring* is defined as the ring of $\mathbf{Q}$-cohomology classes of local operators. It carries an important information of the theory that is protected from renormalization. This is the case also in $2d$ $(2,2)$ theories with boundary interactions that preserve $\mathcal{N} = 2$ supersymmetry. In this context, a local operator is inserted on the boundary of the worldsheet, say, at the point $z = 0$ of the upper-half plane $\mathrm{Im} z \geq 0$. Note that a boundary condition or a boundary interaction must be specified. Suppose

the boundary interactions on the left ($z < 0$) and the right ($z > 0$) of the insertion point are $\mathcal{B}_1$ and $\mathcal{B}_2$ respectively. Then the space of $\mathbf{Q}$-cohomology classes of operators is denoted by $\mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2)$. If the two are the same brane, the space $\mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B})$ by itself forms a ring by the product of operators. For different branes, the product is of the form $\mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2) \times \mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}_2, \mathcal{B}_3) \to \mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_3)$. If we fix a set of branes $\{\mathcal{B}_i\}_{i \in I}$, the direct sum of spaces $\mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}_i, \mathcal{B}_j)$ $(i, j \in I)$ forms a ring — we may call it the chiral ring corresponding to the set $\{\mathcal{B}_i\}_{i \in I}$. If we consider all possible branes, it would be mathematically more appropriate to use the language of category — objects are D-branes $\mathcal{B}$ and morphisms are elements of $\mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}')$. This is how the *D-brane category* (in the chiral sector) is defined. In this paper, however, we shall loosely refer to elements of $\mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}')$ as *chiral ring elements*.

If the bulk theory has an axial R-symmetry with integral R-charges, such as a Calabi-Yau sigma model, one can use B-twist to obtain a topological field theory in which chiral ring elements play the rôle of physical observables. In this context the D-brane category in the chiral sector is called "the category of topological D-branes". Also, the B-twist can be used to find a one-to-one correspondence between the chiral ring elements in the $\mathcal{B}_1$-$\mathcal{B}_2$ sector and supersymmetric ground states of the open string stretched from $\mathcal{B}_1$ to $\mathcal{B}_2$. Therefore, the terms "chiral ring elements" and "supersymmetric ground states" can be used interchangeably in such a case.

In what follows, we determine the space $\mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2)$ for a pair of D-branes, $\mathcal{B}_1 = (E_1, A_1, Q_1)$ and $\mathcal{B}_2 = (E_2, A_2, Q_2)$, in the non-linear sigma model on a Kähler manifold X. We first realize it as a Dolbeault type cohomology, and then try to translate it into a purely holomorphic description. This leads us to the derived category of X.

The fields $\psi^i_\pm$ and $\partial_z x^i$, $\partial_{\overline{z}} x^i$ are $\mathbf{Q}$-partners of each other and thus can be eliminated. Also, $\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\imath}}_+ - \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\imath}}_-$ are set equal to zero by the boundary condition. Thus, we may work only with the zero modes of x^i, $x^{\overline{\imath}}$ and $\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\imath}} = \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\imath}}_+ + \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\imath}}_-$. In this zero mode sector,[1] the space of operators is identified as the space of antiholomorphic forms with values in the bundle of linear maps $Hom(E_1, E_2)$;

$$\mathcal{H}_{\text{zero}}(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2) = \bigoplus_{i=1}^{n} \Omega^{0,i}(X, Hom(E_1, E_2)). \tag{2.46}$$

On this space, $\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}$ is represented as the one-form $\mathrm{d}\overline{x}^{\overline{\jmath}}$ while $g_{i\overline{\jmath}}\dot{x}^i$ acts as the differentiation

[1] The meaning of "zero mode" may require clarification. It means "constant (or more precisely *parallel*) mode on the flat worldsheet with straight boundary (at which the operators are inserted)". It should not be confused with the "zero mode" in the open string NS sector to which the space of local operators naturally corresponds to: there is in fact no parallel mode for spinors in the NS sector. However, when B-twist is possible, it literally corresponds to "zero mode" in the open string Ramond sector.

$-i\partial_{\overline{\jmath}} + A_{\overline{\jmath}}$. Therefore the supercharge $\mathbf{Q}$, as shown in (2.30) and (2.31), is represented as

$$i\mathbf{Q}^{\rm zero}\phi = \overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2}}\phi + Q_2\phi - (-1)^{|\phi|}\phi Q_1. \tag{2.47}$$

$\overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2}}$ is the Cauchy-Riemann operator determined by the connections A_1 and A_2, which is expressed locally as $\overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2}}\phi = {\rm d}z^{\overline{\jmath}} \wedge (\partial_{\overline{\jmath}}\phi + iA_{2,\overline{\jmath}}\phi - i\phi A_{1,\overline{\jmath}})$. The $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading $(-1)^{|\phi|}$ is the combination of the one for $Hom(E_1, E_2)$ and the one by the form degree. If both $\mathcal{B}_1$ and $\mathcal{B}_2$ have R-symmetry, the space (2.46) has a finer grading. It is graded by the sum of the form degree and the grading of $Hom(E_1, E_2)$ determined by the R-charges of the bundles E_1 and E_2, where the degree j elements of $Hom(E_1, E_2)$ increase the R-charge by j, $Hom^j(E_1, E_2) = \oplus_{j'} Hom(E_1^{j'}, E_2^{j'+j})$. The R-charge p subspace of (2.46) hence is

$$\mathcal{H}^p_{\rm zero}(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2) = \bigoplus_{i+j=p} \Omega^{0,i}(X, Hom^j(E_1, E_2)). \tag{2.48}$$

The supercharge $\mathbf{Q}^{\rm zero}$ is a degree one operator that squares to zero, and hence defines a $\mathbf{Z}$-graded complex. The space of chiral ring elements is isomorphic to the cohomology group of this complex

$$\mathcal{H}^p(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2) \cong H^p_{\mathbf{Q}^{\rm zero}}(\mathcal{H}^\bullet_{\rm zero}(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2)). \tag{2.49}$$

The ring structure $\mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2) \times \mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}_2, \mathcal{B}_3) \to \mathcal{H}(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_3)$ is simply realized as the wedge product of forms combined with the composition of homomorphisms. In particular, it preserves the grading by the R-symmetry.

Note that the degree p here is not necessarily the same as the R-charge of the quantum fields that includes the contribution from the internal part (such as the sum of the zero point charges). For distinction, we call it the *R-degree* or "R-charge in the zero mode approximation". If $\mathcal{B}_1$ and $\mathcal{B}_2$ flow to BPS D-branes with phases $e^{i\varphi_1}$ and $e^{i\varphi_2}$, the true R-charge is $p + \varphi_1 - \varphi_2$ for a suitably chosen integral part of φ_i.

Flat Space $X = \mathbf{C}^n$ — Homotopy Category

As the simplest example, let us consider the Euclidean space $X = \mathbf{C}^n$ and complexes based on vector bundles with trivial flat connections. Namely, we consider complexes of the form (2.41) where $\mathcal{E}^j$ are all trivial bundles $\mathcal{O}^{\oplus k_j}$ over $\mathbf{C}^n$. A brane is represented by an odd square matrix $Q(x)$ which is holomorphic in the complex coordinates $x = (x^1, ..., x^n)$ and squares to zero. For two branes of this kind, $\mathcal{B}_1 = (\mathcal{E}_1, Q_1)$ and $\mathcal{B}_2 = (\mathcal{E}_2, Q_2)$, the space of chiral ring elements is realized as the cohomology group (2.49) but there is a more convenient realization. Let ${\rm Hom}(\mathcal{E}_1, \mathcal{E}_2)$ be the space of global holomorphic bundle

maps from $\mathcal{E}_1$ to $\mathcal{E}_2$, which is a graded subspace of the $i=0$ part of (2.48). The operator $\mathbf{Q}^{\rm zero}$ acts on this subspace as

$$i\mathbf{Q}^{hol}\phi = Q_2\phi - (-1)^{|\phi|}\phi Q_1$$

and defines a complex $\cdots \to \mathrm{Hom}^p(\mathcal{E}_1,\mathcal{E}_2) \to \mathrm{Hom}^{p+1}(\mathcal{E}_1,\mathcal{E}_2) \to \cdots$. We claim that the space (2.49) is isomorphic to the cohomology group of this complex,

$$\mathcal{H}^p(\mathcal{B}_1,\mathcal{B}_2) \cong H^p_{\mathbf{Q}^{hol}}(\mathrm{Hom}^\bullet(\mathcal{E}_1,\mathcal{E}_2)). \tag{2.50}$$

This can be shown as follows. Let us pick a degree zero element $\phi \in \mathcal{H}^0_{\rm zero}(\mathcal{B}_1,\mathcal{B}_2)$ annihilated by $\mathbf{Q}^{\rm zero}$. We decompose it with respect to its form-degree, $\phi = \phi^0 + \phi^1 + \cdots + \phi^n$ where ϕ^i belongs to $\Omega^{0,i}(\mathbf{C}^n, Hom^{-i}(E_1,E_2))$. Then the equation $\mathbf{Q}^{\rm zero}\phi = 0$ can be decomposed as follows

$$\begin{aligned}
\overline{\partial}\phi^{n-1} + Q_2\phi^n - \phi^n Q_1 &= 0,\\
\overline{\partial}\phi^{n-2} + Q_2\phi^{n-1} - \phi^{n-1}Q_1 &= 0,\\
&\vdots\\
\overline{\partial}\phi^0 + Q_2\phi^1 - \phi^1 Q_1 &= 0,\\
Q_2\phi^0 - \phi^0 Q_1 &= 0.
\end{aligned} \tag{2.51}$$

Since any $(0,n)$ form on $\mathbf{C}^n$ is $\overline{\partial}$-exact, there is an $(0,n-1)$-form β^{n-1} such that $\phi^n = \overline{\partial}\beta^{n-1}$. Then the first equation means that $\phi^{n-1} - Q_2\beta^{n-1} - \beta^{n-1}Q_1$ is $\overline{\partial}$-closed. Hence it can be written as $\overline{\partial}\beta^{n-2}$ for some $(0,n-2)$-form β^{n-2}. Then the second equation means that $\phi^{n-2} - Q_2\beta^{n-2} - \beta^{n-2}Q_1$ is $\overline{\partial}$-closed and hence can be written as $\overline{\partial}\beta^{n-3}$ for some $(0,n-3)$-form β^{n-3}. Repeating this procedure, using the fact that any $\overline{\partial}$-closed $(0,i)$-form on $\mathbf{C}^n$ is $\overline{\partial}$-exact if $i>0$, we recursively find a sequence of forms, $\beta^i \in \Omega^{0,i}(Hom^{-i-1}(E_1,E_2))$ such that $\phi^i - Q_2\beta^i - \beta^i Q_1 = \overline{\partial}\beta^{i-1}$ at every $i = n-1, n-2, ..., 1$. The last two equations of (2.51) mean that $\phi^0 - Q_2\beta^0 - \beta^0 Q_1 =: \widetilde{\phi}$ is a holomorphic 0-form that is $\mathbf{Q}^{hol}$-closed. Summarizing, we found

$$\phi = \widetilde{\phi} + i\mathbf{Q}^{\rm zero}\beta, \qquad \overline{\partial}\widetilde{\phi} = \mathbf{Q}^{hol}\widetilde{\phi} = 0, \tag{2.52}$$

where $\beta = \beta^0 + \beta^1 + \cdots + \beta^{n-1}$. Namely, every $\mathbf{Q}^{\rm zero}$-closed element has a holomorphic representative. This proves the claim (2.50) for the case $p=0$. Proof for higher p is similar. The only non-trivial property of $\mathbf{C}^n$ we have used in the above argument is that any $\overline{\partial}$-closed form of positive degree is $\overline{\partial}$-exact. This holds more generally in a class of spaces called *Stein manifolds*.

Let us restate the claim (2.50) in a more conventional mathematical language. For this we need to introduce some terminology. Here everything is stated in the context of complexes of trivial vector bundles where maps are holomorphic bundle maps, but the terminology can be applied straightforwardly to more general context. By definition, a *cochain map* of a complex $\cdots \to \mathcal{E}^j \to \mathcal{E}^{j+1} \to \cdots$ to another $\cdots \to \mathcal{F}^j \to \mathcal{F}^{j+1} \to \cdots$ is a sequence of maps $\mathcal{E}^j \to \mathcal{F}^j$ such that the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \cdots \to & \mathcal{E}^{j-1} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{E}^{j} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{E}^{j+1} & \to \cdots \\ & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & \\ \cdots \to & \mathcal{F}^{j-1} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{F}^{j} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{F}^{j+1} & \to \cdots \end{array}$$

A *homotopy* between these complexes is a cochain map of the form $hQ_{\mathcal{E}} + Q_{\mathcal{F}}h$ where h is a degree -1 map of $\mathcal{E}$ to $\mathcal{F}$, that is, a collection of maps $\mathcal{E}^j \to \mathcal{F}^{j-1}$. For a complex $\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{C}(\mathcal{E}, Q)$, we denote by $\mathcal{C}[p]$ the same complex $\mathcal{C}$ shifted p steps to the left with the coboundary operator given by $(-1)^p Q$. In these terms, the claim (2.50) means that the space of degree p chiral ring elements is isomorphic to the space of cochain maps $\mathcal{C}_1 \to \mathcal{C}_2[p]$ modulo homotopies, where $\mathcal{C}_1$ and $\mathcal{C}_2$ are the complexes associated with $(\mathcal{E}_1, Q_1)$ and $(\mathcal{E}_2, Q_2)$. Such a space is simply denoted by $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ho}}(\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2[p])$. Thus, we may say

$$\mathcal{H}^p(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ho}}(\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2[p]). \tag{2.53}$$

The ring structure is given by composition of cochain maps. The D-brane category we obtained, where the objects are complexes of trivial vector bundles over $\mathbf{C}^n$ and morphisms are cochain maps modulo homotopies (2.53), is what is known as *homotopy category* of the category of complexes of vector bundles over $\mathbf{C}^n$. This is in fact the same as the derived category of $\mathbf{C}^n$, which we will discuss momentarily in more general context. This point will be discussed further in Section 9.

Extensions

We would like to have a holomorphic or algebraic description of the chiral ring, like (2.53), in more general spaces. Here we present such a description for branes which are vector bundles, namely complexes where $\mathcal{E}^j$ is non-zero only for $j = 0$. Let (E_1, A_1) and (E_2, A_2) be vector bundles with connection which determine holomorphic vector bundles $\mathcal{E}_1$ and $\mathcal{E}_2$. The space (2.49) is simply the Dolbeault cohomology group which is linearly isomorphic to the Čech cohomology group of (the sheaf of holomorphic sections of) the holomorphic bundle $\mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{E}_1, \mathcal{E}_2) \cong \mathcal{E}_1^* \otimes \mathcal{E}_2$;

$$\mathcal{H}^p(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2) \cong H^{0,p}_{\overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2}}}(X, Hom(E_1, E_2)) \cong H^p(X, \mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{E}_1, \mathcal{E}_2)). \tag{2.54}$$

For $p = 0$, this is equal to the space of global holomorphic sections of $\mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{E}_1, \mathcal{E}_2)$, namely the space of global holomorphic bundles maps,

$$\mathcal{H}^0(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2) \cong \mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{E}_1, \mathcal{E}_2). \tag{2.55}$$

Indeed this is nothing but the answer obtained in (2.53). However, for $p > 0$, (2.53) would tell us that there is no chiral ring elements in the present situation, where both $\mathcal{B}_1$ and $\mathcal{B}_2$ are vector bundles. That is, however, not true in general since we may have $H^{0,p}_{\overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2}}}(X, Hom(E_1, E_2)) \neq 0$ for $p > 0$.

The $p = 1$ subspace $\mathcal{H}^1(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2)$ has the following algebraic characterization. Let $\phi \in \Omega^{0,1}(X, Hom(E_1, E_2))$ represent an element of $H^{0,1}_{\overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2}}}(X, Hom(E_1, E_2))$. It obeys $\overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2}}\phi = 0$. Then one can define a holomorphic structure $\mathcal{F}_\phi$ on $E_1 \oplus E_2$ by the operator

$$\overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2},\phi} = \begin{pmatrix} \overline{\partial}_{A_1} & 0 \\ \phi & \overline{\partial}_{A_2} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{2.56}$$

Indeed it squares to zero under the condition $\overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2}}\phi = 0$. The exact sequence $0 \to E_2 \to E_1 \oplus E_2 \to E_1 \to 0$ given by the trivial maps $e_2 \mapsto (0, e_2)$ and $(e_1, e_2) \mapsto e_1$ defines an exact sequence of holomorphic bundles

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{E}_2 \longrightarrow \mathcal{F}_\phi \longrightarrow \mathcal{E}_1 \longrightarrow 0. \tag{2.57}$$

Such a sequence is called an *extension* of $\mathcal{E}_1$ by $\mathcal{E}_2$. If ϕ is shifted by $\overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2}}$-exact form, $\phi \to \phi + \overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2}}\beta$, where $\beta \in \Gamma(X, Hom(E_1, E_2))$, there is an *isomorphism* of the extension (2.57) to the new one. Namely, there is a cochain map from (2.57) to the new one, which is identity at $\mathcal{E}_1$ and $\mathcal{E}_2$. The map in the middle is necessarily an isomorphism — explicitly it is given by $(e_1, e_2) \to (e_1, e_2 - \beta e_1)$. The set of isomorphism classes of extensions, denoted by $\mathrm{Ext}^1(\mathcal{E}_1, \mathcal{E}_2)$, is thus bijective to the cohomology group $H^{0,1}_{\overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2}}}(X, Hom(E_1, E_2))$. Thus, the space of $p = 1$ chiral ring elements is

$$\mathcal{H}^1(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2) \cong \mathrm{Ext}^1(\mathcal{E}_1, \mathcal{E}_2). \tag{2.58}$$

A structure of complex vector space can be defined on the set $\mathrm{Ext}^1(\mathcal{E}_1, \mathcal{E}_2)$ and (2.58) is a linear isomorphism. An extension (2.57) is a zero element if ϕ itself is exact, $\phi = \overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2}}\beta$. In that case, there is a holomorphic map $\mathcal{E}_1 \to \mathcal{F}_\phi$ (resp. $\mathcal{F}_\phi \to \mathcal{E}_2$) which gives the identity on $\mathcal{E}_1$ (resp. on $\mathcal{E}_2$) if it is followed by the map $\mathcal{F}_\phi \to \mathcal{E}_1$ of (2.57) (resp. preceded by the map $\mathcal{E}_2 \to \mathcal{F}_\phi$ of (2.57)). Explicitly, the map is given by $e_1 \to (e_1, -\beta e_1)$ (resp. $(e_1, e_2) \mapsto e_2 + \beta e_1$). Such a map is called a *splitting*, and an exact sequence with a

splitting is called *split exact*. An exact sequence represents the zero element of the group $\mathrm{Ext}^1(\mathcal{E}_1, \mathcal{E}_2)$ when it is split exact.

For higher p, algebraic characterization is not as simply derived as in the $p = 1$ case. We just quote the fact that $H^p(X, \mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{E}_1, \mathcal{E}_2))$ is linearly isomorphic to the group of equivalence classes of p-extensions of $\mathcal{E}_1$ by $\mathcal{E}_2$, $\mathrm{Ext}^p(\mathcal{E}_1, \mathcal{E}_2)$. A p-extension of $\mathcal{E}_1$ by $\mathcal{E}_2$ is an exact sequence of the form

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{E}_2 \longrightarrow \mathcal{F}_1 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \mathcal{F}_p \longrightarrow \mathcal{E}_1 \longrightarrow 0.$$

Equivalences of p-extensions are defined in a similar but slightly more involved way than in the $p = 1$ case. The extension defines the zero element of the group $\mathrm{Ext}^p(\mathcal{E}_1, \mathcal{E}_2)$ if there is a splitting $\mathcal{E}_1 \to \mathcal{F}_p$ or $\mathcal{F}_1 \to \mathcal{E}_2$. We refer the reader to [24] as well as Section 9 for more details.

Derived Category

What is the algebraic description of the space of chiral ring elements (2.49)? We have seen partial answers: For $X = \mathbf{C}^n$ it is the space of homotopy classes of cochain maps (2.53). For vector bundles it is the extension group $\mathrm{Ext}^p(\mathcal{E}_1, \mathcal{E}_2)$. In general, the answer is provided by the formalism of the derived category[2] — It is the space of morphisms of the derived category $\mathbf{D}$:

$$\mathcal{H}^p(\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{D}}(\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2[p]). \tag{2.59}$$

Here $\mathcal{C}_a$ is the complex of vector bundles associated with $\mathcal{B}_a = (\mathcal{E}_a, Q_a)$ and $\mathcal{C}_2[p]$ is the complex $\mathcal{C}_2$ shifted p-steps to the left. Let us sketch the definition of the right hand side of (2.59).

First we need to make a technical remark. A disadvantage in working with complexes of vector bundles is that the kernel and cokernel of a bundle map are not in general vector bundles. To remedy this problem, we introduce some mathematical objects called *sheaves (of $\mathcal{O}_X$-modules)* as generalization of vector bundles. Basically, we consider the space of local holomorphic sections of a vector bundle as a module over the ring of local holomorphic functions, and we generalize it by including any module of that ring. A map of sheaves is given by linear maps of the modules defined locally which satisfy certain compatibility condition. Section 9 provides a slightly more detailed explanation. The main point is that we can freely talk about the kernel and cokernel of a map of sheaves.

[2]Possible relevance of the derived category for brane-antibrane systems was first emphasized in [25].

We emphasize that this generalization is just to describe $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{D}}(-,-)$. Our branes are still complexes of vector bundles.

Of most importance is the notion of a *quasi-isomorphism*. A quasi-isomorphism from a complex of sheaves $\cdots \to \mathcal{E}^j \to \mathcal{E}^{j+1} \to \cdots$ to another one $\cdots \to \mathcal{F}^j \to \mathcal{F}^{j+1} \to \cdots$ is a cochain map that descends to an isomorphism at the cohomology level. Namely, each map $\mathcal{E}^j \to \mathcal{F}^j$ induces an isomoprphism from the cohomology sheaf $\mathrm{Ker}(\mathcal{E}^j \to \mathcal{E}^{j+1})/\mathrm{Im}(\mathcal{E}^{j-1} \to \mathcal{E}^j)$ to the cohomology sheaf $\mathrm{Ker}(\mathcal{F}^j \to \mathcal{F}^{j+1})/\mathrm{Im}(\mathcal{F}^{j-1} \to \mathcal{F}^j)$. Note that a shift of a cochain map by a homotopy does not change the map at the cohomology level. Thus, a chain map that is homotpy equivalent to a quasi-isomorphism is again a quasi-isomorphism.

Let us now describe the space of morphisms in the derived category $\mathbf{D}$. The homotopy classes of cochain maps define morphisms. In addition, we include the formal inverses of the homotopy classes of quasi-isomorphisms. Namely, if $q : \mathcal{C}_1 \to \mathcal{C}_2$ is a quasi-isomorphism, we include its formal inverse q^{-1} as a morphism from $\mathcal{C}_2$ to $\mathcal{C}_1$ which obeys the property that $q \circ q^{-1} = \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{C}_2}$ and $q^{-1} \circ q = \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{C}_1}$. Then $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{D}}(\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2)$ is defined as the set of all sequences of such extended morphisms starting from $\mathcal{C}_1$ and ending at $\mathcal{C}_2$, modulo the obvious identification

$$\Big(\mathcal{C}_1 \to \cdots \to \mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{f} \mathcal{C}' \xrightarrow{g} \mathcal{C}'' \to \cdots \to \mathcal{C}_2\Big) \;\equiv\; \Big(\mathcal{C}_1 \to \cdots \to \mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{g\circ f} \mathcal{C}'' \to \cdots \to \mathcal{C}_2\Big).$$

One can show that each morphism from $\mathcal{C}_1$ to $\mathcal{C}_2$ have presentations of the following forms

$$\mathcal{C}_1 \xrightarrow{q^{-1}} \mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{f} \mathcal{C}_2, \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathcal{C}_1 \xrightarrow{g} \mathcal{C}' \xrightarrow{q'^{-1}} \mathcal{C}_2,$$

where f and g are (the homotopy classes of) ordinary cochain maps and q^{-1} and q'^{-1} are the inverses of (the homotopy classes of) quasi-isomorphisms.

If there is a quasi-isomorphism $q : \mathcal{C}_1 \to \mathcal{C}_2$, then for any complex $\mathcal{C}$ there are linear isomorphisms, $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{D}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}_1) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{D}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}_2)$ and $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{D}}(\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{D}}(\mathcal{C}_2, \mathcal{C})$, given by composition with q or q^{-1} on the left and on the right. This means that two objects related by a chain of quasi-isomorphisms are isomorphic in the derived category.

Let us consider a complex $\mathcal{C}$ given by an exact sequence

$$\cdots \to \mathcal{E}^i \xrightarrow{Q_i} \mathcal{E}^{i+1} \xrightarrow{Q_{i+1}} \mathcal{E}^{i+2} \to \cdots \tag{2.60}$$

By definition of exactness, $\mathrm{Ker}(Q_i) = \mathrm{Im}(Q_{i-1})$, the cohomology sheaves are all zero. Hence the zero map from $\mathcal{C}$ to the zero sequence

$$\cdots \longrightarrow 0 \longrightarrow 0 \longrightarrow 0 \longrightarrow 0 \longrightarrow \cdots$$

(or back) is a quasi-isomorphism. In particular, the morphism space to and from any complex $\mathcal{C}'$ vanishes, $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{D}}(\mathcal{C},\mathcal{C}') = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{D}}(\mathcal{C}',\mathcal{C}) = 0$. Namely, $\mathcal{C}$ is a zero object in the derived category. Another important observation is that the exact complex $\mathcal{C}$ can be broken at any position j to obtain a pair of quasi-isomorphic complexes

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccccc}
\cdots\to & \mathcal{E}^{j-2} & \stackrel{-Q_{j-2}}{\longrightarrow} & \mathcal{E}^{j-1} & \stackrel{-Q_{j-1}}{\longrightarrow} & \mathcal{E}^{j} & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \to\cdots \\
 & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle Q_j} & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & \\
\cdots\to & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{E}^{j+1} & \stackrel{Q_{j+1}}{\longrightarrow} & \mathcal{E}^{j+2} & \stackrel{Q_{j+2}}{\longrightarrow} & \mathcal{E}^{j+3} & \to\cdots
\end{array} \tag{2.61}$$

That this is a quasi-isomorphism can be see easily by the exactness of $\mathcal{C}$. Conversely, if this is a quasi-isomorphism, the complex (2.60) is exact.

Let us comment on how (2.59) may be related to the results obtained earlier for special cases. First, for $X = \mathbf{C}^n$ we must show that the derived category is equivalent to the homotopy category. It is equal to the statement that a quasi-isomorphism is a chain isomorphism up to homotopy. In particular, there is no non-trivial extension between trivial vector bundles. This point has a particular importance in our paper and will be explained in Section 9. Next, let us consider vector bundles $\mathcal{E}_1$ and $\mathcal{E}_2$ on a more general space X and ask whether $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{D}}(\mathcal{E}_1,\mathcal{E}_2[p])$ is isomorphic to the extension group $\mathrm{Ext}^p(\mathcal{E}_1,\mathcal{E}_2)$. Let us demonstrate the map from the latter to the former for the $p=1$ case. Take an element of $\mathrm{Ext}^1(\mathcal{E}_1,\mathcal{E}_2)$ represented by an exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{E}_2 \stackrel{a}{\longrightarrow} \mathcal{F} \stackrel{b}{\longrightarrow} \mathcal{E}_1 \longrightarrow 0.$$

Then we find the following morphism $\mathcal{E}_1 \to \mathcal{E}_2[1]$ in the derived category

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
\to & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{E}_1 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \to \\
 & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow{\scriptstyle a} & & \uparrow & \\
\to & 0 & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{E}_2 & \stackrel{b}{\longrightarrow} & \mathcal{F} & \longrightarrow & 0 & \to \\
 & \downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}} & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & \\
\to & 0 & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{E}_2 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \to
\end{array}$$

From the first line to the second is the inverse of a quasi-isomorphism of the type (2.61). Alternatively, we could consider the morphism with $0 \to \mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{E}_1 \to 0$ in the second line and an inverse quasi-isomorphism from the second line to the third, but that is homotopy equivalent to the above one. The generalization to $p > 1$ is obvious.

Let us end the description of the derived category with another technical remark.[3] A general sheaf of $\mathcal{O}_X$-modules is in some way too general and, if possible, we would like

[3] We thank A. Bondal for everything that is said in this remark.

to work with something close to vector bundles. This motivates us to consider *coherent sheaves*. A coherent sheaf is realized locally as the cokernel of a map of sheaves of holomorphic sections of vector bundles. When X is algebraic, namely, if it is covered by open affine varieties, then it is known that the intermediate complexes of sheaves that appear in the definition of $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{D}}(\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2)$ can be taken from complexes of coherent sheaves. Also, any complex of coherent sheaves is known to be quasi-isomorphic to a complex of vector bundles. Thus, if X is algebraic, we can describe D-branes entirely by complexes of coherent sheaves, and the category $\mathbf{D}$ can be identified as what is known as the derived category of coherent sheaves of X. If X is not algebraic, we may need more general sheaves than coherent sheaves in the intermediate complexes to define $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{D}}(\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2)$. As the D-branes themselves, it is more natural to consider complexes of sheaves whose cohomology sheaves are coherent. They are slightly more general than complexes of vector bundles, but are not more general than twisted complexes (2.45). Namely, a twisted complex determines a complex of sheaves with coherent cohomology sheaves and any complex with coherent cohomologies is quasi-isomorphic to a complex coming from a twisted complex [26]. (There is also a work which studies this point [27].) In technical terms, the relevant category $\mathbf{D}$ is the full subcategory of the derived category of sheaves of $\mathcal{O}_X$-modules consisting of complexes with coherent cohomologies. When X is algebraic, this subcategory is equivalent to the derived category of coherent sheaves. In the rest of this paper, we only consider algebraic X's where we can entirely work with complexes of coherent sheaves. Fortunately enough, Calabi-Yau manifolds with $h^{2,0} = 0$ are all algebraic.

2.3 Orbifolds

When a quantum field theory in $1+1$ dimensions has a finite group of symmetries, one may consider gauging it. This is the operation known as *orbifold*. We remove all the states and operators that are not invariant under the group action, and at the same time, we include field configurations on a circle with preiodocity twisted by group elements, thus adding new sectors (twisted sectors) to the space of states and operators [28]. D-branes in an orbifold theory are simply boundary conditions and interactions that are invariant under the orbifold group action. The orbifold action on the Chan-Paton vectors must be included as a part of the data, in order to specify the action on the open string states so that one can select only the invariant states.

For the non-linear sigma model on a Riemannian manifold (X, g), a typical orbifold is associated with a group Γ of isometries of (X, g). A D-brane of the type $(E, A, \mathbf{T})$ is Γ-invariant when there is a lift of the Γ-action to the vector bundle E that preserves

the $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading, the gauge field A and the tachyon profile $\mathbf{T}$. In particular, there is an even linear bundle map $\rho(\gamma) : E \to E$ over each element $\gamma \in \Gamma$ such that the pull back connection of A is A itself and

$$\rho(\gamma)^{-1}\mathbf{T}(\gamma x)\rho(\gamma) = \mathbf{T}(x).$$

Note that the maps $\rho(\gamma)$ encode the information of the Γ-action on Chan-Paton factors: For the open string stretched from a brane $(E_1, A_1, \mathbf{T}_1, \rho_1)$ to another brane $(E_2, A_2, \mathbf{T}_2, \rho_2)$, the $\gamma \in \Gamma$ action on open string wavefunctions is

$$\gamma : \Psi(x) \longmapsto \rho_2(\gamma)^{-1}\Psi(\gamma x)\rho_1(\gamma).$$

We are interested only in wavefunctions that are invariant under this orbifold action.

If (X, g) is a Kähler manifold and if the isometry group Γ preserves also the complex structure, the orbifold theory has $(2, 2)$ supersymmetry. An $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ invariant D-brane in the orbifold theory can be provided by the usual data (E, A, Q) together with a Γ-action, $\rho(\gamma) : E \to E$, with the obvious invariance condition including

$$\rho(\gamma)^{-1}Q(\gamma x)\rho(\gamma) = Q(x).$$

A $U(1)$ R-symmetry of such a brane is an R-symmetry R of (E, A, Q) that preserves the Γ-invariance condition of open string wavefunctions. It is easy to see that it requires

$$R(\lambda)\rho(\gamma) = c_{\lambda,\gamma} \cdot \rho(\gamma)R(\lambda)$$

where $c_{\lambda,\gamma}$ is a complex number which is independent of the brane. Setting $\lambda = 1$ or $\gamma = 1$ we find $c_{1,\gamma} = c_{\alpha,1} = 1$. Also, by group property $R(\lambda_1\lambda_2) = R(\lambda_1)R(\lambda_2)$ and $\rho(\gamma_1\gamma_2) = \rho(\gamma_1)\rho(\gamma_2)$, we find $c_{\lambda_1\lambda_2,\gamma} = c_{\lambda_1,\gamma}c_{\lambda_2,\gamma}$ and $c_{\lambda,\gamma_1\gamma_2} = c_{\lambda,\gamma_1}c_{\lambda,\gamma_2}$. By the first equation, one can write $c_{\lambda,\gamma} = \lambda^{f(\gamma)}$ for some complex valued function f of Γ and then the second equation says $f(\gamma_1\gamma_2) = f(\gamma_1) + f(\gamma_2)$. Also, $c_{\alpha,1} = 1$ means $f(1) = 0$. Since Γ is a finite group, say with order d, we have $\gamma^d = 1$ for any $\gamma \in \Gamma$. Thus, we find $0 = f(1) = f(\gamma^d) = d \cdot f(\gamma)$, namely, $f(\gamma) = 0$ for any $\gamma \in \Gamma$. This means $c_{\lambda,\gamma} = 1$ for any λ and γ. Thus, we conclude that the R-symmetry in the orbifold theory must satisfy

$$R(\lambda)\rho(\gamma) = \rho(\gamma)R(\lambda).$$

We find that the data to specify an R-graded D-brane in the orbifold theory is the quintuple (E, A, Q, R, ρ) and corresponds to a complex of Γ-equivariant vector bundles.

Of particular importance is the orbifold of the Euclidean space $X = \mathbf{C}^n$ with a finite group Γ of linear transformations. For each representation of the orbifold group, $\rho : \Gamma \to$

$GL(V)$, we have a D-brane associated with the trival vector bundle with fibre V and trivial gauge connection $A = 0$ with the natural Γ-action. We denote it by $\mathcal{O}(\rho)$. If the group is isomorphic to the cyclic group $\Gamma \cong \mathbf{Z}_d$, its irreducible representation is one-dimensional and is specified by a mod d integer, $m \in \mathbf{Z}_d$, with $\rho_m : l \in \mathbf{Z}_d \mapsto \mathrm{e}^{2\pi i m l} \in U(1)$. We often write $\mathcal{O}(\rho_m)$ simply by $\mathcal{O}(m)$. Note that all these branes $\mathcal{O}(\rho)$ are extending in the entire space $\mathbf{C}^n/\Gamma$. A general D-brane may be "represented" as a complex of these branes in the sense that is specified in the next section. For example, in Section 3.2 we will find such a representation for D0-branes stuck at the orbifold fixed point $0 \in \mathbf{C}^n$. These are known as the *fractional branes* [29–31].

The closed string sector of the orbifold theory on $\mathbf{C}^n/\Gamma$ has a charge integrality — any NS-NS operator has integral vector R-charge that matches modulo 2 to the statistics. (The axial R-charges are not necessarily integral unless the Calabi-Yau condition $\det \gamma = 1$ is met.) In order to preserve this integrality, we require the R-charge of the even (*resp.* odd) Chan-Paton vector to be even (*resp.* odd) integer.

2.4 Landau-Ginzburg Models: Matrix Factorizations

Let us consider the $(2,2)$ supersymmetric Landau-Ginzburg model of N variables $X_1, ..., X_N$ with a polynomial superpotential $W(X) = W(X_1, ..., X_N)$. The Lagrangian density is given by

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{L} &= \int \sum_{i=1}^{N} \overline{X_i} X_i \, \mathrm{d}^4\theta \; + \; \left(\frac{i}{2} \int W(X) \, \mathrm{d}^2\theta \; + \; c.c. \right) \; + \text{ total derivative} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{N} \left(|\partial_t x_i|^2 - |\partial_s x_i|^2 + i\overline{\psi}_{i-} (\overleftrightarrow{\partial_t} + \overleftrightarrow{\partial_s}) \psi_{i-} + i\overline{\psi}_{i+} (\overleftrightarrow{\partial_t} - \overleftrightarrow{\partial_s}) \psi_{i+} - \frac{1}{4} \left| \frac{\partial W(x)}{\partial x_i} \right|^2 \right) \\
&\quad + \left(-\frac{i}{2} \sum_{i,j=1}^{N} \psi_{i+} \psi_{j-} \frac{\partial^2 W(x)}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} + \; c.c \right),
\end{aligned} \tag{2.62}$$

where the auxiliary field is eliminated in the second equality. We would like to formulate this theory on the worldsheet $\mathbb{S}$ with boundary, and find boundary interactions that respect the $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetry

$$\delta x_i = \epsilon \psi_i, \qquad \delta \psi_{i\pm} = -i\overline{\epsilon} (\partial_0 \pm \partial_1) x_i \pm \frac{i}{2} \epsilon \frac{\partial \overline{W(x)}}{\partial \overline{x_i}}. \tag{2.63}$$

With the addition of the standard boundary term

$$L^{(0)}_{\text{bdry}} = \left[-\frac{i}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{N} (\psi_{i+} \overline{\psi}_{i-} + \overline{\psi}_{i+} \psi_{i-}) \right]_{\partial \mathbb{S}}, \tag{2.64}$$

the bulk action varies as

$$\delta\left[\int_{\mathbb{S}}\mathcal{L}\,\mathrm{d}^2s+\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}}L^{(0)}_{\mathrm{bdry}}\mathrm{d}t\right]=-\mathrm{Re}\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}}\sum_{i=1}^{N}\left(\overline{\epsilon}\psi^i\frac{\partial W(x)}{\partial x_i}\right)\,\mathrm{d}t. \tag{2.65}$$

This is known as the "Warner term" after [32]. (See [9] for a simple superfield derivation.)

The main task is to cancel the Warner term (2.65) by adding a suitable boundary term to the action [10, 33]. Let us try our friend

$$\mathcal{A}_t=-\frac{1}{2}\sum_{i=1}^{N}\psi_i\frac{\partial}{\partial x_i}Q(x)+\frac{1}{2}\sum_{i=1}^{N}\overline{\psi}_i\frac{\partial}{\partial\overline{x}_i}Q(x)^\dagger+\frac{1}{2}\{Q(x),Q(x)^\dagger\}, \tag{2.66}$$

where $Q(x)$ is an odd operator on a $\mathbf{Z}_2$-graded vector space $\mathcal{V}$ which depends holomorphically on x. Its $\mathcal{N}=2_B$ variation, computed in (2.29), reads

$$\delta\mathcal{A}_t\;=\;-\mathrm{Re}\left\{\sum_{i=1}^{N}\left(\overline{\epsilon}\psi_i\frac{\partial}{\partial x_i}Q^2\right)-[\overline{\epsilon}Q^\dagger,Q^2]\right\}+i\mathcal{D}_t\Big(\overline{\epsilon}Q+\epsilon Q^\dagger\Big)-i\Big(\dot{\overline{\epsilon}}Q+\dot{\epsilon}Q^\dagger\Big). \tag{2.67}$$

The first term cancels the Warner term (2.65) provided that Q satisfies[1]

$$Q^2=W\cdot\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{V}}. \tag{2.68}$$

The remaining terms in (2.67) are as in non-linear sigma models: The second term, where $\mathcal{D}_tX=\dot{X}+i[\mathcal{A}_t,X]$, leads to a total derivative when inserted between the Wilson lines $P\exp\left(-i\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}}\mathcal{A}_t\mathrm{d}t\right)$ with the right time-ordering. The third term shows that Q and $Q^\dagger$ enter into the $\mathcal{N}=2_B$ supercharges $\mathbf{Q}$ and $\mathbf{Q}^\dagger$. For the open string stretched between $(\mathcal{V}_1,Q_1)$ and $(\mathcal{V}_2,Q_2)$, the supercharge $\mathbf{Q}$ is expressed as the sum $\mathbf{Q}_{\mathrm{bulk}}+\mathbf{Q}_{\mathrm{bdry}}$ where

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{Q}_{\mathrm{bulk}}&=\int_0^L\mathrm{d}s\sum_{i=1}^{N}\left(\overline{\psi_i}\partial_tx_i+\overline{\widetilde{\psi}}_i\partial_sx_i+\widetilde{\psi}_i\frac{\partial W}{\partial x_i}\right)\\ \mathbf{Q}_{\mathrm{bdry}}&=-iQ_2\Big|_{s=L}+iQ_1\Big|_{s=0}.\end{aligned}$$

The canonical commutation relation yields the supersymmetry relation $\mathbf{Q}^2=0$; $\mathbf{Q}^2_{\mathrm{bulk}}$ gives a boundary term $W|_L-W|_0$ that is canced by $\mathbf{Q}^2_{\mathrm{bdry}}$ as a consequence of (2.68).

An odd holomorphic operator $Q(x)$ of a $\mathbf{Z}_2$-graded vector space $\mathcal{V}=\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{ev}}\oplus\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{od}}$ can be represented by a holomorphic matrix of the form

$$Q(x)=\begin{pmatrix}0&f(x)\\ g(x)&0\end{pmatrix}.$$

[1] $Q^2=(W+c)\cdot\mathrm{id}_V$ for some constant c is also allowed. However, since we will consider branes with R-symmetry, which require $c=0$, we restrict our attention to those with $c=0$.

It satisfies the condition (2.68) if and only if the even and the odd parts of $\mathcal{V}$ have the same rank, say r, and

$$f(x)g(x) = g(x)f(x) = W(x)\mathbf{1}_r. \tag{2.69}$$

Such a matrix Q, or a pair of matrices (f, g), is called a *matrix factorization* of W.

Let us briefly comment on the relation of this to the tachyon $\mathbf{T}$ in $\mathcal{N} = 1$ Landau-Ginzburg model with the real superpotential $h(x)$. By comparison of the potential and Yukawa-type terms, we see that the $\mathcal{N} = (2, 2)$ Landau-Ginzburg model with superpotential W is equal to the $\mathcal{N} = (1, 1)$ Landau-Ginzburg model with $h = \frac{W}{2} + \frac{\overline{W}}{2} = \mathrm{Re}(W)$. The variation (2.65) is of course the same as (2.17) as far as the $\mathcal{N} = 1$ part is concerned. We have seen that the system is $\mathcal{N} = 1$ supersymmetric with the additional boundary term (2.18),

$$\Delta L^{(0)}_{\mathrm{bdry}} = -\left[\frac{1}{2}W + \frac{1}{2}\overline{W}\right]_{\partial\mathbb{S}}. \tag{2.70}$$

Also, the boundary interaction of the form (2.13) is $\mathcal{N} = 1$ invariant by itself for any tachyon profile $\mathbf{T}(x)$. If we include it with $\mathbf{T} = iQ(x) - iQ(x)^\dagger$, we obtain precisely the above system (2.66) provided $Q(x)$ obeys (2.68). Indeed the interaction (2.13) includes extra terms $-\frac{1}{2}Q^2 - \frac{1}{2}Q^{\dagger 2}$ compared to (2.66) but those are cancelled by the term $-\Delta L^{(0)}_{\mathrm{bdry}}$ from (2.70) provided $Q^2 = W \cdot \mathrm{id}$.

Chiral Sector

The space of chiral ring elements for a pair of branes $\mathcal{B}_1 = (\mathcal{V}_1, Q_1)$ and $\mathcal{B}_2 = (\mathcal{V}_2, Q_2)$ can be studied, as before, by the zero mode approximation where the supercharge $i\mathbf{Q}$ acts on the space $\Omega^{0,\bullet}(\mathbf{C}^N, Hom(\mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_2))$ as a Dolbeault-like operator $\overline{\partial}\phi + Q_2\phi - (-1)^{|\phi|}\phi Q_1$. Since any $\overline{\partial}$-closed form of positive degree is $\overline{\partial}$-exact on $\mathbf{C}^N$, one can further truncate to the subspace consisting of holomorphic functions of $\mathbf{C}^N$ with values in $Hom(\mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_2)$. Thus, we have a relation similar to (2.50). In this paper, as we will explain momentarily, we consider matrix factorizations that are polynomials of $x_1, .., x_N$. Then, one can further truncate to the space of polynomial functions of $x_1, ..., x_N$ with values in $Hom(\mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_2)$. In this situation, it turns out to be convenient to use algebraic terminology associated with the polynomial ring $\mathcal{R} = \mathbf{C}[x_1, ..., x_N]$. For each $\mathbf{Z}_2$-graded Chan-Paton space $\mathcal{V} = \mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{ev}} \oplus \mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{od}}$ we introduce the $\mathbf{Z}_2$-graded $\mathcal{R}$-module $M = \mathcal{V} \otimes_{\mathbf{C}} \mathcal{R} = M^{\mathrm{ev}} \oplus M^{\mathrm{od}}$. The space of polynomial functions with values in $Hom(V_1, V_2)$ is equal to the space $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{R}}(M_1, M_2)$ of homomorphisms of the $\mathcal{R}$-module M_1 to the $\mathcal{R}$-module M_2. It is of course $\mathbf{Z}_2$-graded, $\mathrm{Hom}^{\mathrm{ev}}_{\mathcal{R}}(M_1, M_2) = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{R}}(M_1^{\mathrm{ev}}, M_2^{\mathrm{ev}}) \oplus \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{R}}(M_1^{\mathrm{od}}, M_2^{\mathrm{od}})$ and $\mathrm{Hom}^{\mathrm{od}}_{\mathcal{R}}(M_1, M_2) = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{R}}(M_1^{\mathrm{ev}}, M_2^{\mathrm{od}}) \oplus \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{R}}(M_1^{\mathrm{ev}}, M_2^{\mathrm{od}})$. The relation analogous to

(2.50) can be written as

$$\mathcal{H}^p(\mathcal{B}_1,\mathcal{B}_2) \cong H^p_{\mathbf{Q}^{pol}}(\mathrm{Hom}^\bullet_{\mathcal{R}}(M_1,M_2)) \qquad p=\mathrm{ev/od}, \tag{2.71}$$

where $\mathbf{Q}^{pol}$ is given by

$$i\mathbf{Q}^{pol}\phi = Q_2\phi - (-1)^{|\phi|}\phi Q_1.$$

There is an alternative way to describe these cohomology groups. Let us introduce an infinite sequence of maps which is 2-periodic

$$\mathcal{C}_Q: \qquad \cdots \xrightarrow{f} M^{\mathrm{ev}} \xrightarrow{g} M^{\mathrm{od}} \xrightarrow{f} M^{\mathrm{ev}} \xrightarrow{g} M^{\mathrm{od}} \xrightarrow{f} \cdots \tag{2.72}$$

Over the ring $B=\mathbf{C}[x_1,\ldots,x_N]/(W)$, where any multiple of W is regarded zero, this is a complex of B-modules due to the matrix factorization condition $f\cdot g = g\cdot f = W\mathrm{id}$. In fact it is exact everywhere. (We will show this later in Section 10.3 where we will revisit such infinite complexes.) Such a complex is called a *totally acyclic complex* of B-modules. Then, the space of chiral ring elements for a pair of branes is isomorphic to the space of cochain maps from $\mathcal{C}_{Q_1}$ to $\mathcal{C}_{Q_2}$ modulo homotopies,

$$\mathcal{H}^p(\mathcal{B}_1,\mathcal{B}_2) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ho}}(\mathcal{C}_{Q_1},\mathcal{C}_{Q_1}[p]) \qquad \text{for } p=\mathrm{ev/od}, \tag{2.73}$$

where $\mathcal{C}[\mathrm{ev}]$ is $\mathcal{C}$ itself while $\mathcal{C}[\mathrm{od}]$ is the complex $\mathcal{C}$ shifted by one with Q replaced by $-Q$.

R-Symmetry

If the superpotential $W(x_1,...,x_N)$ is quasi-homogeneous of degree $(d_1,...,d_N)$, such as the Fermat polynomial $W=x_1^{d_1}+\cdots+x_N^{d_N}$, the bulk theory has vector $U(1)$ R-symmetry where x_i has R-charge $2/d_i$:

$$W(\lambda^{2/d_1}x_1,...,\lambda^{2/d_N}x_N) = \lambda^2 W(x_1,...,x_N). \tag{2.74}$$

The bulk LG model is believed to flow in the infra-red limit to a $(2,2)$ superconformal field theory with central charge $\hat{c}=\sum_{i=1}^N(1-2/d_i)$, where this R-symmetry becomes a part of the superconformal algebra. The R-charges of NS-NS states are in general not integral.

This vector R-symmetry is preserved by the D-brane $(\mathcal{V},Q)$ if the matrix factorization is quasi-homogeneous [34]. Namely,

$$R(\lambda)Q(\lambda^{2/d_1}x_1,...,\lambda^{2/d_N}x_N)R(\lambda)^{-1} = \lambda Q(x_1,...,x_N). \tag{2.75}$$

$R(\lambda)$ is a one parameter group of operators on $\mathcal{V}$ — it depends on $\lambda = \mathrm{e}^{i\alpha}$ in such a way that $R(\lambda_1\lambda_2) = R(\lambda_1)R(\lambda_2)$. We do not require that it is invariant under $\alpha \to \alpha + 2\pi$, i.e., $R(\lambda)$ may contain fractional powers of λ. Notice that the condition (2.75) requires that $Q(x)$ must be a polynomial in $x_1, ..., x_N$.

For two R-symmetric branes, $(\mathcal{V}_1, Q_1)$ with R_1 and $(\mathcal{V}_2, Q_2)$ with R_2, the R-symmetry acts on the open string states. In the holomorphic sector,[2] the action is

$$\mathbf{R}(\lambda) : \phi(x_1, ..., x_N) \longmapsto R_2(\lambda)\phi(\lambda^{2/d_1}x_1, ...\lambda^{2/d_N}x_N)R_1(\lambda)^{-1}. \tag{2.76}$$

It introduces a new grading in the space of open string states. Note that a state of definite R-degree is necessarily a polynomial. The R-degree is not in general integral. In particular, the R-grading and the $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading can be completely independent.

As an example, let us consider the LG model of single variable X with superpotential $W = X^d$. The bulk theory flows to a rational conformal field theory (RCFT) called the A-type minimal model at level $k = d-2$. An obvious matrix factorization is $W = x^n \cdot x^{d-n}$, that is,

$$Q_n(x) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & x^n \\ x^{d-n} & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{2.77}$$

If $1 \le n \le d-1$, this brane is believed to flow to the conformally invariant boundary condition in the minimal model known as the Cardy brane with $L = (n-1)$ (see for example [35] for Cardy branes in RCFTs, [36, 37] for D-branes in $(2,2)$ minimal models and [38, 39] for relation to LG branes). It has the property (2.75) with

$$R_n(\lambda) = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda^{\frac{1}{2}-\frac{n}{d}} & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda^{-\frac{1}{2}+\frac{n}{d}} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{2.78}$$

The n-dependence in the overall phase of $R_n(\lambda)$ is chosen so that it agrees with the R-symmetry of the infra-red fixed point [34, 40]. Indeed, for the Q_{n_1}-Q_{n_2} string, the space of chiral ring elements is spanned by

$$\phi_j^{\mathrm{ev}}(x) = \begin{pmatrix} x^{j-\frac{n_1-n_2}{2}} & 0 \\ 0 & x^{j+\frac{n_1-n_2}{2}} \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \phi_j^{\mathrm{od}}(x) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & x^{\frac{n_1+n_2}{2}-j-1} \\ -x^{d-\frac{n_1+n_2}{2}-j-1} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.79}$$

where j runs over $\frac{|n_1-n_2|}{2}, \frac{|n_1-n_2|}{2}+1, \ldots, \min\left\{\frac{n_1+n_2}{2}-1, d-\frac{n_1+n_2}{2}-1\right\}$. With the choice (2.78), the R-charges of these elements are $\frac{2j}{d}$ for ϕ_j^{ev} and $1-\frac{2j+2}{d}$ for ϕ_j^{od} which are the right R-charges for open string NS-states between the corresponding minimal model branes [37].

[2]Somewhat loosely, we use the terms "local operators" and "open string states" interchangeably. Note that local operators naturally correspond to open string states in the NS sector and, if B-twist is possible, also to open string states in the Ramond sector.

2.4.1 Landau-Ginzburg Orbifold

The Landau-Ginzburg model with quasi-homogeneous superpotential $W(x)$ of degree $(d_1, ..., d_N)$ has symmetry

$$(x_1, ..., x_N) \longmapsto (\mathrm{e}^{2\pi i/d_1} x_1, ..., \mathrm{e}^{2\pi i/d_N} x_N). \tag{2.80}$$

This generates the cyclic group of order $d = \text{l.c.m.}(d_1, ..., d_N)$, which we call Γ_0. Gauging this symmetry group, we obtain a Landau-Ginzburg orbifold theory. This orbifold theory has a charge integrality — the vector R-charges of NS-NS states are integers whose mod 2 reduction matches with the statistics of the corresponding operators. In particular, there is a one-to-one correspondence between R-R ground states and ac-primary operators.[3]

A D-brane in this LG orbifold is specified by the triple $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho)$ where $(\mathcal{V}, Q)$ is a matrix factorization and ρ is a representation of the group Γ_0 such that

$$\rho(\omega)^{-1} Q(\omega \cdot x)\rho(\omega) = Q(x), \qquad \forall \omega \in \Gamma_0. \tag{2.81}$$

ρ determines the action of the orbifold group on the Chan-Paton factor in the theory before orbifolding, and the equation (2.81) means that the tachyon profile is invariant under that orbifold group action. For the brane pair $(\mathcal{V}_1, Q_1, \rho_1)$, $(\mathcal{V}_2, Q_2, \rho_2)$, the open string states in the orbifold theory are Γ_0-invariant states. In the polynomial sector, the condition of Γ_0-invariance is

$$\rho_2(\omega)^{-1} \phi(\omega \cdot x)\rho_1(\omega) = \phi(x). \tag{2.82}$$

Since the bulk theory has vector R-symmetry with integrality, we would like the branes to respect that as well [34, 41]. Namely, we would like that the branes are quasihomogeneous, that is, equation (2.75) is satisfied, and that the R-grading in the NS sector is integral and reduces modulo 2 to the original $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading. The R-symmetry action (2.76) preserves the Γ_0-invariance condition when $R(\lambda)\rho(\omega) = c_{\lambda,\omega}\rho(\omega)R(\lambda)$ for a brane independent scalar $c_{\lambda,\omega}$. As in the case of orbifolds of non-linear sigma models, one can show $c_{\lambda,\omega} = 1$. Thus, we require

$$R(\lambda)\rho(\omega) = \rho(\omega)R(\lambda). \tag{2.83}$$

The charge integrality requires that

$$R_2(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})\phi(\mathrm{e}^{\frac{2\pi i}{d_1}} x_1, ..., \mathrm{e}^{\frac{2\pi i}{d_N}} x_N) R_1(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})^{-1} = (-1)^{|\phi|}\phi(x_1, ..., x_N).$$

[3] If the degrees obey the "Calabi-Yau condition" $1/d_1 + \cdots + 1/d_N = 1$, then the axial R-charges are also integral and there is a spectral flow between R-R ground states and cc-primary operators.

Using the orbifold invariance (2.82), this is equivalent to

$$R_2(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})\rho_2(\mathrm{e}^{\frac{2\pi i}{d}})\phi(x)\rho_1(\mathrm{e}^{\frac{2\pi i}{d}})^{-1}R_1(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})^{-1} = (-1)^{|\phi|}\phi(x), \tag{2.84}$$

where $\omega = \mathrm{e}^{\frac{2\pi i}{d}}$ is the generator (2.80) of Γ_0. Let σ_1 and σ_2 be the $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading operators on $\mathcal{V}_1$ and $\mathcal{V}_2$, acting as 1 on even elements and -1 on odd elements. Then, we have $(-1)^{|\phi|}\phi = \sigma_2\phi\sigma_1^{-1}$. Thus the integrality condition (2.84) is satisfied if $R_i(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})\rho_i(\mathrm{e}^{\frac{2\pi i}{d}}) = c\cdot\sigma_i$ for $i = 1, 2$ for some common constant c. We simply choose $c = 1$. Thus, we restrict our attention to branes $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho)$ with R-symmetry R that obeys

$$R(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})\rho(\mathrm{e}^{\frac{2\pi i}{d}}) = \sigma_{\mathcal{V}}, \tag{2.85}$$

where σ_V is the $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading operator on $\mathcal{V}$. As in non-linear sigma models, there is an ambiguity $R(\lambda) \to \lambda^2 R(\lambda)$ that does not change the physical property of the brane but changes the R-grading. We again call the brane with this additional data $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$ a *graded D-brane*. By the condition (2.85), a graded D-brane in the theory with the orbifold group Γ_0 is specified simply by $(\mathcal{V}, Q, R)$ such that $R(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})\sigma_{\mathcal{V}}$ obeys $(R(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})\sigma_{\mathcal{V}})^d = 1$. For this reason, in some literature, such as [5], only the R-symmetry action is used to specify a data for a graded D-brane in this class of LG orbifolds.

The superpotential W may have a larger symmetry group Γ by which we can define the orbifold theory. As long as Γ includes Γ_0, the closed string sector has a charge integrality, and we require that it is extended to the boundary or open string sector. The requirement is just like (2.85), $R(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})\rho(\omega_{-1}) = \sigma_V$, where ω_{-1} is the element of Γ that acts on x_i in the same way as the R-symmetry action for $\lambda = \mathrm{e}^{\pi i}$. Such an element exists in Γ since it includes Γ_0 by assumption.

Recknagel-Schomerus Branes

As examples, let us consider tensor products of minimal model branes (2.77) in the model with Fermat type superpotential $W = X_1^{d_1} + \cdots + X_N^{d_N}$. They are known as *RS-branes* after Recknagel and Schomerus who first studied these branes in the framework of RCFT [42]. They are most conveniently described in terms of the Clifford algebra

$$\{\eta_i, \overline{\eta}_j\} = \delta_{i,j}, \quad \{\eta_i, \eta_j\} = \{\overline{\eta}_i, \overline{\eta}_j\} = 0. \tag{2.86}$$

The latter is represented on the 2^N-dimensional space $\mathcal{V}_N$ (the Clifford module), which is generated by a vector $|0\rangle$ annihilated by all η_i's. There are two $\mathbf{Z}_2$-gradings on $\mathcal{V}_N$: the

first is such that even and odd multiples of $\overline{\eta}_i$'s on $|0\rangle$ are even and odd, and the second is the opposite one. The sum of minimal model branes is written as

$$Q_{\mathbf{L}} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \left(x_i^{L_i+1} \eta_i + x_i^{d_i-L_i-1} \overline{\eta}_i \right). \tag{2.87}$$

This is invariant under the orbifold group $\Gamma_0 \cong \mathbf{Z}_d$ as well as the R-symmetry, with the transformations $\eta_i \to \omega^{-L_i-1}\eta_i$ and $\eta_i \to \lambda^{1-\frac{2(L_i+1)}{d_i}}\eta_i$ (with conjugate action on $\overline{\eta}_i$'s). The representations of the orbifold and R-symmetry groups on the Chan-Paton space are specified by the action on the vector $|0\rangle$ — action on other vectors are determined by the transformations of the $\overline{\eta}_i$'s. The orbifold representation is labeled by a mod d integer $\bar{q}$:

$$\rho_{\bar{q}}(\omega) : |0\rangle \mapsto \omega^{\bar{q}}|0\rangle.$$

The condition of integrality (2.85) requires that the R-charge $R_{|0\rangle}$ of the state $|0\rangle$ must be of the form

$$R_{|0\rangle} = -\frac{2q}{d} + r$$

where q is an integer representing $\bar{q}$ mod d, while r is an even integer for the first $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading and an odd interger for the second one. We shall denote the D-brane that corresponds to the above data by $\mathcal{B}_{\mathbf{L},q,r}$. The label is a little redundant: obviously $(\mathbf{L}, q, r) \to (\mathbf{L}, q+d, r+2)$ does not change the brane. Also, the exchange $x_i^{L_i+1} \leftrightarrow x_i^{d_i-L-1}$ is compensated by the exchange $\eta_i \leftrightarrow \overline{\eta}_i$, and this leads to the identification of branes under $L_i \to d_i - L_i - 1$ (for one i), $q \to q - \frac{d(L_i+1)}{d_i}$, $r \to r-1$. The translation to the standard notation for the RS-branes $B_{\mathbf{L},M,S}$ (see e.g. [43]) is $2q = M + \sum_{i=1}^{N} \frac{d(L_i+1)}{d_i} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \frac{d(M_i+L_i+1)}{d_i}$ (mod $2d$) and $2r = S$ (mod 4) up to an overall shift. Matrix factorization realizations of these branes were first discussed in [43, 44].

These branes are indecomposable except for the case where there are two or more i's with $L_i + 1 = \frac{d_i}{2}$ (which necessarily requires that d_i is even for such i). In the latter case, it splits into a sum of indecomposable ones known as *short orbit branes* $\widehat{\mathcal{B}}^{(\pm)}_{\mathbf{L},q,r}$. For example, if there are exactly two or three such i's the RS-brane $\mathcal{B}_{\mathbf{L},q,r}$ splits into two:

$$\mathcal{B}_{\mathbf{L},q,r} \cong \widehat{\mathcal{B}}^{(+)}_{\mathbf{L},q,r} \oplus \widehat{\mathcal{B}}^{(-)}_{\mathbf{L},q,r}. \tag{2.88}$$

To define short orbit branes, we denote by $\mathbf{S}$ the set of i's such that $L_i + 1 = \frac{d_i}{2}$ and consider

$$Q = \sum_{i\in\mathbf{S}} x_i^{\frac{d_i}{2}} \xi_i + \sum_{j\notin\mathbf{S}} \Big(x_j^{L_j+1} \eta_j + x_j^{d_j-L_j-1} \overline{\eta}_j \Big), \tag{2.89}$$

where ξ_i are *real* Clifford generators

$$\{\xi_i, \xi_j\} = 2\delta_{i,j}, \qquad \{\xi_i, \eta_k\} = \{\xi_i, \overline{\eta}_k\} = 0.$$

If the number of elements $|\mathbf{S}|$ is odd, we introduce one extra real Clifford generator ξ_0. We choose an orientation in the space of ξ_i's. We then introduce *complex* generators $\eta_{i_1 j_1} = \frac{1}{2}(\xi_{i_1} + i\xi_{j_1})$,..., $\eta_{i_s j_s} = \frac{1}{2}(\xi_{i_s} + i\xi_{j_s})$, and their complex conjugates $\overline{\eta}_{i_1 j_1} = \frac{1}{2}(\xi_{i_1} - i\xi_{j_1})$,..., $\overline{\eta}_{i_s j_s} = \frac{1}{2}(\xi_{i_s} - i\xi_{j_s})$, where $(\xi_{i_1}, \xi_{j_1}, ..., \xi_{i_s}, \xi_{j_s})$ is positively oriented. They form a complex Clifford algebra together with η_j and $\overline{\eta}_j$. The expression (2.89) then becomes a matrix factorization on the Clifford module. As before we denote the element annihilated by all η_{ij} and η_k by $|0\rangle$. Defining the label (q, r) in the same way as the RS-branes, we have a brane in the LG orbifold which we denote by $\widehat{\mathcal{B}}^{(+)}_{\mathbf{L},q,r}$. One can see that it depends only on the orientation of ξ_i's. The key point is that ξ_i is invariant under the R-symmetry and transforms as $\xi_i \to -\xi_i$ under the orbifold group generator ($x_i^{d_i/2}$ already has R-charge 1 and transforms by sign under the orbifold generator). The one associated with the opposite orientation is denoted as $\widehat{\mathcal{B}}^{(-)}_{\mathbf{L},q,r}$. Thus, $(+)$ versus $(-)$ is defined with respect to the orientation of ξ_i's. Using the key point again, we find the relation $\widehat{\mathcal{B}}^{(-)}_{\mathbf{L},q,r} \cong \widehat{\mathcal{B}}^{(+)}_{\mathbf{L},q+\frac{d}{2},r+1}$. If $|\mathbf{S}|$ is odd, the $(+)$ and $(-)$ branes are isomorphic and we shall simply write $\widehat{\mathcal{B}}_{\mathbf{L},q,r}$ for $\widehat{\mathcal{B}}^{(+)}_{\mathbf{L},q,r} \cong \widehat{\mathcal{B}}^{(-)}_{\mathbf{L},q,r}$. For the case $|\mathbf{S}| = 1$, it is the same as the standard RS-brane, $\widehat{\mathcal{B}}_{\mathbf{L},q,r} \cong \mathcal{B}_{\mathbf{L},q,r}$. A matrix factorization realization of short orbit branes, which is equivalent to the above, was first noticed in [45] based on the analysis of R-R charge. A derivation from the short orbit branes in minimal models will be given in Section 3.4.

The Fermat potential $X_1^{d_1} + \cdots + X_N^{d_N}$ has a larger symmetry group $\mathbf{Z}_{d_1} \times \cdots \times \mathbf{Z}_{d_N}$ and the brane $Q_{\mathbf{L}}$ is invariant under all the elements of that group. If we take the orbifold group Γ to be larger than $\Gamma_0 \cong \mathbf{Z}_d$, then we need more labels to specify the orbifold action on the Chan-Paton factor. For example, we may use $\vec{q} = (q_1, ..., q_N)$ with

$$\rho_{\vec{q}}(\omega) = \omega_1^{\bar{q}_1} \cdots \omega_N^{\bar{q}_N} \quad \text{on } |0\rangle,$$

for the orbifold element ω which maps $x_i \mapsto \omega_i x_i$. The translation to the standard notation is then $2q_i = M_i + L_i + 1$ (again up to a universal shift).

3 Renormalization Group Flows

Given a D-brane realized as a boundary Lagrangian, we are interested in how it behaves at low energies, or equivalently, at long distances on the worldsheet. In this section, we discuss two classes of operations on D-branes that do not change the low energy behaviour: boundary D-term deformations and brane-antibrane annihilation. We shall call them *D-isomorphisms*. Our main interest in this paper is the entire set of all possible D-branes up to D-isomorphisms. We start our discussion with D-branes in non-linear sigma models

as described in Section 2.2. We show, in particular, that D-isomorphisms of D-branes are nothing else but quasi-isomorphisms of complexes. The argument is applicable to a more general class of theories including those discussed in other parts of Section 2 as well as those for linear sigma models that we will study later in this paper. As an example, we discuss Landau-Ginzburg models in Section 3.3.

Subsequently, in Section 3.4, we study the effect on D-branes of bulk RG flows associated with integrating out fields with F-term masses.

We end with Section 3.5 where we discuss parallel transport of B-type D-branes over marginal Kähler deformations of the bulk theory.

3.1 D-Term Deformations And Brane-Antibrane Annihilation

In $\mathcal{N} = 2$ supersymmetric systems, there are two kinds of invariant Lagrangians — D-terms and F-terms. In terms of superspace integrals these are respectively of the form $\int V \mathrm{d}\theta \mathrm{d}\overline{\theta}$ and $\int W \mathrm{d}\theta$ where θ and $\overline{\theta}$ are fermionic coordinates of the $\mathcal{N} = 2$ superspace, V is any superfield and W is any chiral superfield. For $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetric D-banes (E, A, Q) on a Kähler manifold X, the choice of a fibre metric of E defines the D-term and the choice of complex structure of E together with the holomorphic part Q of the tachyon determines the F-term. In other words, the F-term is fixed when the complex of holomorphic vector bundles $\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{C}(\mathcal{E}, Q)$ is fixed and then the D-term is fixed when the fibre metric of each bundle (and therefore the hermitian connection) is fixed. This can be seen explicitily when the brane is realized using fermionic boundary chiral superfields [9]. As in the bulk theory (for example, with $4d$ $\mathcal{N} = 1$ or $2d$ $(2,2)$ supersymmetry) there is a non-renormalization theorem: the F-term does not change under the renormalization group flow. On the other hand, the D-term does get renormalized and adjust itself to a unique form in the deep infra-red limit. For this reason, one can say that deformations of the D-term do not affect the low energy behaviour and it is the F-term which uniquely determines the infra-red fixed point.

Let us explicitly see how deformations of the fibre metric correspond to D-term deformations. For a brane $(E, A, \mathbf{T})$, we choose some local unitary frame $\{e_a\}$ and local holomorphic frame $\{\varepsilon_a\}$ of E, which are related by, say $\varepsilon_a = e_b H^b{}_a$. The fibre metric of E is represented with respect to the holomorphic frame by $h(\varepsilon_a, \varepsilon_b) = \sum_c (H^c{}_a)^* H^c{}_b = (H^\dagger H)_{\bar{a}b}$. Let $\mathcal{Q}$ be the matrix expression of the holomorphic part Q of the tachyon with respect to the holomorphic frame. With respect to the unitary frame, the connection and the

tachyon is expressed as

$$iA = H^{\dagger -1}\partial H^\dagger - \overline{\partial} H H^{-1}, \qquad Q = H\mathcal{Q}H^{-1}, \quad Q^\dagger = H^{\dagger -1}\mathcal{Q}^\dagger H^\dagger.$$

Since we are going to deform the fibre metric for a fixed holomorphic structure $(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{Q})$, it is more convenient to use the holomorphic frame. The expression reads

$$iA = h^{-1}\partial h, \qquad Q = \mathcal{Q}, \quad Q^\dagger = h^{-1}\mathcal{Q}^\dagger h.$$

Let us now deform the fibre metric $h \to h + \delta h = h(1+\epsilon)$ and see how the boundary interaction (2.28) changes. By a straightforward computation, we find

$$\delta \mathcal{A}_t = \mathcal{D}_t(-i\epsilon) - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger \mathbf{Q}\epsilon \tag{3.1}$$

where

$$i\mathbf{Q}\epsilon = \overline{\psi^{\bar{\imath}}}\partial_{\bar{\imath}}\epsilon + [Q, \epsilon], \qquad i\mathbf{Q}^\dagger \alpha = \psi^i D_i \alpha - \{Q^\dagger, \alpha\}. \tag{3.2}$$

Up to a total covariant derivative, it is indeed a D-term $\mathbf{Q}^\dagger\mathbf{Q}(*)$. This exercise lets us notice that D-term deformations are not limited to deformations of the fibre metric. Any deformation of the form

$$\mathbf{Q}^\dagger \mathbf{Q}\epsilon \tag{3.3}$$

is a D-term deformation. If ϵ is a function of x only, it is equivalent up to total covariant derivative to a deformation of the fibre metric, as we have just seen. However, we can take a more general ϵ such as a matrix that depends also on bulk fermions. This generalization will play an important rôle later on.

Let us next discuss brane-antibrane annihilation. Ashoke Sen proposed in [46] that in a system of an equal number of coincident branes and antibranes in Type I or Type II string theory, the classical minimum of the tachyon potential has zero energy and can be identified with the supersymmetric vacuum state corresponding to the spacetime without branes. What is relevant for us is a version of his conjecture described in terms of renormalization group flow of the worldsheet quantum field theory. See, for example, [47, 48] for works in this direction. The idea is very simple. Let us look at the boundary interaction (2.13) or (2.14). It includes the boundary potential term

$$U(x) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{T}(x)^2 \tag{3.4}$$

for a hermitian tachyon profile $\mathbf{T}(x)$. It is natural to expect that, at low energies, x would like to be near the minimum of this potential. In fact only the *zero* matters: The dynamics concentrates at the locus where $\mathbf{T}(x)$ has zero eigenvalues. A block of $\mathbf{T}(x)$ that has non-zero eigenvalues everywhere "can be ignored" in the low energy dynamics. These claims

are understood as follows. If $\det \mathbf{T}(x)$ is nowhere vanishing, the potential $U(x)$ is strictly positive everywhere on the target space. In such a case, the Euclidean path-integral weight, $P\exp\left(-\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} U(x)\sqrt{h}\mathrm{d}\tau\right)$, vanishes as the worldsheet metric h is sent to infinity. As a consequence, the partition function and all (unnormalized) correlation functions vanish in the infra-red limit. In other words, the renormalization group sends $\mathbf{T}(x)$ to infinity. From the spacetime point of view, this is interpreted to mean that the minimum of the tachyon potential is located at infinity. If there is no topological obstruction, a tachyon configuration stabilizes at the vacuum $\mathbf{T} \to \infty$. If $\mathbf{T}(x)$ is of block-diagonal form, $\mathrm{diag}(\mathbf{T}_0(x), \mathbf{T}_1(x), ...)$, and one of the blocks, say $\mathbf{T}_0(x)$, is everywhere invertible, that part of the potential blows up and the corresponding weight vanishes in the infra-red limit:

$$
\begin{aligned}
P\exp\left(-\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} U(x)\sqrt{h}\mathrm{d}\tau\right) \quad &= \quad \begin{pmatrix} P\,\mathrm{e}^{-\int U_0(x)\sqrt{h}\mathrm{d}\tau} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & P\,\mathrm{e}^{-\int U_1(x)\sqrt{h}\mathrm{d}\tau} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \ddots \end{pmatrix} \\
&\longrightarrow \quad \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{0} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & P\,\mathrm{e}^{-\int U_1(x)\sqrt{h}\mathrm{d}\tau} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \ddots \end{pmatrix}.
\end{aligned}
$$

As a result the partition function and all correlation functions receive contributions only from the remaining blocks. In this sense a block with strictly positive boundary potential can be ignored in the infra-red limit. Namely, the full theory is infra-red equivalent to the theory without such a block. Let us describe the condition of postitivity $\mathbf{T}^2 > 0$ in the $\mathcal{N} = 2$ supersymmetric system, where the tachyon is expressed as $\mathbf{T} = iQ - iQ^\dagger$. Positivity of $\mathbf{T}^2 = \{Q, Q^\dagger\}$ is equivalent to $\mathrm{Ker}Q \cap \mathrm{Ker}Q^\dagger = \{0\}$. Since $\mathrm{Ker}Q^\dagger = (\mathrm{Im}Q)^\perp$ and $\mathrm{Im}Q \subset \mathrm{Ker}Q$, it simply means that $\mathrm{Ker}Q = \mathrm{Im}Q$. Namely, invertibility of $\mathbf{T}(x)$ at every point x is equivalent to the statement that the complex $\mathcal{C}(\mathcal{E}, Q)$ is exact. Thus, *the D-brane corresponding to an exact complex can be ignored in the infra-red limit.* Recall that an exact complex is quasi-isomorphic to the zero complex in the derived category. Later in this subsection, we will understand the relation of quasi-isomorphism and brane-antibrane annihilation in more generality.

The operation of brane-antibrane annihilation is analogous to integrating out massive fields in the bulk theory. In the bulk, if there is a field of mass m it is appropriate to integrate it out in the effective theory at energies below m. Similarly, in the boundary theory, if there is a block in the Chan-Paton factor with everywhere invertible $\mathbf{T}_0$, it is appropriate to "eliminate" that factor at energies below $\sim |\mathbf{T}_0^2|$. In the bulk, we know that integrating out a massive field may induce a new term in the superpotential when it

is interacting with other fields. For example, consider a Landau-Ginzburg model of two variables X and Y with the superpotential

$$W = X^n + X^2 Y + \frac{m}{2} Y^2. \tag{3.5}$$

Y has a mass m but it is interacting with X via the term $X^2 Y$. At energies below m it is appropriate to integrate out the field Y. This is done simply by solving the equation of motion for Y and plugging the result back in, or equivalently, by completing the square for Y and eliminating the square [49]. In any case, the outcome is

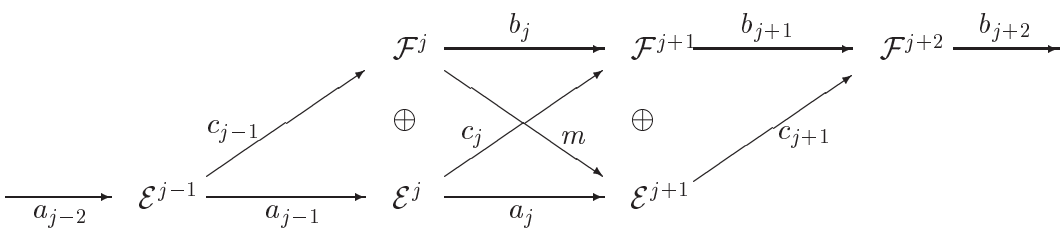
$$W_{\rm low} = X^n - \frac{1}{2m} X^4. \tag{3.6}$$

A term $-\frac{1}{2m} X^4$ has emerged in this process.

Likewise, the brane-antibrane annihilation may produce a non-trivial effect, when the eliminated sector is interacting with the rest of the system. Suppose there is a block in the Chan-Paton factor with everywhere invertible $\mathbf{T}_0$:

$$\mathbf{T} = \left(\begin{array}{c|c} \mathbf{T}_0 & * \\ \hline * & \mathbf{T}' \end{array} \right)$$

This block is interacting with the other sector if the off-diagonal parts, denoted by asterisks, are non-zero. We may consider erasing the off-diagonal parts by the standard linear algebra operation — addition/subtraction of raws and columns including the maximal rank $\mathbf{T}_0$. If that is possible and if that is done, then the $\mathbf{T}_0(x)$ block is decoupled from the rest and can be ignored. But this may have induced new terms in the remaining part, thus shifting $\mathbf{T}'$. This operation is analogous to the process of completing the square in the bulk theory. This is exactly what we will often do in this paper. For illustration, let us consider the boundary interaction given by the following complex:



(3.7)

where $\mathcal{F}^j \xrightarrow{m} \mathcal{E}^{j+1}$ is an isomorphism of vector bundles, that is, there is an inverse

$$m^{-1} : \mathcal{E}^{j+1} \longrightarrow \mathcal{F}^j.$$

This invertible part is the analog of the massive field Y in the bulk theory and we would like to eliminate it. This sector is interacting with the rest of the system via the terms c_{j-1}, b_j a_j, and c_{j+1}. Let us order the even and odd vector bundles (assuming j is even) as

$$\mathcal{E}^{\rm ev} = \mathcal{F}^j \oplus \mathcal{E}^j \oplus \mathcal{F}^{j+2} \oplus \cdots, \qquad \mathcal{E}^{\rm od} = \mathcal{E}^{j+1} \oplus \mathcal{F}^{j+1} \oplus \mathcal{E}^{j-1} \oplus \cdots$$

Then, the operator Q for the above complex is written as

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & f \\ g & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

where

$$g = \left(\begin{array}{c|cccc} m & a_j & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ \hline b_j & c_j & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & * & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & * & & \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \end{array}\right), \qquad f = \left(\begin{array}{c|cccc} 0 & 0 & c_{j-1} & 0 & \cdots \\ \hline 0 & 0 & a_{j-1} & 0 & \cdots \\ c_{j+1} & b_{j+1} & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & & \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \end{array}\right).$$

We wish to erase the off-diagonal terms by moving around the invertible map m. The following does the job for g:

$$g \longrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & & \\ -b_j m^{-1} & 1 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & 1 \end{pmatrix} g \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -m^{-1}a_j & & \\ 0 & 1 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \left(\begin{array}{c|ccccc} m & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ \hline 0 & c_j - b_j m^{-1} a_j & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & * & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & * & & \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \end{array}\right).$$

Note that the map c_j is modified by $-b_j m^{-1} a_j$. For f, the same basis change works as well,

$$f \longrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & m^{-1}a_j & & \\ 0 & 1 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & 1 \end{pmatrix} f \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & & \\ b_j m^{-1} & 1 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \left(\begin{array}{c|ccccc} 0 & 0 & \mathbf{0} & 0 & \cdots \\ \hline 0 & 0 & a_{j-1} & 0 & \cdots \\ \mathbf{0} & b_{j+1} & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & & \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \end{array}\right).$$

The two off-diagonal entries are erased, thanks to the equations $mc_{j-1} + a_j a_{j-1} = 0$ and $c_{j+1}m + b_{j+1}b_j = 0$ that are part of the condition that (3.7) is a complex. Changing the fibre metric so that the new frame is orthogonal, which is a D-term deformation, the sector $\mathcal{F}^j \xrightarrow{m} \mathcal{E}^{j+1}$ is decoupled from the rest and thus can be ignored. The remaining

part is, however, not the one obtained by just ignoring all the maps involving $\mathcal{F}^j$ and $\mathcal{E}^{j+1}$. The original interaction between the two sectors has a non-trivial effect: A zigzag map, $-b_j m^{-1} a_j$, is added to c_j. This is the analog of the new term $-X^4/2m$ in (3.6) that results from integrating out Y. To conclude, the boundary theory based on the complex (3.7) is equivalent up to D-term deformations and brane-antibrane annihilation, and in particular infra-red equivalent, to the brane based on the complex

$$\xrightarrow{a_{j-2}} \mathcal{E}^{j-1} \xrightarrow{a_{j-1}} \mathcal{E}^{j} \xrightarrow{c_j - b_j m^{-1} a_j} \mathcal{F}^{j+1} \xrightarrow{b_{j+1}} \mathcal{F}^{j+2} \xrightarrow{b_{j+2}} \tag{3.8}$$

Note that, without the modification $c_j \to c_j - b_j m^{-1} a_j$, this (3.8) is not even a complex in general. In fact the new complex (3.8) is quasi-isomorphic to the original one (3.7).

Now, let us turn to the general relation of quasi-isomorphisms to D-term deformations and brane-antibrane annihilation. We start with introducing the cone construction.

3.1.1 Binding D-Branes: Cone Construction

Cone is an operation which "binds" two D-branes together using a chiral ring element. Let us choose two D-branes $(\mathcal{E}, Q_E)$ and $(\mathcal{F}, Q_F)$. Let $\varphi : \mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{F}$ be a degree zero bundle map obeying $Q_F \varphi - \varphi Q_E = 0$, or equivalently, a cochain map $\varphi : \mathcal{C}_E \to \mathcal{C}_F$ of the associated complexes. Then, one can construct a new brane, called the cone of φ, which is denoted by $C(\varphi) = C(\varphi : \mathcal{C}_E \to \mathcal{C}_F)$. It is based on the graded vector bundle $\mathcal{E}_{C(\varphi)} = \mathcal{E}[1] \oplus \mathcal{F}$, and the holomorphic part of the tachyon is given by

$$Q_{C(\varphi)} = \begin{pmatrix} -Q_E & 0 \\ \varphi & Q_F \end{pmatrix}. \tag{3.9}$$

The associated complex, the cone complex, looks like this:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc} \cdots \to & \mathcal{E}^j & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{E}^{j+1} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{E}^{j+2} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{E}^{j+3} & \to \cdots \\ \searrow & \oplus & \searrow & \oplus & \searrow & \oplus & \searrow & \oplus & \searrow \\ \cdots \to & \mathcal{F}^{j-1} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{F}^j & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{F}^{j+1} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{F}^{j+2} & \to \cdots . \end{array} \tag{3.10}$$

The horizontal arrows on the first line are $-Q_E$, the southeast arrows are φ, and the horizontal arrows on the second line are Q_F. A very important fact is:

If φ is a quasi-isomorphism, the cone complex is exact. Let us provide a proof of this statment since it plays an important rôle in our paper. Suppose (e^{j+1}, f^j) is in the kernel of the cone complex (3.10) at degree j,

$$Q_E e^{j+1} = 0, \qquad \varphi e^{j+1} + Q_F f^j = 0.$$

The first equation means that e^{j+1} represents an element of the cohomology class of $\mathcal{C}_E$, and by the second equation we see that the cohomology class $[e^{j+1}]$ is mapped by φ_* to the zero element of the cohomology of $\mathcal{C}_F$. By the fact that φ is a quasi-isomorphism, this means that the class $[e^{j+1}]$ is zero, namely, e^{j+1} can be written as $-Q_E e_1^j$ for some element e_1^j of $\mathcal{E}^j$. Using the second equation again, we find $-\varphi Q_E e_1^j + Q_F f^j = 0$. Since φ is a cochain map, $\varphi Q_E = Q_F \varphi$, this means that $Q_F(f^j - \varphi e_1^j) = 0$ and therefore we have a cohomology class $[f^j - \varphi e_1^j]$ of $\mathcal{C}_F$ at degree j. Again using the fact that φ is a quasi-isomorphism, this class can be written as $\varphi_*[e_2^j]$ for some element $e_2^j \in \mathcal{E}^j$ that obeys $Q_E e_2^j = 0$. In other words, $[f^j - \varphi(e_1^j + e_2^j)] = 0$. Thus, $f^j - \varphi(e_1^j + e_2^j)$ can be written as $Q_F f^{j-1}$ for some element f^{j-1} of $\mathcal{F}^{j-1}$. Writing $e^j = e_1^j + e_2^j$, we find

$$e^{j+1} = -Q_E e^j, \qquad f^j = \varphi e^j + Q_F f^{j-1}.$$

Namely, (e^{j+1}, f^j) is in the image of the complex (3.10) at degree j. This proves that the cone complex is exact. The converse, φ is a quasi-isomorphism if its cone is exact, also holds and can be proved easily.

We have already seen an example of this fact. Recall that a cochain map (2.61) can be obtained by breaking a complex (2.60). Its cone is the original complex itself, (2.60), and it is exact if and only if the map (2.61) is a quasi-isomorphism.

3.1.2 D-Isomorphisms Versus Quasi-Isomorphisms

We claim that two quasi-isomorphic branes are related by a chain of D-term deformations and brane-antibrane annihilation. Let A and B be two D-branes and suppose there is a quasi-isomorphism $\varphi : \mathcal{C}_A \to \mathcal{C}_B$ between the corresponding complexes. Let C be the cone of φ. As we have seen, the cone complex is exact and hence can be ignored in the infra-red limit. However, does this mean that A and B are equivalent at low energies? One possible way to show this is to use the following line of arguments:

$$A \cong A + (\overline{B} + B)_{\mathrm{id}_B} \stackrel{?}{\cong} (A + \overline{B})_\varphi + B \cong B, \tag{3.11}$$

where $(\overline{B} + B)_{\mathrm{id}_B}$ is the brane-antibrane system with the tachyon id_B turned on, and $(A + \overline{B})_\varphi$ is the cone C.[1] The first and the last equivalence relations are associated with brane-antibrane annihilation — both $(\overline{B}+B)_{\mathrm{id}_B}$ and of $C = (A+\overline{B})_\varphi$ can be ignored in the infra-red limit. But what about the equivalence in the middle? One may try to prove it by

[1] To be very precise C is the cone of $-\varphi$ shifted by one to the right and reversing the sign of the tachyon. Anyway the complex for C is exact and thus C can be ignored in the IR limit.

considering an alternative brane based on the graded vector bundle $\widetilde{\mathcal{E}} = \mathcal{E}_A \oplus \mathcal{E}_B[-1] \oplus \mathcal{E}_B$ where φ and id_B are turned on at the same time:

$$\widetilde{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} Q_A & 0 & 0 \\ \varphi & -Q_B & \mathrm{id}_B \\ 0 & 0 & Q_B \end{pmatrix}. \tag{3.12}$$

We wish to find two similarity transformations of $\widetilde{Q}$, one erasing φ and the other erasing id_B. That would show that $(\widetilde{\mathcal{E}}, \widetilde{Q})$ is related to both $A + (\overline{B} + B)_{\mathrm{id}_B}$ and $(A + \overline{B})_{\varphi} + B$ by changes of the fibre metric. It is easy to find a transformation of the first type:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{id}_A & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{id}_B & 0 \\ \varphi & 0 & \mathrm{id}_B \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} Q_A & 0 & 0 \\ \varphi & -Q_B & \mathrm{id}_B \\ 0 & 0 & Q_B \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{id}_A & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{id}_B & 0 \\ -\varphi & 0 & \mathrm{id}_B \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} Q_A & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -Q_B & \mathrm{id}_B \\ 0 & 0 & Q_B \end{pmatrix}, \tag{3.13}$$

where we have used $Q_B\varphi = \varphi Q_A$ to see that the lower left corner is zero. However, a transformation of the second kind does not always exist. Let us try the similarity transformation $\widetilde{Q} \to M\widetilde{Q}M^{-1}$ of the following form,

$$M = \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{id}_A & 0 & \psi \\ 0 & \mathrm{id}_B & q \\ 0 & 0 & \mathrm{id}_B \end{pmatrix}. \tag{3.14}$$

We find that it eliminates id_B in (3.12) if and only if

$$\psi Q_B = Q_A \psi, \tag{3.15}$$

$$\varphi\psi = \mathrm{id}_B + qQ_B + Q_B q. \tag{3.16}$$

The first equation means that $\psi : \mathcal{C}_B \to \mathcal{C}_A$ is a cochain map, and the second is the condition that φ and ψ are inverse to each other at the level of the cohomology sheaves. This is actually a very special situation. For example, if $0 \to \mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{G} \to 0$ is an exact sequence, then there is a quasi-isomorphism of the type (2.61)

$$\begin{array}{rccccccccc} \mathcal{C}_A: & \cdots \to & 0 & \to & \mathcal{E} & \to & \mathcal{F} & \to & 0 & \to \cdots \\ \varphi \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & \\ \mathcal{C}_B: & \cdots \to & 0 & \to & 0 & \to & \mathcal{G} & \to & 0 & \to \cdots \end{array} \tag{3.17}$$

However, there is no inverse ψ from $\mathcal{C}_B$ to $\mathcal{C}_A$ satisfying the above condition unless the sequence $0 \to \mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{G} \to 0$ is split-exact. We conclude that $(\widetilde{\mathcal{E}}, \widetilde{Q})$ is not in general holomorphically isomorphic to the decoupled sum $C + B$.

We have thus seen that the proof is not straightforward. It is this point where a more general D-term deformation comes to the rescue. Let us consider a one parameter family of theories given by

$$Q_s = \begin{pmatrix} Q_A & 0 & 0 \\ \varphi & -Q_B & s \cdot \mathrm{id}_B \\ 0 & 0 & Q_B \end{pmatrix}. \tag{3.18}$$

At $s = 0$ the theory is the decoupled sum of C and B. For any non-zero $s \neq 0$ the theory is equivalent up to deformations of fibre metric to the decoupled sum of A and $(\overline{B} + B)_{\mathrm{id}_B}$. We have seen that Q_s with non-zero s, no matter how small it is, is not in general related to Q_0 by a change of fibre metric. Actually, turning on s is a more general D-term deformation. The variation of the boundary interaction is given by

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial s}\mathcal{A}_t\Big|_{s=0} = \frac{1}{2}\{Q_0^\dagger, \alpha\} = -\frac{i}{2}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger\alpha \tag{3.19}$$

where

$$\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \mathrm{id}_B \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} =: \left(\begin{array}{cc|c} 0 & 0 & \\ 0 & 0 & u \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right).$$

Note that α anticommutes with Q_0, or equivalently, $u : \mathcal{E}_B \to \mathcal{E}_C$ satisfies $Q_C u + u Q_B = 0$. In particular, u determines a chiral ring element for the open string from B to C. However, since the cone complex $\mathcal{C}_C$ is exact, the space of chiral ring elements is zero,

$$\mathcal{H}^p(B,C) \cong H^p_{\mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{zero}}}(\mathcal{H}^\bullet_{\mathrm{zero}}(B,C)) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{D}}(\mathcal{C}_B, \mathcal{C}_C[p]) = \{0\}.$$

This in particular means that u is $\mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{zero}}$-exact, that is, there is some differential form $\beta \in \mathcal{H}_{\mathrm{zero}}(B,C) = \oplus_{i=0}^n \Omega^{0,i}(X, Hom^{-i}(E_B, E_C))$ such that

$$u = i\mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{zero}}\beta. \tag{3.20}$$

Note that β is not necessarily a holomorphic zero-form; that would be the case when Q_0 and $Q_{s\neq 0}$ are related by a similarity transformation. As remarked earlier, that is a very special case. The point is that, even if that fails, there is a differential form β with higher degree components such that $u = i\mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{zero}}\beta$.

Let us digress for a moment to see how it works in the example (3.17) associated with a non-split exact sequence $0 \to \mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{G} \to 0$. We suppose that the holomorphic bundles $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathcal{G}$ are realized as the smooth bundles with hermitian connections, $(E_2, \overline{\partial}_{A_2})$ and $(E_1, \overline{\partial}_{A_1})$, and $\mathcal{F}$ is the extension by a non-zero element $\phi \in H^{0,1}_{\overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2}}}(X, Hom(E_1.E_2))$. We recall that $\mathcal{F}$ corresponds to the vector bundle $E_1 \oplus E_2$ with the connection $\overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2},\phi}$ given in

(2.56), and the maps $\mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{F}$ and $\mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{G}$ are $e_2 \mapsto (0, e_2)$ and $(e_1, e_2) \mapsto e_1$. We would like to find $\beta = \beta^0 + \beta^1$, with $\beta^0 \in \Omega^0(X, Hom(E_1, E_1 \oplus E_2))$ and $\beta^1 \in \Omega^{0,1}(X, Hom(E_1, E_2))$, such that $u = i\mathbf{Q}^{\text{zero}}\beta$. Here, u is the identity map of E_1 that sends $\mathcal{G}$ of B to the rightmost $\mathcal{G}$ in the cone C.

$$
\begin{array}{lccccccccccc}
C: & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & E_2 & \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \mathrm{id}_{E_2} \end{pmatrix}} & E_1 \oplus E_2 & \xrightarrow{(\mathrm{id}_{E_1}, 0)} & E_1 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow \\
 & & & & & \nwarrow^{\beta^1} \ddots & \uparrow{\scriptstyle \beta^0} & \nearrow_{u = \mathrm{id}_{E_1}} & & & & \\
B: & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & E_1 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow
\end{array}
\tag{3.21}
$$

In fact, $\beta^0(e_1) = (e_1, 0)$ and $\beta^1(e_1) = -\phi(e_1)$ does the job:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& Q_C\beta^0 = \mathrm{id}_{E_1}, \\
& \overline{\partial}_{A_{1,2},\phi}\beta^0 - \beta^0\overline{\partial}_{A_1} = \begin{pmatrix} \overline{\partial}_{A_1} \\ \phi \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} \overline{\partial}_{A_1} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \phi \end{pmatrix}, \\
& Q_C\beta^1 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \phi \end{pmatrix}, \\
& \overline{\partial}_{A_2}\beta^1 - \beta^1\overline{\partial}_{A_1} = 0.
\end{aligned}
$$

We indeed have $\overline{\partial}_A(\beta) + Q_C\beta - \beta Q_B = \mathrm{id}_{E_1}$. (End of digression.)

Let us place β into the 3×3 block matrix, just as u fits into α, and replace the differential form $\mathrm{d}x^{\bar{\imath}}$ by the fermion $\overline{\psi}^{\bar{\imath}}$. We denote the resulting matrix by $\widetilde{\beta}$.

$$
\widetilde{\beta} := \left(\begin{array}{cc|c} 0 & 0 & \beta \\ 0 & 0 & \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right) \Bigg|_{\mathrm{d}x^{\bar{\imath}} \to \overline{\psi}^{\bar{\imath}}}.
$$

Then $u = i\mathbf{Q}^{\text{zero}}\beta$ means $\alpha = i\mathbf{Q}\widetilde{\beta}$. Thus, we find that the variation of the boundary interaction is a D-term

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial s}\mathcal{A}_t\Big|_{s=0} = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger\mathbf{Q}\widetilde{\beta}. \tag{3.22}
$$

We have shown that turning on s is indeed a D-term deformation. Once s is turned on, the system is equivalent to the decoupled sum of A and $(\overline{B}+B)_{\mathrm{id}}$. In this way, the middle part of (3.11) is shown to hold. This completes the proof that quasi-isomorphic D-branes are related by a chain of D-term deformations and brane-antibrane annihilation. In particular we proved that quasi-isomorphic branes flow to the same infra-red fixed point.

Conversely, one can also show that D-branes that are related by D-isomorphisms are related by a chain of quasi-isomorphisms. Firstly, brane-antibrane annihilation is a trivial example of a quasi-isomorphism. Secondly, D-term deformations do not change the D-brane category in the chiral sector [50]. On the other hand, the D-brane category in the chiral sector is equivalent to the derived category, and two complexes are isomorphic in the derived category if and only if they are related by a chain of quasi-isomorphisms. Thus, two D-branes related by a D-term deformation are related by a chain of quasi-isomorphisms.

To summarize, we have seen that *D-isomorphisms are equivalent to quasi-isomorphisms.*

When a B-twist to a topological field theory is possible, our result can also be stated as follows: two D-branes are D-isomorphic if and only if they determine isomorphic D-branes in topological field theory. Thus, in a fixed closed string background, our main target of study — D-branes up to D-isomorphisms — is nothing but the isomorphism class of objects in the category of topological D-branes. Nevertheless, we decide not to use the term "topological D-branes" since our ultimate motivation is to study the full physics of D-branes, rather than the property of D-branes in topological field theory and topological strings. In particular, we pay attention to the dependence of the boundary RG flow on the bulk parameter corresponding to the complexified Kähler class, whereas topological field/string theory is insensitive to such a dependence.

The relevance of quasi-isomorphisms concerning identification of D-branes was argued in [6] employing the spacetime picture (crossing symmetry). We have finally managed to clarify their precise relevance in the general case from the worldsheet view point.

3.2 Lower-Dimesional Branes As Complexes Of Vector Bundles

The fact that a brane is infra-red empty in the region of x where $\mathbf{T}(x)$ is non-vanishing suggests a way to represent a D-brane wrapped on a submanifold of X as a complex of vector bundles of the entire space X [46, 51]. For example, consider a holomorphic line bundle $\mathcal{L}$ with a section f. A D-brane wrapped on the zero locus of f, the divisor D_f, may be represented by the complex

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1} \xrightarrow{f} \mathcal{O},$$

where $\mathcal{O}$ is at R-degree 0. In this paper, we do not attempt to construct and analyze worldsheet boundary conditions for B-type D-branes wrapped on submanifolds nor do we show that the D-branes associated with complexes of vector bundles are really D-isomorphic to such lower dimensional branes. Rather, we take the following indirect

route. For each complex submanifold there is a coherent sheaf supported on it, and we take a complex of vector bundles that is quasi-isomorphic to that sheaf as the worldsheet *definition* of the D-brane wrapped on that submanifold. For example, the above complex is indeed quasi-isomorphic to the coherent sheaf $\mathcal{O}_{D_f}$ supported on the divisor D_f. To be precise, a general D-brane can be represented as a *complex* of coherent sheaves and it is known that there exists a complex of vector bundles on X that is quasi-isomorphic to it (cf Section 9). Thus, we still have a 'definition' that applies to the most general D-brane. Consistency of this proposal is provided by our results of the previous subsection: as long as complexes of vector bundles are concerned, D-isomorphisms are nothing else but quasi-isomorphisms.

As another example, and as the example that plays a key rôle in this paper, we introduce a complex that represents a point on X. For concretness we consider Euclidean space $X = \mathbf{C}^n$ with coordinates $x_1, ..., x_n$ and a D0-brane at the origin $\mathfrak{p} = \{x^1 = \cdots = x^n = 0\}$. Let us recall the Clifford algebra (2.86) for η_i and $\overline{\eta}_i$ and its representation $\mathcal{V}_n$, the Clifford module, generated by the vector $|0\rangle$ that is annihilated by all η_i's. We consider the brane with the Chan-Paton space $\mathcal{V}_n$ and the tachyon profile given by

$$Q(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i \eta_i. \tag{3.23}$$

This defines a sequence of linear maps of the subspaces of $\mathcal{V}_n$:

$$\mathbf{C}\overline{\eta}_1 \cdots \overline{\eta}_n|0\rangle \xrightarrow{Q} \cdots \xrightarrow{Q} \bigoplus_{i<j} \mathbf{C}\overline{\eta}_i\overline{\eta}_j|0\rangle \xrightarrow{Q} \bigoplus_{i=1}^{n} \mathbf{C}\overline{\eta}_i|0\rangle \xrightarrow{Q} \mathbf{C}|0\rangle$$

such that $Q^2 = 0$. Namely, we have a complex of trivial vector bundles,

$$\mathcal{K}: \quad \mathcal{O} \xrightarrow{Q} \mathcal{O}^{\oplus n} \xrightarrow{Q} \mathcal{O}^{\oplus \binom{n}{2}} \to \cdots \to \mathcal{O}^{\oplus \binom{n}{2}} \xrightarrow{Q} \mathcal{O}^{\oplus n} \xrightarrow{Q} \mathcal{O}. \tag{3.24}$$

A complex of the form (3.24) is called a *Koszul complex*. Note that the boundary potential is

$$\{Q, Q^\dagger\} = \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} |x_i|^2\right) \cdot \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{V}_n}. \tag{3.25}$$

It vanishes precisely at the origin $\mathfrak{p}$, and therefore represents a D0-brane at the origin. Indeed, the tachyon profile $\mathbf{T} = iQ - iQ^\dagger$ is nothing but the "Atiyah-Bott-Shapiro construction for the D0-brane" [51] (see for eaxmple [9]). In particular, it has the proper Ramond-Ramond charge as well as the correct space of chiral ring elements with other branes.

If we considered a theory in which the point $x = 0$ is excised in some way, then the boundary potential (3.25) would be nowhere vanishing, and hence the Koszul complex $\mathcal{K}$ must represent a brane that is empty in the infra-red limit. In particular, a brane can be modified by binding such $\mathcal{K}$'s without changing its low energy behaviour. This operation will be used frequently later in this paper.

A Koszul complex can also be used to construct the fractional branes in an orbifold theory — D0-branes stuck at the orbifold fixed points. We consider the orbifold of the Euclidean space $\mathbf{C}^n$ by a finite group Γ of linear transformations, $\Gamma \ni \gamma : x_i \mapsto \sum_{j=1}^n \gamma_{ij} x_j$. We would like to find a representation ρ of Γ on the Clifford module $\mathcal{V}_n$ such that the brane $(\mathcal{V}_n, Q)$ obeys the invariance condition

$$\rho(\gamma)^{-1} \left(\sum_{i,j=1}^n \gamma_{ij} x_j \eta_i \right) \rho(\gamma) = \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \eta_j,$$

that is, $\rho(\gamma)\eta_j\rho(\gamma)^{-1} = \sum_{i=1}^n \eta_i \gamma_{ij}$. In order to preserve the Clifford algebra relations, we find that the $\overline{\eta}_i$'s must transform as $\rho(\gamma)\overline{\eta}_i\rho(\gamma)^{-1} = \sum_{j=1}^n (\gamma^{-1})_{ij}\overline{\eta}_j$. If we decide that $|0\rangle \in \mathcal{V}_n$ is a Γ-invariant vector, we find that the vectors $\{\overline{\eta}_i|0\rangle\}$ transform as

$$\rho(\gamma) : \overline{\eta}_i|0\rangle \longmapsto \sum_{j=1}^n \overline{\eta}_j|0\rangle(\gamma^{-1})_{ij}.$$

Let $\mathcal{R}$ be the defining representation of Γ, that is, the space $\mathbf{C}^n$ regarded as a representation of Γ. The basis elements e_i of $\mathcal{R}$ transforms under $\gamma \in \Gamma$ as $e_i \mapsto \sum_{j=1}^n e_j \gamma_{ji}$. Then, we find that the elements $\overline{\eta}_i|0\rangle$ transform in the same way as the dual basis to $\{e_i\}$. Namely, the space spanned by $\{\overline{\eta}_i|0\rangle\}$ can be identified with $\mathcal{R}^*$ as a representation of Γ. Similarly, the space spanned by $\{\overline{\eta}_{i_1} \cdots \overline{\eta}_{i_r}|0\rangle\}$ can be identified with $\wedge^r\mathcal{R}^*$. Thus, we find that the Koszul complex can be regarded as the complex of Γ-modules

$$\wedge^n \mathcal{R}^* \xrightarrow{Q} \wedge^{n-1}\mathcal{R}^* \to \cdots \to \wedge^2\mathcal{R}^* \xrightarrow{Q} \mathcal{R}^* \xrightarrow{Q} \mathbf{C}. \tag{3.26}$$

We may also consider tensoring this with any representation ρ of Γ. We shall denote the brane associated with that complex by $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\rho)$. For an Abelian group, such as $\Gamma \cong \mathbf{Z}_d$, we use the additive notation $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\rho_m) = \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(m)$. For irreducible representations, these are the fractional branes stuck at the orbifold point $\mathfrak{p}$. As a side remark and for later convenience, we note that $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\wedge^n\mathcal{R})$ can also be written as

$$\mathbf{C} \xrightarrow{Q} \mathcal{R} \xrightarrow{Q} \wedge^2\mathcal{R} \to \cdots \to \wedge^{n-1}\mathcal{R} \xrightarrow{Q} \wedge^n\mathcal{R}. \tag{3.27}$$

This is what we would directly find if we span the Clifford module $\mathcal{V}_n$ by the even and odd multiples of the η_i's on the state $|0\rangle'$ that is annihilated by all $\overline{\eta}_i$'s.

3.3 The Landau-Ginzburg Case

We next discuss D-isomorphisms in Landau-Ginzburg models. We recall that the boundary interaction for a B-brane is given by the formula (2.66) for a matrix factorization $Q(x)$ of the superpotential $W(x)$.

D-term deformations include deformations of the fibre metric of the Chan-Paton space. In particular, a similarity transformation by an even (or R-symmetry preserving) matrix

$$Q(x) \to U(x)^{-1} Q(x) U(x) \tag{3.28}$$

is of this type. The D-brane is empty at low energies if and only if the potential $U(x) = \frac{1}{2}\{Q(x), Q(x)^\dagger\}$ is positive definite for all x. For example, a matrix factorization of the form

$$Q(x) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \mathbf{1}_r \\ W(x)\mathbf{1}_r & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & W(x)\mathbf{1}_r \\ \mathbf{1}_r & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{3.29}$$

has a positive definite boundary potential, $\{Q(x), Q(x)^\dagger\} = (1+|W(x)|^2)\mathrm{id}_V > 0$, and can be ignored at low energies. In the case where $W(x)$ is a quasi-homegeneous polynomial and each variable x_i has a positive degree, any quasi-homogeneous matrix factorization with $\{Q(x), Q(x)^\dagger\} > 0$ is holomorphically isomorphic to the direct sum of those of the type (3.29).

Let us prove the last statement. We take a matrix factorization of size $2r$ by $2r$,

$$Q(x) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & f(x) \\ g(x) & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Suppose $f(x)$ has rank s at $x = 0$. Then, with a change of basis, that is, with a similarity transformation (3.28), it can be written as

$$f(0) = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{1}_s & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

If we move away from $x = 0$, polynomials appear in the entries of $f(x)$ except at the first s diagonals where "1" are. This is because each entry must be quasi-homogeneous and 1 is the only polynomial of degree zero. By standard linear algebra operations, one can erase all the entries in the same raws and colums as these 1's, and one may assume the form

$$f(x) = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{1}_s & 0 \\ 0 & A(x) \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then, $f(x)g(x) = g(x)f(x) = W(x)\mathbf{1}_r$ shows that $g(x)$ can be written as

$$g(x) = \begin{pmatrix} W(x)\mathbf{1}_s & 0 \\ 0 & B(x) \end{pmatrix},$$

where $A(x)B(x) = B(x)A(x) = W(x)\mathbf{1}_{r-s}$. The condition $\{Q, Q^\dagger\} > 0$ at $x = 0$ requires that $B(0)B(0)^\dagger > 0$ and $B(0)^\dagger B(0) > 0$. Thus, again by raw and column operations, one may assume $B(x) = \mathbf{1}_{r-s}$ which in turn requires $A(x) = W(x)\mathbf{1}_{r-s}$. In this way, we have seen that $Q(x)$ is equivalent up to similarity transformations to the sum of $(1, W)$'s and $(W, 1)$'s;

$$Q(x) \cong \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \mathbf{1}_s \\ W(x)\mathbf{1}_s & 0 \end{pmatrix} \oplus \begin{pmatrix} 0 & W(x)\mathbf{1}_{r-s} \\ \mathbf{1}_{r-s} & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{3.30}$$

This proves our claim.

We have learned that "brane-antibrane annihilation" in a LG model means annihilation of $(1, W)$'s and $(W, 1)$'s. Using the same argument as in the non-linear sigma models, we can show that two D-branes are related by a chain of D-term deformations and brane-antibrane annihilations if there is a degree zero state whose cone has positive potential $\{Q, Q^\dagger\} > 0$. Two such D-branes flow to the same fixed point in the infra-red limit.

3.4 Knörrer Periodicity

So far, our focus was renormalization group flows of boundary interactions. However, bulk interactions generically flow as well, and the interplay of bulk and boundary RG flows is expected to have some important consequences. For recent works on this subject in systems with $\mathcal{N} = 2$ supersymmetry, see [52] and references therein. Here, we would like to focus on the most primitive among bulk RG flows — integrating out massive fields. As far as we know, this has not been considered in full detail in the literature.

Let us consider a Landau-Ginzburg model of $n + 2$ variables, $X_1, \ldots, X_n, U, V$ with superpotential of the form

$$W = W_L(X_1, ..., X_n) + UV. \tag{3.31}$$

We see that the fields U and V are massive and must be integrated out at an appropriate energy scale. (We assume that $X_1, ..., X_n$ are massless or have lower masses.) The question is how the D-branes in the high energy theory including the variables U and V are related to the ones in the low energy theory where U and V are gone. That is, what is the relation of matrix factorizations of $W_L(x) + uv$ and matrix factorizations of $W_L(x)$? A similar

question in a mathematical context is solved and is known as *Knörrer periodicity* [53], which states that the category of matrix factorizations of $W_L(x)$ and that of $W_L(x)+uv$ are equivalent. We show below that this is indeed relevant to our question. Moreover, we construct an explicit map of branes which was not given in [53]. This construction will play a very important rôle later in this paper.

Let us first consider the opposite problem: Given a brane in the low energy theory, does it come from a brane in the high energy theory? Namely, if $Q_L(x)$ is a matrix factorization of $W_L(x)$, is there a matrix factorization $Q(x,u,v)$ of $W_L(x)+uv$ such that the brane Q flows to the brane Q_L as U and V are integrated out? The answer is yes. An important rôle is played by a certain brane of the theory of variables U and V only, and with superpotential $W=UV$. For our purpose it is convenient to use its realization in terms of boundary fermions $\eta,\overline{\eta}$ with boundary action

$$S_1(\eta,U,V)=\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}}\mathrm{d}t\left\{i\overline{\eta}\dot{\eta}-\frac{1}{2}|v|^2-\frac{1}{2}|u|^2+\mathrm{Re}\Big(\psi^u\eta+\psi^v\overline{\eta}\Big)\right\}, \tag{3.32}$$

where ψ^u and ψ^v are the boundary values of the fermionic components $\psi=\psi_+ +\psi_-$ of U and V. Upon quantization, η and $\overline{\eta}$ obey the anticommutation relations $\{\eta,\overline{\eta}\}=1$, $\eta^2=\overline{\eta}^2=0$, which is represented on the two dimensional vector space spanned by $|0\rangle$ and $\overline{\eta}|0\rangle$, where $|0\rangle$ is annihilated by η. With respect to that basis, η and $\overline{\eta}$ are represented by the matrices

$$\eta=\begin{pmatrix}0&1\\0&0\end{pmatrix},\qquad \overline{\eta}=\begin{pmatrix}0&0\\1&0\end{pmatrix},$$

and we find that the boundary interaction (3.32) is of the from (2.66), with

$$Q=u\eta+v\overline{\eta}=\begin{pmatrix}0&u\\v&0\end{pmatrix}.$$

There is a unique supersymmetric ground state in the Ramond sector of the open string stretched between two copies of it. Since the system has a finite correlation length, this implies that the system formulated on the half-space also has a unique supersymmetric ground state. (See Section 6 for a more detailed reasoning and an explicit contruction.) Now, given a brane $\mathrm{P}\exp\left(-i\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}}\mathcal{A}_t^L\mathrm{d}t\right)$ of the low energy theory, we consider the following brane of the high energy theory

$$\mathrm{P}\exp\left(-i\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}}\mathcal{A}_t^L\mathrm{d}t\right)\exp\Big(iS_1(\eta,U,V)\Big). \tag{3.33}$$

If we integrate out the fields U,V and η, the factor $\exp(iS_1(U,V,\eta))$ simply drops since the (U,V,η) system has a unique ground state of zero energy. As a result, we simply

get back the original brane of the low energy theory. Thus, (3.33) is the brane we were looking for. One can write it in the form (2.66), with

$$Q = Q_L + u\eta + v\overline{\eta}.$$

If Q_L is represented by a matrix

$$Q_L = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & f(x) \\ g(x) & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

with respect to a basis $\mathbf{b}_0 = (\mathbf{e}_0, \mathbf{o}_0)$ of the original Chan-Paton space, then Q is represented by a matrix

$$Q = \left(\begin{array}{cc|cc} 0 & f(x) & 0 & u \\ g(x) & 0 & -u & 0 \\ \hline 0 & -v & 0 & g(x) \\ v & 0 & f(x) & 0 \end{array}\right) \tag{3.34}$$

with respect to the basis $\mathbf{b} = (\mathbf{e}_0 \otimes |0\rangle, \mathbf{o}_0 \otimes |0\rangle, \mathbf{o}_0 \otimes \overline{\eta}|0\rangle, \mathbf{e}_0 \otimes \overline{\eta}|0\rangle)$ of the Chan-Paton space of the brane (3.33). This map $Q_L \longmapsto Q$ is indeed the functor given in [53] that makes the equivalence of the two categories.

Now we come to our main problem: Given a brane in the high energy theory, what happens when U and V are integrated out? We already know the answer if the given brane is of the form (3.33): it is $\mathrm{P}\exp\left(-i\int \mathcal{A}_t^L \mathrm{d}t\right)$. Note that this is *not* the same as just setting $u = v = 0$ in the matrix factorization $Q(x, u, v)$. If we simply did that, we would obtain

$$Q|_{u=v=0} = \left(\begin{array}{cc|cc} 0 & f(x) & 0 & 0 \\ g(x) & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 & g(x) \\ 0 & 0 & f(x) & 0 \end{array}\right) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & f(x) \\ g(x) & 0 \end{pmatrix} \oplus \begin{pmatrix} 0 & g(x) \\ f(x) & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

which is twice as much in size as the correct answer. Rather, we should extract the first half block of it. What happens to more general branes? The key is the fact, shown in Knörrer's paper [53], that any matrix factorization of $W = W_L(x) + uv$ is holomorphically isomorphic to the one of the form (3.34) up to a decoupled sum of empty branes $(W, 1)$, $(1, W)$. Thus, the procedure is first to find such a presentation and then take out the relevant block of $Q|_{u=v=0}$. However, this is not systematic and requires a lot of work in the indivisual case.

Here, we present a general procedure to find the low energy brane without explicitly finding a special presentation. Let Q be the matrix factorization of $W = W_L(x) + uv$

represented on a Chan-Paton vector space $\mathcal{V}$. We set $v = 0$ but keep u in Q,

$$\widehat{Q} = Q|_{v=0}, \tag{3.35}$$

and regard $\widehat{Q}$ as a matrix factorization of $W_L(x)$ represented on the infinite dimensional Chan-Paton space

$$\widehat{\mathcal{V}} = \mathcal{V} \oplus u\mathcal{V} \oplus u^2\mathcal{V} \oplus u^3\mathcal{V} \oplus \cdots . \tag{3.36}$$

Then, $(\widehat{Q}, \widehat{\mathcal{V}})$ is the matrix factorization determining the low energy brane. It is infinite in size, but the boundary potential $\{\widehat{Q}, \widehat{Q}^\dagger\}$ is mostly positive and has zero only in a finite dimensional subspace of $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}$.

Let us see how it works. First, consider the case where Q is already of the form (3.34). With respect to the basis $(\mathbf{b}, u\mathbf{b}, u^2\mathbf{b}, \ldots)$ of $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}$, $\widehat{Q}$ is represented by the matrix

$$\widehat{Q} = \left(\begin{array}{cc|cc|cc|cc|c} 0 & f & & & & & & & \\ g & 0 & & & & & & & \\ \hline & & 0 & g & & & & & \\ & & f & 0 & & & & & \\ \hline & & 0 & 1 & 0 & f & & & \\ & & -1 & 0 & g & 0 & & & \\ \hline & & & & & & 0 & g & \\ & & & & & & f & 0 & \\ \hline & & & & & & 0 & 1 & 0 \quad f \\ & & & & & & -1 & 0 & g \quad 0 \\ \hline & & & & & & & & \ddots \end{array}\right), \tag{3.37}$$

where unwritten entries are all zero. We find that $\widehat{Q}$ consists mostly of the direct sum of infinite copies of the block

$$Q_1 = \left(\begin{array}{cc|cc} 0 & g & & \\ f & 0 & & \\ \hline 0 & 1 & 0 & f \\ -1 & 0 & g & 0 \end{array}\right).$$

The potential of this block is

$$\{Q_1, Q_1^\dagger\} = \left(\begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 + gg^\dagger + f^\dagger f & 0 & & \\ 0 & 1 + ff^\dagger + g^\dagger g & & \\ \hline & & 1 + ff^\dagger + g^\dagger g & 0 \\ & & 0 & 1 + gg^\dagger + f^\dagger f \end{array}\right),$$

which is everywhere positive. (Equivalently, there is a similarity transformation that makes Q_1 into a direct sum of $(1, W_L)$'s and $(W_L, 1)$'s.) Thus, each of such blocks is empty in the infra-red limit. Therefore, only the first block $\left(\begin{smallmatrix} 0 & f \\ g & 0 \end{smallmatrix}\right)$ of $\widehat{Q}$ remains, and this is indeed the right answer. Next, consider the empty branes

$$Q_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & W \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad Q_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ W & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

$\widehat{Q}_2, \widehat{Q}_3$ are direct sums of infinite copies of $Q_2|_{v=0}, Q_3|_{v=0}$ and in particular have everywhere positive potentials. Thus, $\widehat{Q}_2$ and $\widehat{Q}_3$ are also empty. Since any matrix factorization is holomorphically isomorphic to the sum of matrices of the form (3.34), Q_2 and Q_3 [53], we find that the above procedure gives the right answer to the low energy brane in the general case.

Some remarks are in order:

(i) One may notice the asymmetry in the rôle of u and v. We could have applied the above procedure by swapping the two variables. If we did so, the resulting low energy brane would have the opposite $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading. This asymmetry or ambiguity came from the fact that the $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading of branes in the high energy theory is not given separately for the x-part and for the (u, v)-part. What we have done above is to make a choice of the $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading in the (u, v)-part — we declared that $|0\rangle$ is even and $\overline{\eta}|0\rangle$ is odd. The opposite choice, or equivalently, the swap of u and v, results in the opposite $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading of the low energy D-brane. One should remember that there is this choice dependence in the map of branes from the high energy theory to low energy theory. If we want to be systematic, we need to fix one choice and use it for all branes.

(ii) The above procedure will turn out to be extremely powerful and have a wide range of applications, despite the fact that we need to invoke infinite size Chan-Paton factors. The particularly important case is where the Landau-Ginzburg superpotential is fibred over some base manifold (the case of non-linear sigma model with superpotential). In such a situation, it is in general impossible to find a presentation of Q as (3.34) globally, and it is also very difficult to find such a presentation locally and to patch them together. However, the above procedure $(\mathcal{V}, Q) \mapsto (\widehat{\mathcal{V}}, \widehat{Q})$ can be applied without difficulty to such fibred situation and provides a one-shot answer. We will use this fibre-wise construction in Section 10.

(iii) Infinite size Chan-Paton factors which are effectively finite for the same reason as above had been discussed earlier in [54, 55].

Note on Short Orbit Branes

It is a good point to digress for a moment to explain the matrix factorization realization of the short orbit RS-branes given in Section 2.4.1. The $\mathcal{N}=2$ minimal model at level k is realized as the infra-red limit of the single variable LG model with superpotential $W=X^d$ with $d=k+2$. Alternatively, it can also be identified with the IR fixed point of the model with two variables $W=X^d-Y^2$. The minimal model with even level has two classes of Cardy branes, ordinary branes and short orbit branes [36]. Ordinary branes are realized by matrix factorizations of $W=x^d$ correponding to $x^{L+1}\cdot x^{d-L-1}$ while the short orbit branes correspond to the matrix factorization

$$Q=\begin{pmatrix} 0 & x^{\frac{d}{2}}-y \\ x^{\frac{d}{2}}+y & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

of $W=x^d-y^2$ [50] (see also [39]). It was found in [37] that there are an odd number of fermionic zero modes in the open string stretched between ordinary and short orbit branes. For that reason, short orbit branes cannot coexist with ordinary branes if we want to define a $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading operator $(-1)^F$. This problem disappears for a product branes with even number of short orbit factors in a product of minimal models. This is why we allow such short orbit branes in Gepner models [43].

Consider the product of two minimal models with even levels, $d_1=2m_1$ and $d_2=2m_2$. A product of two short-orbit branes is realized by the matrix factorization

$$Q=\Big(x_1^{m_1}-y_1\Big)\eta_1+\Big(x_1^{m_1}+y_1\Big)\overline{\eta}_1+\Big(x_2^{m_2}-y_2\Big)\eta_2+\Big(x_2^{m_2}+y_2\Big)\overline{\eta}_2$$

of $W=x_1^{2m_1}-y_1^2+x_2^{2m_2}-y_2^2$. We write $\eta_1=\frac{1}{2}(\xi_1+i\xi_1')$, $\eta_2=\frac{1}{2}(\xi_2+i\xi_2')$ for real ξ_i, ξ_i' and then introduce $\eta=\frac{1}{2}(\xi_1'+i\xi_2')$. Writing $u=-y_2-iy_1$, $v=y_2-iy_1$, the above matrix can be written as

$$Q=x_1^{m_1}\xi_1+x_2^{m_2}\xi_2+u\eta+v\overline{\eta},$$

which is a matrix factorization of $W=x_1^{2m_1}+x_2^{2m_2}+uv$. In this form, one can readily integrate out the U,V,η system. The result is the matrix factorization $Q_L=x_1^{m_1}\xi_1+x_2^{m_2}\xi_2$ of $W_L=x_1^{2m_1}+x_2^{2m_2}$. This is why (2.89) represents a short orbit brane in a Gepner model.

3.5 D-brane Transport On The Kähler Moduli Space

Bulk $(2,2)$ supersymmetric quantum field theories have two kinds of distinguished deformation parameters — chiral and twisted chiral parameters. For non-linear sigma

models, chiral parameters correspond to the complex structure of the target space while twisted chiral parameters determine the complexified Kähler class. The moduli space of $(2,2)$ theories up to bulk D-term deformations is a direct product $\mathfrak{M}_C \times \mathfrak{M}_K$, where $\mathfrak{M}_C$ and $\mathfrak{M}_K$ are parametrized by chiral and twisted chiral parameters respectively. We shall refer to $\mathfrak{M}_K$ and $\mathfrak{M}_C$ as the *Kähler moduli space* and the *complex structure moduli space* respectively, although the geometric interpretation is present only around special corners of $\mathfrak{M}_K$, called the large volume limits. Moving away from such a corner, the α' corrections grow and the sigma model description eventually becomes totally inadequate. There can also be corners of different type which are described in terms of Landau-Ginzburg models or orbifolds thereof. In general, a single Kähler moduli space may have multiple regions with quite different descriptions. For example, the non-linear sigma model on the quintic hypersurface $X_G = \{G(x) = 0\}$ in $\mathbf{CP}^4$ and the Landau-Ginzburg orbifold $W = G(x)/\mathbf{Z}_5$ are at two opposite corners of the same one dimensional Kähler moduli space. There are also examples of $\mathfrak{M}_K$ with several large volume limits corresponding to Kähler manifolds of different topology. As discussed in the introduction, the main purpose of the paper is to construct a family of boundary interactions in a family of bulk theories defined in a region of $\mathfrak{M}_K$ that encompass various corners with different interpretations. We show below that there is a natural notion of "parallel families" of B-branes.

We first describe the "parallel transport" of D-branes along a path in $\mathfrak{M}_K$. Deformations of the $(2,2)$ bulk theory inside $\mathfrak{M}_K$ are generated by bulk twisted F-terms which are classified as D-terms from the point of view of the $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetry. Namely, they are of the form $\mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger(\cdots)$ where $\mathbf{Q}$ and $\mathbf{Q}^\dagger$ are the $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ generators. Also, we are interested in properties of D-branes that do not change under $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ boundary D-term deformations. This motivates us to take the following rule of D-brane transport: *The bulk and boundary interactions must vary by $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ D-terms only.* To be more explicit, if $S(\tau) = S_{\text{bulk}}(\tau) + S_{\text{bdry}}(\tau)$ is a one parameter family of actions that realizes the transport, its variation must be a D-term

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tau} S(\tau) = \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger(\cdots). \tag{3.38}$$

The chiral sector of B-type D-branes does not change under the bulk and boundary $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ D-term deformations. Therefore, the rule is defined so that the chiral sector remains constant under the transport. When B-twist is possible, this means that the associated open topological field theory remains invariant under the transport.

We assert that the rule (3.38) defines a "flat connection" on the "bundle of D-branes" over the Kähler moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$ in a certain sense. Let us first show that the D-brane transport obeying our rule is unique up to boundary $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ D-term and bulk $(2,2)$

D-term deformations. Let us consider two admissible transports of a given interaction $S(0)$ over the same path. Infinitesimally, the transports can be written as $S_i(\epsilon) = S(0) + \epsilon \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger A_i$, $i = 1, 2$. Then, $S_2(\epsilon)$ can be regarded as the deformation of $S_1(\epsilon)$ by the term $\epsilon \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger (A_2 - A_1)$. Since $S_1(\epsilon)$ and $S_2(\epsilon)$ represents the same point of $\mathfrak{M}_K$, the deformation term must have no twisted F-term component. Thus, it is a boundary D-term plus possibly a bulk $(2, 2)$ D-term. By composition of this elementary process, we find that admissible transports over the same path are related by a chain of boundary D-term deformations, possibly with bulk $(2, 2)$ D-term deformations. One important point which is implicitly assumed in this argument is that we can use a set of field variables whose supersymmetry transformations do not depend on the twisted chiral parameters, at least inside the region of $\mathfrak{M}_K$ we are considering. This is to ensure that $\epsilon \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger (A_2 - A_1)$, which is a D-term in the initial theory $S(0)$, is also a D-term with respect to the $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetry of the deformed theory $S_1(\epsilon)$. In the non-linear sigma model, this is indeed the case since the sets of fields as well as their supersymmetry transformation are fixed when the complex structure of the target space is fixed. By a similar argument, we find that the "connection" is flat: under a deformation of the path in $\mathfrak{M}_K$ with fixed initial and final points, the result of D-brane transport changes only by boundary $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ D-terms and bulk $(2, 2)$ D-terms. Note that this holds only for *continuous* deformations of the paths. There can be non-trivial monodromies for topologically non-trivial loops in $\mathfrak{M}_K$. In fact such monodromies are known to exist even at the level of D-brane charge.

As we have discussed earlier in this section, our main interest is in the properties of D-branes that do not change not only under boundary D-term deformations but also under brane-antibrane annihilation. A natural question is whether brane-antibrane annihilation at one point of the Kähler moduli space is sent to brane-antibrane annihilation at another point under the parallel transport. Formally, that must be the case. Otherwise the chiral sector would change, but the transport is defined so that it remains constant. And this indeed appears plausible as long as the path stays inside a large volume regime — positivity of the boundary potential $\{Q, Q^\dagger\}$ is unaffected under deformations of the Kähler class. However, it is not at all obvious whether this continues to be the case if the path goes out of one large volume regime and the size of the target space becomes vanishingly small.

That the chiral sector does not change under D-brane transport does not mean that the full theory remains constant. In particular, the infra-red limit must depend on where we are on $\mathfrak{M}_K$, since it defines a $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ superconformal boundary condition in the $(2, 2)$ superconformal field theory that really depends both on $\mathfrak{M}_K$ and $\mathfrak{M}_C$. We expect a rich pattern of renormalization group flows that change along the transport. For example, let

us consider a complex of two vector bundles,

$$\mathcal{E}_1 \xrightarrow{Q} \mathcal{E}_2,$$

which defines a parallel family of boundary interactions over a region of $\mathfrak{M}_K$. The region may be separated into two by a wall of marginal stability. On one side of the wall the map Q is tachyonic so that the brane flows to a single indecomposable $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ superconformal boundary condition. On the other side of the wall, Q is irrelevant and vanishes in the infra-red limit. Then the brane splits into two $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ superconformal boundary conditions, one corresponding to $\mathcal{E}_1$ and another corresponding to $\mathcal{E}_2$. Note that in the latter case the above brane and the brane $\mathcal{E}_1[1] \oplus \mathcal{E}_2$ are not D-isomorphic to each other but still flow to the same superconformal boundary interaction.

Other quantities that show dependence on $\mathfrak{M}_K$ are the overlap of the boundary state with the R-R ground states $\langle i|\mathcal{B}\rangle$. These are defined as the path integrals over an A-twisted semi-infinite cigar $\mathbb{S}$ with an operator corresponding to the ground state $\langle i|$ inserted at the tip, see[7]. This quantity does not depend on boundary D-term deformations as they would insert an $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ D-term at the boundary which is annihilated by the supersymmetric ground state:

$$\delta\langle i|\mathcal{B}\rangle = \langle i| \int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger(\cdots)|\mathcal{B}\rangle = 0.$$

On the other hand, as argued in [7, 23], they do depend on the twisted chiral parameters and satisfy a certain system of differential equations. The overlaps are called the generalized central charges and play important roles in the study of D-brane stability.

When the infra-red limits of the $(2,2)$ quantum field theories are used as the backgrounds for string compactification, the family of boundary interactions obeying the rule (3.38) plays an important rôle in spacetime physics. Open string states for such families of boundary interactions define open string fields that can be used everywhere on the region of $\mathfrak{M}_K$ under consideration. This provides us with a basis to study spacetime D-term potentials as a function of those open string field variables as well as of closed string fields associated to $\mathfrak{M}_K$ parameters.

An ideal framework to study the above issues is provided by linear sigma models. They are $(2,2)$ supersymmetric gauge theories in $1+1$ dimensions defined over the moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K \times \mathfrak{M}_C$, which includes large volume limits, Landau-Ginzburg orbifold points as well as regions in between where neither a geometrical nor a Landau-Ginzburg interpretation is totally absent. It uses a single set of field variables with a fixed supersymmetry transformation rule and the dependence on the $\mathfrak{M}_K \times \mathfrak{M}_C$ moduli parameters appears only in the (twisted) F-term interactions of the action. In this paper, we study parallel families

of boundary interactions using linear sigma models. We will in fact encounter a sharp problem associated with brane-antibrane annihilation, and will find a rather surprizing solution. Also, our construction provides a starting point for the study of D-brane stability and spacetime D-term potentials in intermediate regimes of $\mathfrak{M}_K$ where no useful description of the low energy theory is available.

4 Linear Sigma Models

In this section, we review the basic aspects of $(2,2)$ supersymmetric linear sigma models in $1+1$ dimensions [2]. The main purpose is to fix notations and to introduce a class of examples that will be used in this paper. We will also obtain a new result on general multiparameter models (Section 4.5) that will play an important rôle.

4.1 The Lagrangian

Let us consider a $2d$ $(2,2)$ supersymmetric gauge theory with a compact Abelian gauge group $T \cong U(1)_1 \times U(1)_2 \times \cdots \times U(1)_k$ and matter chiral superfields $\Phi = (\Phi_1, ..., \Phi_N)$, where Φ_i has charge Q_i^a with respect to the ath gauge group $U(1)_a$ ($a = 1, ..., k$ is the gauge index and $i = 1, ..., N$ is the 'flavor' index). We denote the vector superfield for $U(1)_a$ by V_a, and its curvature by $\Sigma_a = \overline{D}_+ D_- V_a$ (a twisted chiral superfield). The Lagrangian takes the following form

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L} &= \int \mathrm{d}^4\theta \left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{a,b=1}^{k} (e^{-2})^{ab} \overline{\Sigma}_a \Sigma_b + \sum_{i=1}^{N} \overline{\Phi}_i \, \mathrm{e}^{Q_i \cdot V} \Phi_i \right) \\ &\quad + \mathrm{Re} \int \mathrm{d}^2\widetilde{\theta} \left(- \sum_{a=1}^{k} t^a \Sigma_a \right) + \mathrm{Re} \int \mathrm{d}^2\theta \, W(\Phi) \end{aligned} \tag{4.1}$$

The first term on the right hand side is the gauge kinetic term where e is the gauge coupling constant. The second term is the matter kinetic term with the minimal coupling to the gauge fields, where $Q_i \cdot V$ is a short hand notation for $\sum_{a=1}^{k} Q_i^a V_a$. The third is a twisted superpotential term, where

$$t^a = r^a - i\theta^a \tag{4.2}$$

is a complex combination of the Fayet-Iliopoulos (FI) parameter r^a and the theta angle θ^a for the ath gauge group $U(1)_a$. The last term exists if there is a gauge invariant holomorphic polynomial $W(\Phi)$ of $\Phi_1, ..., \Phi_N$, the superpotential.

Let us write down the Lagrangian in terms of the component fields. We recall that a vector multiplet consists of a gauge field v_μ, a complex scalar σ, a Dirac fermion $\lambda_\pm$ and a real auxilary field D. A chiral multiplet consists of a complex scalar ϕ, a Dirac fermion $\psi_\pm$ and a complex auxiliary field F. The component expressions for the gauge kinetic term, the matter kinetic term, and the twisted superpotential term are given below

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}_{\rm g} &= \int \mathrm{d}^4\theta \left(-\frac{1}{2e^2}\overline{\Sigma}\Sigma\right) + \text{total derivative} \\ &= \frac{1}{2e^2}\left[|\partial_0\sigma|^2 - |\partial_1\sigma|^2 + i\overline{\lambda}_-(\overleftrightarrow{\partial}_0 + \overleftrightarrow{\partial}_1)\lambda_- + i\overline{\lambda}_+(\overleftrightarrow{\partial}_0 - \overleftrightarrow{\partial}_1)\lambda_+ + v_{01}^2 + D^2\right],\end{aligned} \tag{4.3}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}_{\rm m} &= \int \mathrm{d}^4\theta\ \overline{\Phi}\,\mathrm{e}^V\Phi + \text{total derivative} \\ &= |D_0\phi|^2 - |D_1\phi|^2 + i\overline{\psi}_-(\overleftrightarrow{D_0} + \overleftrightarrow{D_1})\psi_- + i\overline{\psi}_+(\overleftrightarrow{D_0} - \overleftrightarrow{D_1})\psi_+ + \overline{\phi}D\phi + |F|^2 \\ &\quad -|\sigma\phi|^2 - \overline{\psi}_-\sigma\psi_+ - \overline{\psi}_+\overline{\sigma}\psi_- - i\overline{\phi}\lambda_-\psi_+ + i\overline{\phi}\lambda_+\psi_- + i\overline{\psi}_+\overline{\lambda}_-\phi - i\overline{\psi}_-\overline{\lambda}_+\phi,\end{aligned} \tag{4.4}$$

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{FI}\,\theta} = \mathrm{Re}\int \mathrm{d}^2\widetilde{\theta}\Big(-t\Sigma\Big) = -rD + \theta v_{01}. \tag{4.5}$$

Only the special case of $T = U(1)$ and with just one charge 1 matter field is presented, since the generalization is obvious. The superpotential term is

$$\mathcal{L}_W = \mathrm{Re}\int \mathrm{d}^2\theta\, W(\Phi) = \mathrm{Re}\left[\sum_{i=1}^N F_i\frac{\partial W}{\partial\phi_i}(\phi) - \sum_{i,j=1}^N \frac{\partial^2 W}{\partial\phi_i\partial\phi_j}(\phi)\psi_+^i\psi_-^j\right]. \tag{4.6}$$

In the above expressions, $\overleftrightarrow{\partial}_\mu$ and $\overleftrightarrow{D}_\mu$ are defined as

$$\psi_1\overleftrightarrow{\partial}_\mu\psi_2 := \frac{1}{2}\psi_1(\partial_\mu\psi_2) - \frac{1}{2}(\partial_\mu\psi_1)\psi_2. \tag{4.7}$$

If the worldsheet has no boundary, which is the case within this section, a total derivative can be ignored and hence there is no need to distinguish $\psi_1(\partial_\mu\psi_2)$ and $-(\partial_\mu\psi_1)\psi_2$. However, later in this paper, we will consider worldsheets *with* boundary. Then a total derivative is non-zero in general and the distinction is important. The above choice of Lagrangian is the one that will be used throughout this paper.

4.2 Phases

The classical potential for the scalar fields ϕ_i and σ_a is obtained after integrating out the auxiliary fields D_a and F_i:

$$U = \sum_{i=1}^N\left|\sum_{a=1}^k Q_i^a\sigma_a\phi_i\right|^2 + \frac{e^2}{2}\sum_{a=1}^k\left(\sum_{i=1}^N Q_i^a|\phi_i|^2 - r^a\right)^2 + \sum_{i=1}^N\left|\frac{\partial W}{\partial\phi_i}(\phi)\right|^2. \tag{4.8}$$

Here we assume $e_{ab}^2 = \delta_{ab} e^2$ for simplicity. One obtains some idea of the low energy theory by looking at the vacuum locus, $U = 0$. It depends very much on the value of the FI parameters r^a which enter into the middle term, the D-term potential. If $r = (r^1, ..., r^k)$ is in a certain domain, the D-term equations

$$\sum_{i=1}^{N} Q_i^a |\phi_i|^2 - r^a = 0 \qquad \forall a = 1, \ldots, k, \tag{4.9}$$

may require that the ϕ_i are non-zero and the matrix $M^{ab} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} Q_i^a Q_i^b |\phi_i|^2$ has maximal rank k. This means that the gauge group T is completely broken, or broken to a finite subgroup. In particular, $U = 0$ requires all σ_a to be zero by the first term in (4.8). However, this may fail at special values of $r = (r^1, ..., r^k)$. Also, it is possible that the equation $U = 0$ has no solution in some domain. Thus, the space $\mathbf{R}^k_{\mathrm{FI}}$ spanned by FI parameters is divided into a finite number of chambers. There are loci in which the rank of M^{ab} for generic solutions to (4.9) are less than k. They are parts of linear hypersurfaces and form walls that divide $\mathbf{R}^k_{\mathrm{FI}}$ into chambers. The chambers that admit solutions to the vacuum equation $U = 0$ are called the *phases* and the walls separating them are called the *phase boundaries*. At a point r in the interior of each phase, the continuous part of the gauge group T is broken everywhere on the vacuum locus $U = 0$.

A *geometric phase* is a phase in which T is completely broken at any solution of $U = 0$ and all modes transverse to $U = 0$ are massive. In that case, the low energy theory is a non-linear sigma model whose target space is the quotient $(U = 0)/T$. If the model has zero superpotential $W = 0$, the space $(U = 0)/T$ is the symplectic quotient of $\mathbf{C}^N$ by T with the moment map equation (4.9). As a complex manifold, it is the quotient by the complexified gauge group $T_{\mathbf{C}}$,

$$X_r = (\mathbf{C}^N - \Delta_r)/T_{\mathbf{C}}, \tag{4.10}$$

where Δ_r consists of points whose $T_{\mathbf{C}}$ orbits do not pass through solutions to (4.9). Δ_r is a union of linear subspaces of $\mathbf{C}^N$ and depends only on the phase that r belongs to. We shall call it the *deleted set* of the respective phase. X_r is a so called *toric manifold*. If the superpotential is non-trivival, the vacuum locus is a submanifold M_r of this toric manifold X_r, which is defined by the F-term equations

$$\frac{\partial W}{\partial \phi_i} = 0 \qquad \forall i = 1, \ldots, N. \tag{4.11}$$

In the $e^{-2} \to 0$ limit, the gauge field v_μ and the scalar field σ are expressed in terms of

the matter fields as

$$v_{a0} = \sum_{b,i} M_{ab}^{-1} Q_i^b \left(i\overline{\phi}_i \overleftrightarrow{\partial}_0 \phi_i + \frac{1}{2}(\overline{\psi}_{i+}\psi_{i+} + \overline{\psi}_{i-}\psi_{i-}) \right), \tag{4.12}$$

$$v_{a1} = \sum_{b,i} M_{ab}^{-1} Q_i^b \left(i\overline{\phi}_i \overleftrightarrow{\partial}_1 \phi_i + \frac{1}{2}(\overline{\psi}_{i+}\psi_{i+} - \overline{\psi}_{i-}\psi_{i-}) \right), \tag{4.13}$$

$$\sigma_a = -\sum_{b,i} M_{ab}^{-1} Q_i^b \overline{\psi}_{i+}\psi_{i-}. \tag{4.14}$$

The gauge field is the pull-back of the connection of the complex line bundle $\mathcal{O}(e_a)$ over X_r (or its restriction to M_r) associated with the charge 1 representation for the ath $U(1)$.

If $W = 0$, all phases are almost geometric in the sense that all modes transverse to $U = 0$ are massive and the quotient $X_r = (U = 0)/T$ has at most orbifold singularities. When it can be realized as a global orbifold by an unbroken gauge group, $X_r = X_r'/\Gamma$, the low energy theory is the orbifold theory in the standard sense [28]: the Γ-gauged sigma model on X_r'. Otherwise, no convenient description of the low energy theory is available today. See for example [56] and references therein. A singular X_r makes a perfect sense as an *algebraic variety*, but that has no useful suggestion to the description of the theory. It makes sense also as something called a *quotient stack*, and that seems to carry convenient structures, especially when we consider D-branes. (See Section 9.) In this paper, somewhat loosely, we simply refer to the low energy theory as "the non-linear sigma model on the toric variety X_r", having this subtlety in mind.

If the superpotential W is non-trivial, there are various phases in which some of the transverse modes to $U = 0$ are massless. The extreme cases are the so called *Landau-Ginzburg phases*. A Landau-Ginzburg phase is a phase in which the vacuum locus $(U = 0)/T$ is one point and all modes transverse to the $T_{\mathbf{C}}$ orbit do not acquire mass from the D-term potential. In the limit where r is scaled up to infinity, the modes tangent to the $T_{\mathbf{C}}$ orbit decouple and the theory reduces to the Landau-Ginzburg model for the transverse modes, possibly with a residual discrete gauge symmetry (Landau-Ginzburg orbifold).

RG Flows And Calabi-Yau Conditions

Under the renormalization group (RG) the FI parameters $r^1, ..., r^k$ flow as $r^a(\mu) = r^a(\mu') + \sum_{i=1}^N Q_i^a \log(\mu/\mu')$, so that $r(\mu)$ runs along a straight line in $\mathbf{R}^k_{\text{FI}}$. In general, this induces a flow between different phases or domains without solution to the vacuum

equation $U = 0$. However, under the condition

$$\sum_{i=1}^{N} Q_i^a = 0 \quad \forall a = 1, \ldots, k, \tag{4.15}$$

the FI parameters do not run and are genuine parameters of the theory. A related effect is the axial anomaly. The classical action (4.1) has axial $U(1)$ R-symmetry but this is anomalously broken if the condition (4.15) is violated. As a consequence, the shift of theta angles, $\theta^a \to \theta^a + \sum_{i=1}^{N} Q_i^a \Delta$, is physically irrelevant as that can be absorbed by a field redefinition using an axial rotation. If the condition (4.15) is indeed met, there is no such anomaly and all the k theta angles θ^a are genuine parameters of the theory. If the superpotential is quasi-homogeneous, namely if it obeys

$$W(\lambda^{R_1}\Phi_1, \ldots, \lambda^{R_N}\Phi_N) = \lambda^2 W(\Phi_1, \ldots, \Phi_N), \tag{4.16}$$

for certain $R_1, ..., R_N$ (called the R-charges of the fields $\Phi_1, ..., \Phi_N$), there is also a vector $U(1)$ R-symmetry.

If the two conditions (4.15) and (4.16) are met, we have both axial and vector $U(1)$ R-symmetries. They are expected to become a part of the superconformal symmetry of the non-trivial infra-red fixed point of the RG flow. In such a case, we have a family of superconformal field theories parametrized by the FI-theta parameters $t^a = r^a - i\theta^a$ as well as the parameters that enter into the superpotential $W(\Phi)$. In many cases these are the entire set of exactly marginal parameters, but in many other cases there are extra parameters.

4.3 Singularity

Let us assume that the Calabi-Yau conditions (4.15) and (4.16) are met and hence all t^a's are genuine parameters of the theory.

On a phase boundary, a non-compact Coulomb branch emerges — the vacuum locus $U = 0$ includes a point at which there is an unbroken continuous subgroup of T and the corresponding σ_a is unconstrained. This implies a singularity of the theory. The story must be modified in the quantum theory since it depends also on the theta angles θ^a. Actual existence of the Coulomb branch can be examined by computing the quantum ground state energy at large values of σ's. The result is

$$U_{\text{eff}} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{a,b=1}^{k} e_{ab}^2(\sigma) \frac{\partial \widetilde{\overline{W}}_{\text{eff}}}{\partial \overline{\sigma}_a} \frac{\partial \widetilde{W}_{\text{eff}}}{\partial \sigma_b}. \tag{4.17}$$

$e^2_{ab}(\sigma)$ are the effective gauge coupling constants. They approach their classical values as $|\sigma| \to \infty$. $\widetilde{W}_{\text{eff}}(\sigma)$ is the effective twisted superpotential which is obtained by integrating out the charged chiral multiplet fields. Its first derivatives are given by

$$\frac{\partial \widetilde{W}_{\text{eff}}}{\partial \sigma_a}(\sigma) = -t^a - \sum_{i=1}^{N} Q_i^a \log \left(\sum_{b=1}^{k} Q_i^b \sigma_b \right). \tag{4.18}$$

The imaginary part of these are the effective background electric fields and enter into (4.17) as the electrostatic energy [57]. To be precise, the potential (4.17) changes if θ^a is shifted by 2π, and the lowest among all is the actual ground state energy. In particular, the potential is zero if the derivatives (4.18) vanish modulo $2\pi i$ times integers [2, 57]. Namely, the vacuum equation is

$$\prod_{i=1}^{N} \left(\sum_{b=1}^{k} Q_i^b \sigma_b \right)^{Q_i^a} = \mathrm{e}^{-t^a}. \tag{4.19}$$

Under the condition (4.15), this equation is invariant under the uniform rescaling of σ_a's, so that existence of one solution means existence of a non-compact Coulomb branch. Eliminating σ_a's we obtain an equation for e^{-t^a}'s that defines the locus where there is a quantum Coulomb branch. The theory is singular there since the wavefunctions spread over the Coulomb branch and are not normalizable. In general, there are additional singular loci coming from mixed Coulomb-Higgs branches [58].

Let us denote the set of singular points by $\mathfrak{S}$. It is a union of hypersurfaces in the set $(\mathbf{C}^\times)^k$ of all FI-theta parameters $\{(\mathrm{e}^{t^1}, ..., \mathrm{e}^{t^k})\}$. The Kähler moduli space is the complement

$$\mathfrak{M}_K = (\mathbf{C}^\times)^k \setminus \mathfrak{S}.$$

In order to get some idea of how $\mathfrak{M}_K$ looks like, it is useful to introduce two projections of $(\mathbf{C}^\times)^k$ — the projection to the FI parameters (Log) and the projection to the theta parameters (Arg):

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & (\mathbf{C}^\times)^k & \\ \text{Log} \swarrow & & \searrow \text{Arg} \\ \mathbf{R}^k_{\text{FI}} & & (S^1)^k_\theta \end{array} \tag{4.20}$$

The image of the singular loci $\mathfrak{S}$ under the map Log is called the Amoeba of $\mathfrak{S}$ [59]. It is a domain on $\mathbf{R}^k_{\text{FI}}$ with tentacles which asymptote to the classical phase boundaries at large $|r|$, possibly shifted by some finite amount. The image of $\mathfrak{S}$ under the map Arg is called the co-Amoeba or the Alga of $\mathfrak{S}$ [60, 61]. We will see in some examples that the

Alga of $\mathfrak{S}$ has a non-empty complement, which has an important consequence for D-brane transport at the center of the moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$.

4.4 Examples

In what follows, we introduce some examples which will accompany us throughout this paper. We place emphasis on the phase structure and the deleted sets Δ_r. In Example (C), we introduce a method to find the deleted sets which turns out to be useful for describing coherent sheaves on toric varieties. In Examples (A) and (C), one can consider a compact theory with a non-trivial superpotential W, but one may also consider a non-compact theory with $W = 0$.

(A) Calabi-Yau Hypersurface In $\mathbf{CP}^{N-1}$

The first example has gauge group $U(1)$ and $(N+1)$ fields $P, X_1, \ldots, X_N$ with charge $-N, 1, \ldots, 1$. We consider the superpotential $W = PG(X_1, \ldots, X_N)$ where $G(X)$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree N. There are two phases as shown in Fig. 1. We plot

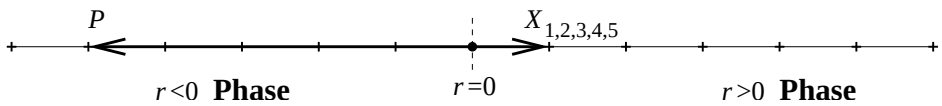


Figure 1: The Phases of the model (A) for $N = 5$.

the lattice of gauge charges (called the Picard lattice) inside $\mathbf{R}^k_{\mathrm{FI}}$, for a reason that will become clear later. The deleted sets are

$$\Delta_+ = \{x_1 = x_2 = \cdots = x_N = 0\} \qquad \text{for } r > 0,$$
$$\Delta_- = \{p = 0\} \qquad \text{for } r < 0.$$

The exact location of the singularity is $\mathrm{e}^t = (-N)^N$. In the $r \gg 0$ phase, the theory reduces to the non-linear sigma model on the Calabi-Yau hypersurface $X_G = \{G = 0\}$ in the projective space $\mathbf{CP}^{N-1}$. In the $r \ll 0$ phase, the vacuum manifold $(U = 0)/U(1)$ is a one point with $p \neq 0$ and $x = 0$ which breaks the gauge group to $\Gamma = \{\omega \in U(1) | \omega^N = 1\} \cong \mathbf{Z}_N$. All the X_i's are massless there. At $r \to -\infty$, the theory reduces to the Landau-Ginzburg orbifold of the N variables $X_1, \ldots, X_N$ with the superpotential $W = G(X)$ and the orbifold group Γ. If there is no superpotential, $r \gg 0$ is the geometric phase on the total space of $\mathcal{O}(-N)$ (the canonical bundle) over $\mathbf{CP}^{N-1}$, while the $r \to -\infty$ limit yields the free orbifold $\mathbf{C}^N/\Gamma$.

(B) The Resolved Conifold, $\mathcal{O}(-1) \oplus \mathcal{O}(-1) \to \mathbf{CP}^1$

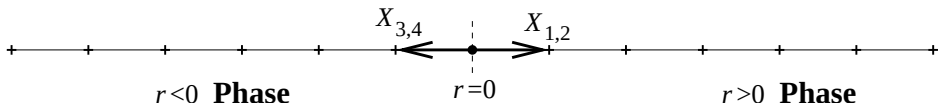


Figure 2: The Phases of the model (B).

The second example has $U(1)$ gauge group and four fields X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4 with charge $1, 1, -1, -1$. There are two phases as shown in Fig. 2. The deleted sets are

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_+ &= \{x_1 = x_2 = 0\} \qquad \text{for } r > 0, \\ \Delta_- &= \{x_3 = x_4 = 0\} \qquad \text{for } r < 0. \end{aligned}$$

The exact location of the singularity is $\mathrm{e}^t = 1$. The $r \gg 0$ phase is the non-linear sigma model on the total space of $\mathcal{O}(-1) \oplus \mathcal{O}(-1)$ over $\mathbf{CP}^1$ (a resolved conifold), while the $r \ll 0$ phase is that of another resolved conifold. The difference is that in the $r \gg 0$ pase, x_1, x_2 span the base $\mathbf{CP}^1$ and x_3, x_4 span fibres, while in the $r \ll 0$ phase $\mathbf{CP}^1$ is spanned by x_3, x_4 and the fibres are spanned by x_1, x_2. They are both geometric phases and the transition between them is called the *flop*.

(C) A two parameter model

The third example has two Kähler parameters. It has $U(1)^2$ gauge group and seven charged fields as shown below:

	P	X_1	X_2	X_3	X_4	X_5	X_6
$U(1)_1$	-4	0	0	1	1	1	1
$U(1)_2$	0	1	1	0	0	0	-2

Using this example, we introduce a method to find the phases and the deleted sets, without writing down the D-term equations, but by looking at the charge lattice embedded into $\mathbf{R}^k_{\mathrm{FI}}$. Not only facilitating the problem with a geometric picture, this method turns out to be useful also when we describe coherent sheaves on toric varieties (see Section 9).

First of all, the phase boundaries are domains of the hypersurfaces which are in positive linear spans of $(k-1)$ charge vectors of some of the fields. In the present example there are four boundaries correspnding to four charge vectors. Accordingly, there are four phases as shown in Fig. 3.

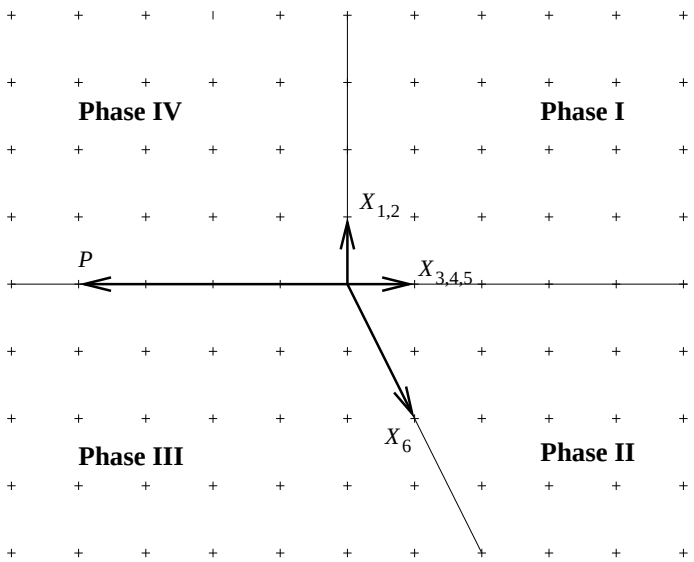


Figure 3: The Phases of the two parameter model (C).

Next we describe how to find the deleted set, say in Phase I. Let us take any hyperplane through the origin such that Phase I is in one of the two halves of $\mathbf{R}^k_{\rm FI}$ separated by the plane. Then we forbid the common zero of those x_i's that are on the same side as Phase I. This is required by the D-term equation for the $U(1)$ subgroup with respect to which the charge vectors in that hyperplane is neutral. For the vertical hyperplane in Fig. 3, the charge vectors on the same side as Phase I are those of X_3, X_4, X_5, X_6. Thus $\{x_3 = x_4 = x_5 = x_6 = 0\}$ is deleted. (The relevant subgroup is $U(1)_1$ and the equation is $|x_3|^2 + |x_4|^2 + |x_5|^2 + |x_6|^2 - 4|p|^2 = r^1$. Since r^1 is positive in Phase I, $x_3 = x_4 = x_5 = x_6 = 0$ is indeed forbidden.) By other choices of the hyperplane, we find that we also delete $\{x_1 = \ldots = x_6 = 0\}$ and $\{x_1 = \ldots = x_5 = 0\}$ as well as $\{x_1 = x_2 = 0\}$. But the latter subspace contains the previous two, so that the deleted set for Phase I is the union of $\{x_1 = x_2 = 0\}$ and $\{x_3 = x_4 = x_5 = x_6 = 0\}$. Repeating this procedure provides the deleted sets for the other phases as well:

$$\begin{aligned}
\Delta_{\rm I} &= \{x_1 = x_2 = 0\} \cup \{x_3 = x_4 = x_5 = x_6 = 0\}, \\
\Delta_{\rm II} &= \{x_1 = x_2 = x_3 = x_4 = x_5 = 0\} \cup \{x_6 = 0\}, \\
\Delta_{\rm III} &= \{p = 0\} \cup \{x_6 = 0\}, \\
\Delta_{\rm IV} &= \{p = 0\} \cup \{x_1 = x_2 = 0\}.
\end{aligned}$$

The exact location of the singularity $\mathfrak{S}$ is the union of

$$\mathrm{e}^{-t^1} = 4^{-4}(1-2u), \qquad \mathrm{e}^{-t^2} = \frac{u^2}{(1-2u)^2},$$

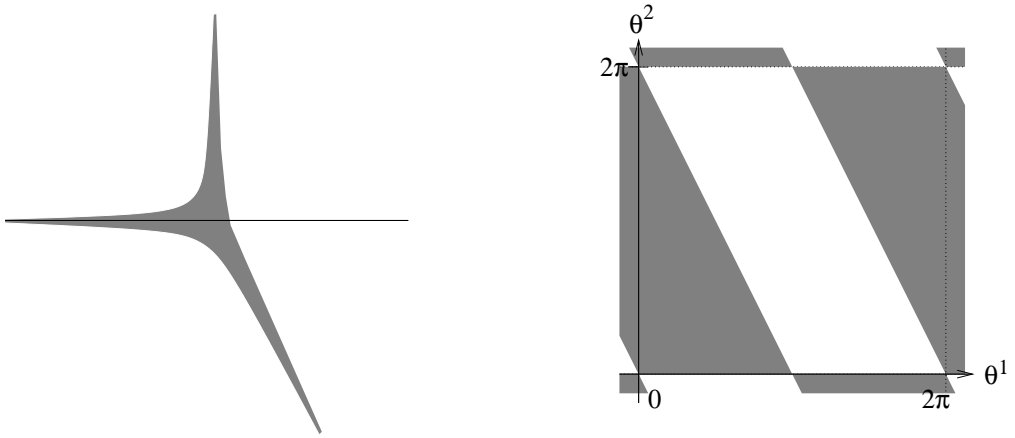


Figure 4: The Amoeba (Left) and Alga (Right) of $\mathfrak{S}$ of the two parameter model (C).

where $u := \sigma_2/\sigma_1$, and

$$e^{-t^2} = 2^{-2}.$$

The latter component comes from the mixed Higgs-Coulomb branch, where σ_2 as well as fields neutral to $U(1)_2$ are large. The Amoeba and Alga of the singular locus are depicted in Fig. 4. The Alga is found by looking at the behaviour of θ^1 and θ^2 near the special points, $u = 0, \frac{1}{2}$ and ∞, that correspond to the tentacles of the Amoeba, i.e., to the phase boundaries. (We learned this technique from M. Passare.) Note that the Alga has a non-trivial complement.

Without the superpotential, the low energy theory is the sigma model on a non-compact Calabi-Yau variety X_r with or without orbifold singularity. In Phase I, the unborken subgroup is everywhere trivial $\{1\}$ and the space X_r is the total space of a holomorphic line bundle on a smooth compact manifold B_r. The base manifold B_r is the compact toric manifold corresponding to the model without the field P, and the line bundle is $\mathcal{O}(-4, 0)$. In Phase II, the unbroken subgroup is $\{(1, \pm 1)\} \cong \mathbf{Z}_2$ at $x_1 = x_2 = 0$, and the space X_r is the total space of the line bundle $\mathcal{O}(-8)$ over the weighted projective space $\mathrm{W}\mathbf{CP}^4_{[11222]}$. In Phase III, the unbroken subgroup is $\{(e^{2\pi i/4}, e^{2\pi i/8})\} \cong \mathbf{Z}_8$ at $x_1 = \cdots = x_5 = 0$, and the space X_r is the orbifold $\mathbf{C}^5/\mathbf{Z}_8$. In Phase IV, the unbroken subgroup is $\{(e^{2\pi i/4}, 1)\} \cong \mathbf{Z}_4$, and the space X_r is the orbifold of $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{CP}^1}(-2) \times \mathbf{C}^3$ by $\mathbf{Z}_4$.

We can also consider a theory with superpotential

$$W = PG(X_1, ..., X_6)$$

where $G(X)$ is a homogeneous polynomial of bidegree $(4,0)$, such as $G(X) = X_1^8 X_6^4 + X_2^8 X_6^4 + X_3^4 + X_4^4 + X_5^4$. In Phase I and Phase II the low energy theory is the non-linear sigma model on the hypersurface $\{G = 0\}$ of B_r and $\mathrm{W}\mathbf{CP}^4_{[11222]}$ respectively. In Phase III it is the $\mathbf{Z}_8$ orbifold of the Landau-Ginzburg model with superpotential $W = G(X_1, ..., X_5, 1)$. In Phase IV it is a non-linear Landau-Ginburg orbifold.

(D) Resolution Of A_{N-1} Singularity

As the final example, we take the $U(1)^{N-1}$ gauge theory with the following matter content:

$$\begin{array}{c|cccccccccc} & X_1 & X_2 & X_3 & X_4 & \cdots & X_{N-2} & X_{N-1} & X_N & X_{N+1} \\ U(1)_1 & 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ U(1)_2 & 0 & 1 & -2 & 1 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & & & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & & & & \\ \vdots & & & & & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & & \\ U(1)_{N-2} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 \\ U(1)_{N-1} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 & -2 & 1 \end{array} \tag{4.21}$$

This theory describes the A_{N-1} singularity and its various resolutions. The case $N = 2$ is identical to the case $N = 2$ in Example (A).

There is a phase, *the orbifold phase*, where the deleted set Δ_{orb} is the union of $\{x_i = 0\}$ for $i = 2, ..., N$. The non-zero values of these x_i's breaks the gauge group to a discrete subgroup $\{(\omega, \omega^2, ..., \omega^{N-1}); \omega^N = 1\}$ which is isomorphic to $\mathbf{Z}_N$. In the limit $r^a \to -\infty$, the low energy theory is the free orbifold $X_{\mathrm{orb}} = \mathbf{C}^2/\mathbf{Z}_N$ where $\mathbf{C}^2$ is spanned by x_1, x_{N+1} and the group $\mathbf{Z}_N$ acts on it by $(x_1, x_{N+1}) \to (\omega x_1, \omega^{-1} x_{N+1})$. If we introduce the orbifold invariants by $x = x_1^N$, $y = x_{N+1}^N$ and $z = x_1 x_{N+1}$, they satisfy the equation

$$xy = z^N.$$

The singularity at the origin is called the A_{N-1} singularity. The opposite limit is *the large volume phase* where all r^a are positive. The deleted set Δ_{res} is a union of $\{x_i = x_j = 0\}$ for all i, j such that $|i - j| \geq 2$. The low energy theory is the sigma model on the full resolution X_{res} of the A_{N-1} singularity. The projection map $\pi : X_{\mathrm{res}} \to X_{\mathrm{orb}}$ is described by $x = x_1^N x_2^{N-1} x_3^{N-3} \cdots x_N$, $y = x_2 x_3^2 \cdots x_N^{N-1} x_{N+1}^N$, $z = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_{N+1}$. The pre-image of the singular point $x = y = z = 0$ is the exceptional divisor which is a chain of 2-spheres $C_1, \ldots, C_{N-1}$, where C_i is defined by the equation $x_{N-i+1} = 0$. They intersect according to the A_{N-1} Dynkin diagram as in Figure 5.

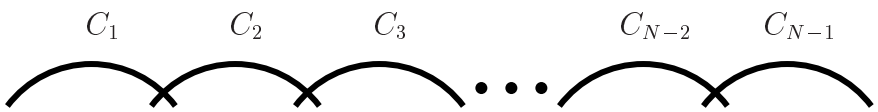


Figure 5: The exceptional divisor of the resolved A_{N-1} singularity.

In between, there are other phases corresponding to partial resolutions. A convenient way to label the phases is to asign 0 or 1 to each node of the A_{N-1} Dynkin diagram, depending on whether the node is resolved or not. For example, the orbifold phase is $(11\cdots1)$ and the fully resolved phase is $(00\cdots0)$. The phase where only C_1 is resolved is $(011\cdots1)$ and the phase where only C_2 is unresolved is $(010\cdots0)$. In total, there are 2^{N-1} phases. If there is a sequence of m 1's in the label, that means that there is an A_m singularity in that phase. For example, the phase (1101) in the $N=5$ model has one A_2 singularity and one A_1 singularity.

A phase boundary corresponds to a blow down or blow up of one C_i. In the above labelling system, that is the boundary between the phases where the i-th node flips between 0 and 1. Let us describe where it sits inside the space $\mathbf{R}_{\rm FI}^{N-1}$. We know that it is a part of the hyperplane spanned by the charge vectors of a subset of $(N-1)-1$ variables, but which subset? It is the set of all x_j's except x_{N-i+1}, x_{N-i_++1} and x_{N-i_-+1} where $i_-<i$ and $i_+>i$ are the labels of the resolved nodes which are closest to i on the left and on the right. When there is no resolved node on the left (*resp.* right) of i we set $i_-=0$ (*resp.* $i_+=N$). This shows that there is at least one phase boundary in the hyperplane spanned by the charge vectors of any subset of $(N-2)$ charge vectors.

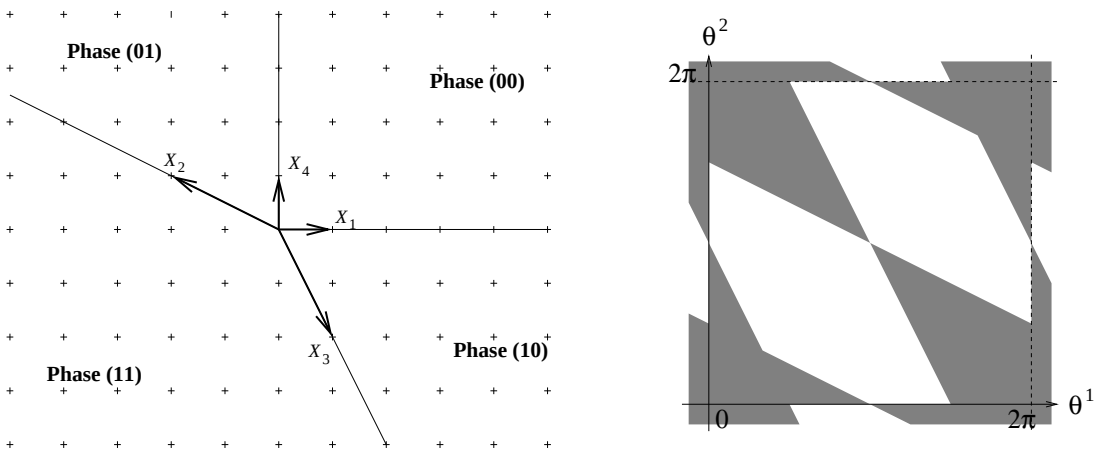


Figure 6: The phases (left) and the Alga of $\mathfrak{S}$ (right) of the A_2 model.

For illustration, let us consider models with small N's. For the A_2 model, we can analyze the system very explicitly as a two parameter model. Figure 6 (left) shows the

phases. As we have learned in Example (C), we can read off the deleted set at each phase:

$$\begin{aligned}
\Delta_{(00)} &= \{x_1 = x_3 = 0\} \cup \{x_1 = x_4 = 0\} \cup \{x_2 = x_4\}, \\
\Delta_{(01)} &= \{x_2 = 0\} \cup \{x_1 = x_4 = 0\}, \\
\Delta_{(10)} &= \{x_3 = 0\} \cup \{x_1 = x_4 = 0\}, \\
\Delta_{(11)} &= \{x_2 = 0\} \cup \{x_3 = 0\}.
\end{aligned}$$

That $x_2 = 0$ (*resp.* $x_3 = 0$) is not allowed means that C_2 (*resp.* C_1) is not resolved, thus justifying the labelling of the phases. Note that each of the phase boundaries is spanned by the charge vector of a particular variable, in accord with the general description given above. The singular locus is found in the by-now standard way. Its Alga is shown in Figure 6 (right).

For higher N the analysis becomes increasingly complicated, and it is not illuminating to draw the picture of phases on a two-dimensional sheet. Figure 7 shows the labels of phases and their boundaries in the A_3 model. The label (jk) of the phase boundary means

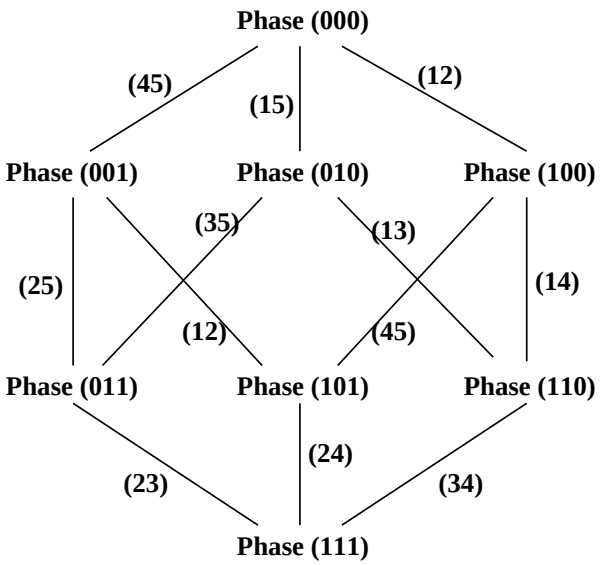


Figure 7: The phases and phase boundaries of the A_3 model

that it is a domain on the hyperplane spanned by the charge vectors of x_j and x_k, inside their positive span. It is the positive span itself, unless it is on the hyperplane spanned by (12) and (45). The positive spans of (12) and (45) intersect on a half-line which separates each of them into two phase boundaries. That is why "(12)" and "(45)" appear twice in Figure 7.

4.5 Phase Boundary And Deleted Sets

To finish the review of linear sigma models, we point out a relation between the deleted sets of adjacent phases. This relation will play an important rôle later in this paper.

Let us consider two phases, say, Phase I and Phase II, which are separated by a phase boundary. Let T^u be the unbroken subgroup at that phase boundary, and we choose basis elements $(e^1, ..., e^k)$ of the Lie algebra of T so that the first element e^1 generates T^u. We choose its sign so that r^1 is positive in Phase I and negative in Phase II. We denote by $\Delta_+^{\mathrm{I,II}}$ the common zeroes of ϕ_i's that are positively charged under the subgroup T^u, $Q_i^1 > 0$. Similarly, we denote by $\Delta_-^{\mathrm{I,II}}$ the common zeroes of ϕ_i's that are negatively charged, $Q_i^1 < 0$. Obviously $\Delta_+^{\mathrm{I,II}}$ is in Δ_{I}, and $\Delta_-^{\mathrm{I,II}}$ is in Δ_{II}. We claim that

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_{\mathrm{I}} &= \Delta_+^{\mathrm{I,II}} \cup (\Delta_{\mathrm{I}} \cap \Delta_{\mathrm{II}}), \\ \Delta_{\mathrm{II}} &= \Delta_-^{\mathrm{I,II}} \cup (\Delta_{\mathrm{I}} \cap \Delta_{\mathrm{II}}). \end{aligned} \tag{4.22}$$

It is straightforward to check such a relation in examples. Let us take, say, Example (C), and look at the boundary between Phase I and Phase IV. The basis of the gauge group is already chosen in the way just mentioned, and we find $\Delta_+^{\mathrm{I,IV}} = \{x_3 = x_4 = x_5 = x_6 = 0\}$ and $\Delta_-^{\mathrm{I,IV}} = \{p = 0\}$. On the other hand, we have $\Delta_{\mathrm{I}} \cap \Delta_{\mathrm{IV}} = \{x_1 = x_2 = 0\}$. Indeed the relation (4.22) holds for Phase I and Phase IV. It is very easy to check it for other phase boundaries.

In general, the relation (4.22) can be proved as follows. Let ϕ be an element of Δ_{I} that is not in Δ_{II}. This means that the $T_{\mathbf{C}}$ orbit of ϕ does not include a solution of the D-term equation at any point in Phase I, and also, at any point in Phase II there is some element $g \in T_{\mathbf{C}}$ such that $g\phi$ solves the D-term equation there. Namely, the D-term image of the $T_{\mathbf{C}}$-orbit of ϕ includes the Phase II entirely but does not meet Phase I. This D-term image is known to be convex in $\mathbf{R}^k_{\mathrm{FI}}$ [62], and hence is entirely on the same side as Phase II with respect to the hyperplane spanned by the I-II boundary. In particular, we have

$$\sum_i Q_i^1 |z^{Q_i^1} \phi_i|^2 < 0 \qquad \forall z \in \mathbf{C}^\times.$$

This is possible only if $\phi_i = 0$ for each i such that $Q_i^1 > 0$. Namely, ϕ must be in the set $\Delta_+^{\mathrm{I,II}}$. This shows $\Delta_{\mathrm{I}} \setminus (\Delta_{\mathrm{I}} \cap \Delta_{\mathrm{II}}) \subset \Delta_+^{\mathrm{I,II}}$, which is equivalent to $\Delta_I = \Delta_+^{\mathrm{I,II}} \cup (\Delta_{\mathrm{I}} \cap \Delta_{\mathrm{II}})$. The proof of the other relation is similar.

5 D-branes In Linear Sigma Models

In this section, we write down boundary interactions in linear sigma models that preserve $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetry as well as vector $U(1)$ R-symmetry. The building block is the Wilson line brane that carries a definite gauge charge. Interactions of Wilson lines can also be introduced just as in the systems considered in Section 2. In a system with vanishing superpotential, they are given by complexes of Wilson line branes. If the superpotential W is non-vanishing, they are given by gauge invariant and homogeneous matrix factorizations of W. We take a first look at the boundary conditions on the bulk fields, postponing the full consideration to Section 7. We end the section by describing the chiral sector in the theory with vanishing gauge coupling $e = 0$.

5.1 The Bulk Action And Boundary Counter Terms

$\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetry variation of the bulk action is a boundary term which is in general non-vanishing unless a boundary condition is used. We would like to find a boundary counter term whose variation cancels it. First, we focus on the gauge kinetic term, matter kinetic term and the FI-theta term. The counter term for the superpotential F-term is written using boundary degrees of freedom and will be fully considered in Section 5.4. The kinetic terms and FI-theta terms are $(2,2)$ D-terms and twisted F-terms. As explained in Section 3.5, they are classified as D-terms with respect to the $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetry. Thus, we should be able to write the invariant action in the form $\int \mathrm{d}t\, \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger(\cdots)$, where $\mathbf{Q} = \overline{\mathbf{Q}}_+ + \overline{\mathbf{Q}}_-$, $\mathbf{Q}^\dagger = \mathbf{Q}_+ + \mathbf{Q}_-$ are the $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ generators. Action of such a form would be manifestly $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ invariant and automatically lead us to find the needed boundary counter term.

A hint to find such a form lies in the original manifestly $(2,2)$ invariant action written in terms of the superspace intergals (4.1). Up to a total derivative, bulk D-term $\int \mathrm{d}^4\theta K$ is equal to $\mathbf{Q}_+\mathbf{Q}_-\overline{\mathbf{Q}}_-\overline{\mathbf{Q}}_+ k \sim \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger[\overline{\mathbf{Q}}_+, \mathbf{Q}_+]k$, where k is the lowest component of the superfield K. Similarly, for a twisted chiral superfield $\widetilde{W}$, the twisted F-term $\int \mathrm{d}^2\widetilde{\theta}\,\widetilde{W}$ can be written as $\mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger\left(\widetilde{W}|_{\text{lowest}}\right)$ again up to a total derivative. This motivates us to take the following as the manifestly $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ invariant action:

$$\begin{aligned} S_{\mathrm{g}} + S_{\mathrm{m}} + S_{\mathrm{FI}\,\theta} \;&=\; \frac{1}{4\pi}\int_{\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}^2 s\, \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger[\overline{\mathbf{Q}}_+, \mathbf{Q}_+]\left(-\frac{1}{2e^2}\sum_{a=1}^{k}|\sigma_a|^2 + \sum_{i=1}^{N}|\phi_i|^2\right) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2\pi}\mathrm{Re}\int_{\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}^2 s\, \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger\left(-\sum_{a=1}^{k} t^a \sigma_a\right). \end{aligned} \tag{5.1}$$

Despite its appearance, it includes the boundary counter term. Let us write it down more explicitly. For the case of the $U(1)$ gauge theory with a single charge 1 matter, we find

$$\begin{aligned} S_g &= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}^2 s\, \mathcal{L}_g + \frac{1}{4\pi e^2}\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t\, \left[\frac{1}{2}\partial_1|\sigma|^2 + \mathrm{Im}(\sigma)D + \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)v_{01}\right], \qquad (5.2)\\ S_{\mathrm{m}} &= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}^2 s\, \mathcal{L}_m + \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t\, \left[\frac{i}{2}(\overline{\psi}_-\psi_+ - \overline{\psi}_+\psi_-) + \mathrm{Im}(\sigma)|\phi|^2\right], \qquad (5.3)\\ S_{\mathrm{FI}\,\theta} &= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}^2 s\, \mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{FI}\,\theta} + \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t\, \mathrm{Im}\Big(-t\sigma\Big), \qquad (5.4) \end{aligned}$$

where $\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{g}}$, $\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{m}}$, $\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{FI}\,\theta}$ are the expressions given in (4.3), (4.4), (4.5) respectively. The counter term in (5.3) is the gauge theory version of the "standard boundary term" (2.20) in non-linear sigma models and LG models. For the general case, the total boundary counter term is expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} S_{\mathrm{tot}}^{\mathrm{c.t.}} &= \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t\, \left\{\frac{1}{2e^2}\sum_{a=1}^{k}\left[\frac{1}{2}\partial_1|\sigma_a|^2 + \mathrm{Im}(\sigma_a)D_a + \mathrm{Re}(\sigma_a)(v_a)_{01}\right]\right.\\ &\quad \left. + \frac{i}{2}\sum_{i=1}^{N}\Big(\overline{\psi}_{i-}\psi_{i+} - \overline{\psi}_{i+}\psi_{i-}\Big) + \mathrm{Im}\sum_{a=1}^{k}\left[\left(\sum_{i=1}^{N} Q_i^a|\phi_i|^2 - t^a\right)\sigma_a\right]\right\}. \qquad (5.5) \end{aligned}$$

This counter term had been found earlier in [9, 10].

As always, there is a freedom to add boundary D-terms,

$$\Delta S_{\mathrm{bdry}} = \int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t\, \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^\dagger\lambda.$$

This would have no effect to the low energy theory as long as λ is small enough at infinity in the field space. But addition of such a term will alter the theory if λ is large at infinity. In what follows, we will not consider such "large D-terms".

5.2 The Wilson Line

Next, we consider boundary interactions that are by themselves $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ invariant but that are not D-terms. The simplest one is

$$\frac{1}{2}\int_B \mathrm{d}\theta\mathrm{d}\overline{\theta}\, V = -\Big[\, v_0 - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)\,\Big]. \qquad (5.6)$$

This is manifestly $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ invariant, but is not invariant under the $U(1)$ gauge transformation $iv_0 \to iv_0 + g\partial_0 g^{-1}$. However, the exponentiated action, the Wilson line

$$W_q(t_f, t_i) = \exp\left(-i\int_{t_i}^{t_f} q\Big[\, v_0 - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)\,\Big]\mathrm{d}t\right)$$

transforms as

$$W_q(t_f, t_i) \longrightarrow g(t_f)^q \cdot W_q(t_f, t_i) \cdot g(t_i)^{-q}$$

and hence is gauge covariant whenever the number q is an integer. We denote the brane supporting this Wilson line by

$$\mathcal{W}(q).$$

The simple interpretation is that the Chan-Paton space $\mathcal{V}$ carries charge q under the gauge group. Since the superfield V is not gauge invariant, the Wilson line is *not a D-term* despite its appearance (5.6).

For a $U(1)^k$ theory, a choice of k-tuple of integers defines the Wilson line brane $\mathcal{W}(q^1, ..., q^k)$ in the same way. Note that the bulk theta term can be converted into a boundary term by Stokes theorem:

$$\int_{\mathbb{S}} \theta \, v_{01} \, \mathrm{d}^2 s = - \int_{\partial \mathbb{S}} \theta \, v_0 \, \mathrm{d}t,$$

Including this into the counter term (5.5) and the Wilson line term, we have the following boundary Lagrangian

$$\begin{aligned} S_{\text{bdry}} \;=\; & S_{\text{g}}^{\text{c.t.}} + \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\partial \mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t \, \left\{ \frac{i}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{N} \Big(\overline{\psi}_{i-} \psi_{i+} - \overline{\psi}_{i+} \psi_{i-} \Big) \right. \\ & \left. + \sum_{a=1}^{k} \left(\sum_{i=1}^{N} Q_i^a |\phi_i|^2 - r^a \right) \mathrm{Im}(\sigma_a) - \sum_{a=1}^{k} (\theta^a + 2\pi q^a) \Big[\, (v_a)_0 - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma_a) \, \Big] \right\}. \end{aligned} \tag{5.7}$$

The expression (5.7) makes it manifest that the theory depends only on the combination $\theta^a + 2\pi q^a$, or equivalently, that the theory does not change under

$$\theta^a \to \theta^a + 2\pi m^a, \quad \text{and} \quad q^a \to q^a - m^a, \tag{5.8}$$

for integers $m^1, ..., m^k$.

The 2π periodicity in the theta parameters may be lost if the worldsheet $\mathbb{S}$ has a boundary. One way to see this is to note that the integral

$$\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{\mathbb{S}} v_{12} \, \mathrm{d}^2 s$$

is not necessarily an integer unless a boundary condition like $v|_{\partial \mathbb{S}} = 0$ is imposed. In the present system, we decide not to impose such a boundary condition nor $(v_0 - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma))|_{\partial \mathbb{S}} = 0$, and hence the theta parameters indeed do not have the 2π periodicity. We will discuss

more on the boundary conditions in later sections. Thus, $\theta^a \to \theta^a + 2\pi m^a$ with no change in q^a is a non-trivial operation. In particular, the Wilson line brane $\mathcal{W}(q^1, ..., q^k)$ makes an invariant sense only when the theta parameters are specified as a real number (not just modulo $2\pi\mathbf{Z}$).

5.3 Interaction Of Wilson Lines

It turns out that the Wilson line branes serve as the building blocks of more general supersymmetric boundary interactions. The first step of the generalization is to take the direct sum

$$\mathcal{W} = \bigoplus_{i=1}^{n} \mathcal{W}(q_i). \tag{5.9}$$

Namely, instead of just $\mathcal{A}_t = \sum_{a=1}^{k} q^a(v_{a0} - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma_a))$ we consider the matrix valued boundary interaction

$$\mathcal{A}_t = \sum_{a=1}^{k} \begin{pmatrix} q_1^a & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & q_n^a \end{pmatrix} \Big[(v_a)_0 - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma_a) \Big]. \tag{5.10}$$

Under the gauge transformation by a $U(1)^k$ valued function $g = (g_1, ..., g_k)$, it transforms as $i\mathcal{A}_t \to i\mathcal{A}_t + \rho(g)\partial_t\rho(g)^{-1}$ with

$$\rho(g) = \begin{pmatrix} g^{q_1} & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & g^{q_n} \end{pmatrix}, \tag{5.11}$$

where $g^q := g_1^{q^1} \cdots g_k^{q^k}$. Simply put, the Chan-Paton space $\mathcal{V}$ of the brane $\oplus_{i=1}^{k}\mathcal{W}(q_i)$ carries the representation ρ of the gauge group $T \cong U(1)^k$. Note that the $\mathcal{A}_t$ can be written succinctly as

$$\mathcal{A}_t = \sum_{a=1}^{k} \rho_*(e^a) \Big[(v_a)_0 - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma_a) \Big] = \rho_*\Big(v_0 - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) \Big),$$

where ρ_* is the infinitesimal form of ρ, defined by $\rho_*(X) = -i\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\rho(\,\mathrm{e}^{itX})\Big|_{t=0}$ for an element iX of the Lie algebra of the gauge group.

Just as in various $(2,2)$ theories considered in Section 2, we may also introduce a $\mathbf{Z}_2$ graded sum of Wilson line branes $\mathcal{W} = \mathcal{W}^{\mathrm{ev}} \oplus \mathcal{W}^{\mathrm{od}}$ along with a tachyon profile Q that represents an interaction between Wilson lines. Namely we introduce a $\mathbf{Z}_2$ graded Chan-Paton space

$$\mathcal{V} = \mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{ev}} \oplus \mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{od}},$$

carrying a representation ρ of the gauge group, with an odd operator Q on $\mathcal{V}$ that depends holomorphically on the fields $\phi_1, .., \phi_N$. Then one can write the boundary interaction

$$\mathcal{A}_t = \rho_*\Big(v_0 - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)\Big) + \frac{1}{2}\{Q, Q^\dagger\} - \frac{1}{2}\sum_{i=1}^{N}\psi^i\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi_i}Q + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{i=1}^{N}\overline{\psi}_i\frac{\partial}{\partial\overline{\phi}_i}Q^\dagger \tag{5.12}$$

First of all, we would like $\mathcal{A}_t$ to transform under the gauge transformation as

$$i\mathcal{A}_t \longrightarrow \rho(g)i\mathcal{A}_t\rho(g)^{-1} + \rho(g)\partial_t\rho(g)^{-1}. \tag{5.13}$$

This is the case if and only if Q satisfies

$$\rho(g)^{-1}Q(g\cdot\phi)\rho(g) = Q(\phi), \tag{5.14}$$

where $g\cdot\phi$ is the gauge transform of $\phi = (\phi_1, ..., \phi_N)$, given by $(g^{Q_1}\phi_1, ..., g^{Q_N}\phi_N)$. Under this condition, $\mathcal{A}_t$ is $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetric if and only if Q squares to the identity times a constant, $Q^2 = c\cdot\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{V}}$.

R-symmetry

The linear sigma model without superpotential has a vector $U(1)$ R-symmetry. We consider the R-symmetry that acts trivially on ϕ_i's even though the model usually has other symmetries with which the R-symmetry could be dressed. This is motivated by the fact that the bulk theory generically reduces to a large volume sigma model for which we decided to respect the R-symmetry such that the target coordinates have R-charge zero. (See Section 2.2.2.) We restrict our attention to branes that preserve this vector $U(1)$ R-symmetry.

Since Q enters into the supercharge $\mathbf{Q}$, we would like Q to have R-charge 1. Namely, we would like to have an action of $U(1)$ R-symmetry on the Chan-Paton space $\mathcal{V}$, given by a matrix $R(\lambda)$ such that

$$R(\lambda)Q(\phi)R(\lambda)^{-1} = \lambda Q(\phi). \tag{5.15}$$

This together with $Q^2 = c\cdot\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{V}}$ requires

$$Q^2 = 0. \tag{5.16}$$

We would like the R-action to commute with the gauge group action,

$$R(\lambda)\rho(g) = \rho(g)R(\lambda). \tag{5.17}$$

Under the condition (5.15), the Q-dependent part of $\mathcal{A}_t$ is invariant under the R-symmetry when combined with the conjugation by $R(\lambda)$, and under the condition (5.17), the remanining part $\rho_*(v_0 - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma))$ is also invariant. As in the case of non-linear sigma models (see Section 2.2.2), we may assume that $R(\lambda)$ is a genuine representation of $U(1)$ and is compatible with the $\mathbf{Z}_2$ grading, so that the eigenvalues are λ^j for some integer j which is even (*resp.* odd) for elements of $\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{ev}}$ (*resp.* $\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{od}}$). If we denote by $\mathcal{V}^j$ the $R(\lambda) = \lambda^j$ part of $\mathcal{V}$, we have

$$\mathcal{V} = \bigoplus_{j=j_{min}}^{j_{max}} \mathcal{V}^j. \tag{5.18}$$

with

$$\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{ev}} = \bigoplus_{j:\ even} \mathcal{V}^j, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{od}} = \bigoplus_{j:\ odd} \mathcal{V}^j.$$

By the commutativity with gauge group (5.17), each $\mathcal{V}^j$ corresponds to a direct sum $\mathcal{W}^j$ of Wilson line branes. If we order the subspaces $\mathcal{W}^j$ by increasing R-charge the interaction Q has the block-off diagonal form:

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & d^{j_{max}} & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & d^{j_{max}-1} & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & & \ddots & \ddots & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & d^{j_{min}+1} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{5.19}$$

where d^j denotes the interaction term between $\mathcal{W}^{j-1}$ and $\mathcal{W}^j$.

As usual, there is an ambiguity in the choice of $R(\lambda)$ — it can be replaced by $\lambda^2 R(\lambda)$ without violating any of the above condition. However, this of course does not change the physical property of the brane. Nevertheless it is sometimes useful to keep this information of the R-symmetry action. An *R-graded D-brane* $\mathfrak{B}$, a brane with this additional information, is determined by the triple $(\mathcal{W}, Q, R)$ or equivalently by the quartuple $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$. Note that the information on $\mathfrak{B}$ can nicely be encoded as a complex

$$\mathcal{C}(\mathfrak{B}): \qquad \cdots \xrightarrow{d^{j-1}} \mathcal{W}^{j-1} \xrightarrow{d^j} \mathcal{W}^j \xrightarrow{d^{j+1}} \mathcal{W}^{j+1} \xrightarrow{d^{j+2}} \cdots \quad . \tag{5.20}$$

Each $\mathcal{W}^j$ is a direct sum of Wilson line branes.

5.4 Matrix Factorizations

Let us now discuss D-branes in the linear sigma model with a non-zero superpotential W. The supersymmetry transformation of the bulk F-term is given by the Warner term:

$$\delta \int_{\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}^2 s \, \mathcal{L}_W = -\mathrm{Re} \int_{\partial \mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t \sum_{i=1}^{N} \overline{\epsilon} \psi_i \frac{\partial W}{\partial \phi_i} \tag{5.21}$$

As in LG models, the cancellation is done by a matrix factorization of W. Let us consider a $\mathbf{Z}_2$ graded sum of Wilson line branes with a polynomial tachyon profile. Namely, a $\mathbf{Z}_2$ graded Chan-Paton space, $\mathcal{V} = \mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{ev}} \oplus \mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{od}}$, an odd operator Q on $\mathcal{V}$ which is a polynomial in $\phi = (\phi_1, ..., \phi_N)$, and a representation ρ of the gauge group $T \cong U(1)^k$ on $\mathcal{V}$, which obey the gauge invariance condition

$$\rho(g)^{-1} Q(g \cdot \phi) \rho(g) = Q(\phi). \tag{5.22}$$

Then the corresponding boundary interaction

$$\mathcal{A}_t = \rho_* \Big(v_0 - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) \Big) + \frac{1}{2} \{ Q, Q^\dagger \} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{N} \psi^i \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi_i} Q + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^{N} \overline{\psi}_i \frac{\partial}{\partial \overline{\phi}_i} Q^\dagger$$

transforms under the $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetry as

$$\delta \mathcal{A}_t \; = \; -\mathrm{Re} \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^{N} \left(\overline{\epsilon} \psi_i \frac{\partial}{\partial \phi_i} Q^2 \right) - [\overline{\epsilon} Q^\dagger, Q^2] \right\} + i \mathcal{D}_t \Big(\overline{\epsilon} Q + \epsilon Q^\dagger \Big) - i \Big(\dot{\overline{\epsilon}} Q + \dot{\epsilon} Q^\dagger \Big). \tag{5.23}$$

The first term cancels the Warner term if and only if Q is a matrix factorization of W,

$$Q^2 = W \cdot \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{V}}. \tag{5.24}$$

(The second and the third terms of (5.23) are as before.)

We focus our attention to bulk theories with a vector $U(1)$ R-symmetry with an integrality that is compatible with the statistics of operators. Vector R-symmetry requires that the superpotential W is quasi-homogeneous. Namely, there is a one-parameter group of linear transformations of the variables $\phi \mapsto R_\lambda(\phi)$ commuting with the gauge symmetry

$$R_\lambda(g \cdot \phi) = g \cdot R_\lambda(\phi), \tag{5.25}$$

such that

$$W(R_\lambda(\phi)) = \lambda^2 W(\phi). \tag{5.26}$$

Note that there is an ambiguity in R_λ — it can be modified by the gauge symmetry. Integrality compatible with statistics means that the R-charges of operators or of NS-NS

states are integral and are conguruent modulo 2 to their spins. This is the case when R_λ for $\lambda = \mathrm{e}^{\pi i}$ is trivial,

$$R_{\mathrm{e}^{\pi i}}(\phi) = \phi, \tag{5.27}$$

or can be made trivial with the help of modification by a gauge transformation, in the phase where the theory reduces to a sigma model with large volume limit. Thus, we assume both (5.26) and (5.27) in the rest of this paper. This is certainly the case when the superpotential is designed to engineer a hypersurface $W = PG(X)$ or a complete intersection of hypersurfaces $W = \sum_{\beta=1}^{l} P_\beta G_\beta(X)$ in a toric variety: $R_\lambda(p, x) = (\lambda^2 p, x)$ satisfies the condition.

We would like the branes to respect this R-symmetry and integrality. The condition of R-symmetry is that Q has R-charge 1. Namely, there is a one parameter group of linear operators $R(\lambda)$ on the Chan-Paton space $\mathcal{V}$ commuting with the gauge symmetry

$$R(\lambda)\rho(g) = \rho(g)R(\lambda), \tag{5.28}$$

such that

$$R(\lambda)Q(R_\lambda(\phi))R(\lambda)^{-1} = \lambda Q(\phi). \tag{5.29}$$

Integrality means that the R-grading of NS-states and operators is integral and reduces modulo 2 to the original $\mathbf{Z}_2$ grading. Let us take two branes with R-symmetry, $(\mathcal{V}_i, Q_i, \rho_i)$ with R_i, $i = 1, 2$. The requirement in the polynomial sector is

$$R_2(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})\varphi(R_{\mathrm{e}^{\pi i}}(\phi))R_1(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})^{-1} = (-1)^{|\varphi|}\varphi(\phi) \tag{5.30}$$

for any polynomial φ of $\phi_1, ..., \phi_N$ with values in $\mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_2)$ which is gauge invariant. In the frame where (5.27) holds, this means that $R_1(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})$ and $R_2(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})$ are equal to the $\mathbf{Z}_2$ grading operators σ_1 and σ_2 of $\mathcal{V}_1$ and $\mathcal{V}_2$ (up to a common constant which can be set equal to 1). Thus, we require that

$$R(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i}) = \sigma_{\mathcal{V}} \quad (\text{the } \mathbf{Z}_2\text{-grading of } \mathcal{V}), \tag{5.31}$$

in the frame where (5.27) holds. In particular, this means $R(\mathrm{e}^{2\pi i}) = (\sigma_{\mathcal{V}})^2 = \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{V}}$. Namely, the eigenvalues of $R(\lambda)$ are λ^j where j is an integer which is even (*resp.* odd) on $\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{ev}}$ (*resp.* $\mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{od}}$). As usual, the replacement $R(\lambda) \to \lambda^2 R(\lambda)$ does not change the physical property of the branes, and we call a brane with the additional information $R(\lambda)$ an *R-graded D-brane*.

As an example, let us explicitly write down the data of an R-graded D-brane in the $U(1)$ gauge theory with the fields $P, X_1, ..., X_N$ of charge $-N, 1, \ldots, 1$ having the

superpotential $W = PG(X_1, ..., X_N)$ where $G(X)$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree N. Choosing a basis of the Chan-Paton space where the first half are even and the latter half are odd, it is given by (Q, ρ, R)

$$Q(p,x) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & f(p,x) \\ g(p,x) & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad Q(p,x)^2 = pG(x)\mathbf{1}_{2\ell} \tag{5.32}$$

$$\rho(g) = \begin{pmatrix} g^{q_1} & & 0 \\ & \ddots & \\ 0 & & g^{q_{2\ell}} \end{pmatrix}, \tag{5.33}$$

$$R(\lambda) = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda^{j_1} & & 0 \\ & \ddots & \\ 0 & & \lambda^{j_{2\ell}} \end{pmatrix}, \qquad R(\,\mathrm{e}^{\pi i}) = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{1}_\ell & 0 \\ 0 & -\mathbf{1}_\ell \end{pmatrix}, \tag{5.34}$$

such that

$$\rho(g)^{-1} Q(g^{-N}p, gx)\rho(g) = Q(p,x), \tag{5.35}$$

and

$$R(\lambda)Q(\lambda^2 p, x)R(\lambda)^{-1} = \lambda Q(p,x). \tag{5.36}$$

5.5 A First Look At The Boundary Condition

Let us take a first look at the boundary condition of the bulk fields. We postpone the discussion of the vector multiplet fields to Section 7, as that requires some understanding of the quantum theory. Here we focus on the condition on the matter chiral multiplet fields, treating the vector multiplet fields as backgrounds.

It is straightforward to check that the following set of boundary conditions are invariant under the $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetry:

$$\begin{aligned} &D_1\phi - \mathrm{Im}(\sigma)\phi = 0, \\ &\psi_+ = \psi_-, \\ &D_1(\psi_+ + \psi_-) - (\overline{\lambda}_+ + \overline{\lambda}_-)\phi - \mathrm{Im}(\sigma)(\psi_+ + \psi_-) = 0, \\ &F = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{5.37}$$

Here we considered charge 1 fields in a $U(1)$ gauge theory. The generalization is obvious. If there is no superpotential W and no boundary interaction Q, this is also compatible with the variational equation of the action: The $\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)|\phi|^2$ term in the boundary counter term (5.5) deforms the ordinary Neumann condition $D_1\phi = 0$ to $D_1\phi = \mathrm{Im}(\sigma)\phi$.

If there is a superpotential W or a boundary interaction Q, the variational equation changes and the boundary conditions will be modified. However, as long as we can treat the interactions W and Q as perturbation, we can still use the conditions (5.37) without modifications. In particular, when we discuss the effective theory on the Coulomb branch in Section 6, the charged matter multiplets are heavy and hence W and Q, which are generically of high powers in the matter fields, can be treated as perturbation. In the literature, perturbative treatment of boundary interaction is widely used. In studying the renormalization group flow of the spacetime electromagnetic potential, one can use either the "correct" (mixed Dirichlet-Neumann) boundary condition or the "incorrect" Neumann condition [63]. For a non-Abelian gauge group, the latter approach turns out to be more efficient and leads us quickly to the Yang-Mills equation at leading order in the α' expansion [64].

The treatment of the auxiliary field needs some care in this approach. The boundary condition $\overline{F} = 0$ from (5.37) may appear too strong in the presence of the superpotential W: It appears to require $W' = 0$ at the boundary since the bulk equation of motion reads $W' = -\overline{F}$. But that would be inconsistent with the free boundary condition for ϕ and would completely change our picture of boundary interaction based on matrix factorization. However, if we carefuly think about the meaning of the equation of motion and the boundary condition, we immediately find that there is no need to require $W' = 0$. To illustrate it, we consider the following toy model:

$$\int \mathrm{d}F_1 \cdots \mathrm{d}F_n \, \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\sum_{i,j=1}^{n} A_{ij}F_iF_j + \sum_{i=1}^{n} B_iF_i\right).$$

The equations of motion for F_i's are $F_i = \sum_{j=1}^{n}(A^{-1})_{ij}B_j$. If we impose the condition $F_1 = 0$, we simply loose the F_1 integral and obtain a different answer as a function of B_j's. But we never require B_j's to satisfy $\sum_{j=1}^{n}(A^{-1})_{1j}B_j = 0$. However, there is still some subtlety we may need to be aware of. It concerns the supersymmetry variation in the version when the auxiliary fields are eliminated. To show the essential point, we describe it in a LG model without gauge interaction. The auxiliary field $\overline{F}$ appears in the $\overline{\epsilon}$-variation of the fermion $\overline{\psi}_{\pm}$:

$$\delta\overline{\psi}_{\pm} = \pm\overline{\epsilon}\overline{F}.$$

In the bulk theory after the auxiliary fields are integrated, we simply set $\overline{F} = -W'$ in this variation. However, in the presence of a boundary and with the above boundary condition, we need to set

$$\delta\overline{\psi}_{\pm} = \begin{cases} \mp\overline{\epsilon}W' & \text{in the interior} \\ 0 & \text{at the boundary.} \end{cases}$$

Therefore the variation is in general discontinuous at the boundary. In particular, the variation of the bulk Lagrangian density will have a delta function supported at the boundary. In fact, this delta function is crucial in obtaining the Warner term

$$\delta S_{\text{bulk}} = -\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t \left(\frac{1}{2}\overline{\epsilon}\psi W'\right),$$

with the correct normalization. Without the discontinuity in $\delta\overline{\psi}_{\pm}$, that would be off by a factor of $\frac{1}{2}$. In the previous treatment where we did not specify the boundary condition and we used the variation $\delta\overline{\psi}_{\pm}$ without discontinuity, the correct Warner term results with additional contribution from the variation of the standard boundary term ($S^{\text{c.t.}}_{\text{matter}}$ in the gauge theory version). With the boundary condition, that term is absent.

5.6 The Ultra-Violet Limit: $e = 0$

In the strict limit of vanishing gauge coupling $e \to 0$, which corresponds to the ultra-violet limit, the linear sigma model becomes particularly simple. With the standard field redefinition, $V \to eV$, we see that the vector multiplet fields decouple from the rest of the system in the limit $e \to 0$. Alternatively, the infinite kinetic terms simply freeze the gauge multiplet fields, and we are left with the matter sector. The boundary condition (5.37) then becomes the standard Neumann condition

$$\begin{aligned} &\partial_1\phi = 0, \\ &\psi_+ = \psi_-, \\ &\partial_1(\psi_+ + \psi_-) = 0, \\ &F = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{5.38}$$

The D-term potential is turned off and the matter sector is completely independent of the Kähler moduli. The remnant of the gauge theory is that we respect the gauge symmetry and require that physical observables must be gauge invariant. For example, the boundary interaction Q must respect the gauge invariance condition, (5.14) or (5.22). In the following we study the chiral ring of D-branes in the matter sector in this limit.

We emphasize that the limit $e^2 \to 0$ is not smooth even in the chiral sector. In fact, we turned off the D-term potential and altered the theory at infinity in field space, so that even quantities like the Witten index may jump. Nevertheless, we study the chiral ring in this limit as it plays an important rôle, as we will see later, in describing the theory with finite gauge coupling.

We first consider the theory with vanishing superpotential. Let us take two D-branes $\mathfrak{B}_i = (\mathcal{V}_i, Q_i, \rho_i, R_i)$, $i = 1, 2$. To find the space of chiral ring elements in the $\mathfrak{B}_1$-$\mathfrak{B}_2$

sector, we use the zero mode approximation. Namely, the operators in this sector are antiholomorphic forms with values in $Hom(\mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_2)$ that are gauge invariant,

$$\mathcal{H}_{\rm zero}(\mathfrak{B}_1, \mathfrak{B}_2) = \left[\Omega^{0,\bullet}(\mathbf{C}^N, Hom(\mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_2))\right]^T \tag{5.39}$$

and the supercharge acts as the Dolbeault-like operator $i\mathbf{Q}^{\rm zero}\varphi = \overline{\partial}\varphi + Q_2\varphi - (-1)^{|\varphi|}\varphi Q_1$. Here, the gauge group action is determined by the action of T on $\mathbf{C}^N$ as well as on $Hom(\mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_2)$ via ρ_1 and ρ_2. Note that R_1 and R_2 together with the form-degree determines a $\mathbf{Z}$-grading on the space under which $\mathbf{Q}^{\rm zero}$ has degree 1. The space of chiral ring elements of R-degree p is the p-th cohomology group $\mathcal{H}^p(\mathfrak{B}_1, \mathfrak{B}_2) = H^p_{\mathbf{Q}^{\rm zero}}(\mathcal{H}^\bullet_{\rm zero}(\mathfrak{B}_1, \mathfrak{B}_2))$.

As before, using the property that any $\overline{\partial}$-closed form of positive degree is $\overline{\partial}$-exact on $\mathbf{C}^N$, we can use the holomorphic or polynomial truncation where the space (5.39) is replaced by the space of T-invariant holomorphic or polynomial functions with values in $Hom(\mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_2)$ and the supercharge action is simply $i\mathbf{Q}^{pol}\varphi = Q_2\varphi - (-1)^{|\varphi|}\varphi Q_1$. In this context, it is convenient to introduce the notion of graded rings and graded modules. The gauge group action introduces a grading by k-integers, or $\mathbf{Z}^k$-grading, in the polynomial ring

$$\mathcal{R} = \mathbf{C}[\phi_1, ..., \phi_N].$$

An element of $\mathcal{R}$ has degree $(n_1, ..., n_k)$ if it has charge $(n_1, ..., n_k)$ under the gauge group T. For example, the variable ϕ_i, which has gauge charge Q_i^a under the a-th $U(1)$ factor of $T \cong U(1)^k$, has degree $(Q_i^1, ..., Q_i^k)$. The degree is additive with respect to the product, and in this sense it is a graded ring. (More on mathematics will be discussed in Section 9.) For each representation $(\mathcal{V}, \rho)$ of the gauge group T, we introduce an $\mathcal{R}$-module

$$M = \mathcal{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{C}} \mathcal{V}.$$

It is a graded $\mathcal{R}$-module: an element of M has degree $(n_1, ..., n_k)$ if it has gauge charge $(n_1, ..., n_k)$. For example, if $v \in \mathcal{V}$ transforms as $\rho(g)v = g^q v = g_1^{q^1} \cdots g_k^{q^k} \cdot v$, then $1 \otimes v \in M$ has degree $q = (q^1, ..., q^k)$. A homomorphism of graded $\mathcal{R}$-modules $f : M_1 \to M_2$ is a homomorphism of $\mathcal{R}$-modules that preserves the $\mathbf{Z}^k$-grading information. Namely, it sends an element of M_1 of a certain degree to an element of M_2 of the same degree. For the M_i that come from representations $(\mathcal{V}_i, \rho_i)$ of T, this is equivalent to $f(b \otimes \rho(g)v_1) = (b \otimes \rho_2(g))f(1 \otimes v_1)$ for $b \in \mathcal{R}$ and $v_1 \in \mathcal{V}_1$. In this language, the space of T-invariant polynomial functions with values in $Hom(\mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_2)$ is linearly isomorphic to the space of homomorphisms of graded $\mathcal{R}$-modules,

$$\left[\Gamma_{pol}(\mathbf{C}^N, Hom(\mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_2))\right]^T \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\text{gr-}\mathcal{R}}(M_1, M_2). \tag{5.40}$$

Since $\mathcal{V}_i$ are $\mathbf{Z}$-graded by the R-symmetry R_i commuting with T, $\mathcal{V}_i = \oplus_j \mathcal{V}_i^j$, the $\mathcal{R}$-modules M_i are also $\mathbf{Z}$-graded, $M_i = \oplus_j M_i^j$, where $M_i^j = \mathcal{R} \otimes \mathcal{V}_i^j$. Thus the above space is also $\mathbf{Z}$-graded $\mathrm{Hom}^p_{\text{gr-}\mathcal{R}}(M_1, M_2) = \oplus_j \mathrm{Hom}_{\text{gr-}\mathcal{R}}(M_1^j, M_2^{j+p})$. This of course corresponds to the R-grading of $\mathcal{H}_{\text{zero}}(\mathfrak{B}_1, \mathfrak{B}_2)$ restricted to the polynomial sector. In particular, the space of chiral ring elements with R-degree p is given by the p-th cohomology group

$$\mathcal{H}^p(\mathfrak{B}_1, \mathfrak{B}_2) = H^p_{\mathbf{Q}^{pol}}(\mathrm{Hom}^\bullet_{\text{gr-}\mathcal{R}}(M_1, M_2)).$$

For a brane $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$ or $(\mathcal{W}, Q, R)$, the complex of Wilson line branes (5.20) can alternatively be represented as the complex of graded $\mathcal{R}$-modules

$$\mathcal{C}: \quad \cdots \xrightarrow{d^{j-1}} M^{j-1} \xrightarrow{d^j} M^j \xrightarrow{d^{j+1}} M^{j+1} \xrightarrow{d^{j+2}} \cdots \quad . \tag{5.41}$$

Note that the information of the gauge charge (or Wilson line) is encoded in the $\mathbf{Z}^k$-grading information of each M^j. In this language, the space of chiral ring elements is given by the space of chain maps of the complexes $\mathcal{C}_1$ and $\mathcal{C}_2$ of graded $\mathcal{R}$-modules up to homotopy

$$\mathcal{H}^p(\mathfrak{B}_1, \mathfrak{B}_2) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ho}\text{-gr-}\mathcal{R}}(\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2[p]). \tag{5.42}$$

Here $[p]$ is the shift in the R-grading which involves the sign flip of Q_2 if p is odd. In short, the D-brane category in the chiral sector for the linear sigma model at $e^2 = 0$ is the homotopy category of the category of complexes of graded $\mathcal{R}$-modules. We will revisit the latter in Section 9.

Let us consider the theory with non-zero superpotential. The data of a D-brane $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$ can be encoded in a two-periodic sequence of maps of graded $\mathcal{R}$-modules

$$\mathcal{C}: \qquad \cdots \xrightarrow{Q} M^{\mathrm{ev}} \xrightarrow{Q} M^{\mathrm{od}} \xrightarrow{Q} M^{\mathrm{ev}} \xrightarrow{Q} M^{\mathrm{od}} \xrightarrow{Q} \cdots \tag{5.43}$$

The $\mathcal{R}$-module $M^{\mathrm{ev/od}} := \mathcal{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{C}} \mathcal{V}^{\mathrm{ev/od}}$ can also be regarded as a module over the graded ring $\mathcal{S} = \mathcal{R}/(W)$ in which any multiple of the superpotential W is equal to zero. Then, it is a *complex* of graded $\mathcal{S}$-modules. Let us take two such complexes $\mathcal{C}_i$ corresponding to two branes $(\mathcal{V}_i, Q_i, \rho_i)$, $i = 1, 2$. The space of chiral ring elements for this sector is the space of cochain maps of the complexes of graded $\mathcal{S}$-modules up to homotopies

$$\mathcal{H}^{\mathrm{ev}}(\mathfrak{B}_1, \mathfrak{B}_2) = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ho}\text{-gr-}\mathcal{S}}(\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2),$$
$$\mathcal{H}^{\mathrm{od}}(\mathfrak{B}_1, \mathfrak{B}_2) = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ho}\text{-gr-}\mathcal{S}}(\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2[1]),$$

where $\mathcal{C}_2[1]$ is the shift of $\mathcal{C}_2$ by one (with the sign flip of Q_2). When the two branes are R-graded, these spaces are also $\mathbf{Z}$-graded

$$\mathcal{H}^{\mathrm{ev}}(\mathfrak{B}_1, \mathfrak{B}_2) = \oplus_{p:\mathrm{even}} \mathcal{H}^p(\mathfrak{B}_1, \mathfrak{B}_2), \qquad \mathcal{H}^{\mathrm{od}}(\mathfrak{B}_1, \mathfrak{B}_2) = \oplus_{p:\mathrm{odd}} \mathcal{H}^p(\mathfrak{B}_1, \mathfrak{B}_2).$$

The product structure is given by the composition of chain maps.

6 The Vacuum Energy/Charge On The Interval

In this section, we study properties of the quantum vacuum of certain massive field theories formulated on an interval and on the half-space. The focus is the energy and charge densities of the vacuum state. For the most part, in Sections 6.1 through 6.9, we study theories that appear in the Coulomb branch with large values of σ in linear sigma models. In Section 6.10, we consider a different type of theories — theories at $\sigma = 0$ with superpotential mass terms. This section has an independent flavor and can be read independently of the rest of the paper. The reader can skip this section in the first reading as the result will be quoted when it is used.

Notation and convention: In this section alone, we shall use x for the spatial coordiate of the worldsheet (instead of s that is used in other sections). Also, we take the convention that the Lagrangian enters into the path-integral weight as $\exp\left(i\int L\mathrm{d}t\right)$, unlike in other sections where it enters as $\exp\left(\frac{i}{2\pi}\int L\mathrm{d}t\right)$.

6.1 The System At Large σ

In Section 7, we will study the boundary conditions on the Coulomb branch, and for that we need to know the effective potential for σ in the presence of a boundary. For this purpose, we compute the energy and charge of the ground state in the matter sector defined on the interval, $0 \le x \le L$, for a fixed large value of σ. The bulk Lagrangian for the case of a single charge 1 field is

$$\begin{aligned} L_{\text{bulk}} \;=\; \int_0^L \Big\{ & |D_0\phi|^2 - |D_1\phi|^2 + i\overline{\psi}_-\big(\overleftrightarrow{D}_0 + \overleftrightarrow{D}_1\big)\psi_- + i\overline{\psi}_+\big(\overleftrightarrow{D}_0 - \overleftrightarrow{D}_1\big)\psi_+ \\ & -|\sigma|^2|\phi|^2 + D|\phi|^2 - \overline{\psi}_-\sigma\psi_+ - \overline{\psi}_+\overline{\sigma}\psi_- \Big\}\mathrm{d}x. \end{aligned} \tag{6.1}$$

We are interested in the boundary condition preserving an $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetry. We consider both Ramond and Neveu-Schwarz (NS) sectors. In Ramond sector the two boundaries preserve the same supercharge (say $\overline{Q}_+ + \overline{Q}_-$ both at $x = 0$ and $x = L$), while in NS sector the preserved supercharges are opposite (say $\overline{Q}_+ + \overline{Q}_-$ at $x = L$ and $\overline{Q}_+ - \overline{Q}_-$ at $x = 0$). The boundary interaction that preserves the supersymmetry $\overline{Q}_+ + \overline{Q}_-$ at the right boundary $x = L$ is

$$L^+_{\text{right bdry}} = \left[\,\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)|\phi|^2 + \frac{i}{2}\overline{\psi}_-\psi_+ - \frac{i}{2}\overline{\psi}_+\psi_-\,\right]_{x=L} \tag{6.2}$$

with boundary condition

$$D_1\phi = \mathrm{Im}(\sigma)\phi, \quad \psi_+ = \psi_-, \quad D_1(\psi_- + \psi_+) = \mathrm{Im}(\sigma)(\psi_- + \psi_+). \tag{6.3}$$

At the left boundary, $x = 0$, the interaction preserving $\overline{Q}_+ \pm \overline{Q}_-$ is

$$L^{\mp}_{\text{left bdry}} = \mp \left[\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)|\phi|^2 + \frac{i}{2}\overline{\psi}_-\psi_+ - \frac{i}{2}\overline{\psi}_+\psi_- \right]_{x=0} \tag{6.4}$$

with boundary condition

$$D_1\phi = \pm\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)\phi, \quad \psi_+ = \pm\psi_-, \quad D_1(\psi_- \pm \psi_+) = \pm\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)(\psi_- \pm \psi_+). \tag{6.5}$$

We first turn off the gauge field and auxiliary field, $v_\mu = D = 0$, and assume that σ is large and constant. We often use the notaion

$$M = |\sigma|, \quad S = \mathrm{Im}(\sigma), \quad \sqrt{M^2 - S^2} = |\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|.$$

6.2 Mode Expansions

We denote $b = (\psi_+ + \psi_-)/\sqrt{2}$ and $c = (\psi_- - \psi_+)/\sqrt{2}$. The boundary condition on the fields ϕ, b, c in Ramond and NS sectors are

$$(\underline{\mathrm{R}}): \quad \left.\begin{array}{l} \partial_1\phi = S\phi, \\ \partial_1 b = Sb, \\ c = 0 \end{array}\right\} \quad \text{both at } x = 0, L, \tag{6.6}$$

$$(\underline{\mathrm{NS}}): \quad \left.\begin{array}{l} \partial_1\phi = -S\phi \\ b = 0, \\ \partial_1 c = -Sc, \end{array}\right\} \text{ at } x = 0, \qquad \left.\begin{array}{l} \partial_1\phi = S\phi \\ \partial_1 b = Sb, \\ c = 0 \end{array}\right\} \text{ at } x = L, \tag{6.7}$$

If we use these conditions, the total Lagrangian can be written as

$$L_{\text{bulk}} + L_{\text{bdry}} = \int_0^L \left[|\dot{\phi}|^2 - \overline{\phi}\Big(-\partial_1^2 + |\sigma|^2\Big)\phi + i\Psi^\dagger\dot{\Psi} - \Psi^\dagger\mathcal{D}\Psi \right] \mathrm{d}x^1,$$

where

$$\Psi := \begin{pmatrix} b \\ c \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathcal{D} := \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) & -i\partial_1 - i\mathrm{Im}(\sigma) \\ -i\partial_1 + i\mathrm{Im}(\sigma) & -\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) \end{pmatrix}$$

In both Ramond and NS sectors, the kinetic operators, $-\partial_1^2$ for ϕ and $\mathcal{D}$ for Ψ, are hermitian with respect to the standard inner product. Thus, we can expand the fields by eigenvectors of these operators.

6.2.1 Ramond Sector

We first consider the Ramond sector (6.6). For the scalar field ϕ, the boundary conditions on the plane wave $f(x) = a\sin(kx) + b\cos(kx)$ read

$$ka = Sb, \qquad ka\cos(kL) - kb\sin(kL) = Sa\sin(kL) + Sb\cos(kL).$$

Using the first equation, the second equation simplifies to $(k^2 + S^2)\sin(kL) = 0$ and we find $k = \pi n/L$, $n = 1, 2, 3, ...$ Thus, the plane waves obeying the boundary condition are

$$f_n(x) = \frac{k_n\cos(k_n x) + S\sin(k_n x)}{\sqrt{k_n^2 + S^2}}, \qquad k_n = \frac{\pi n}{L}. \tag{6.8}$$

There is also a single non-oscillating mode:

$$f_0(x) = \sqrt{\frac{SL}{\mathrm{e}^{2SL} - 1}}\,\mathrm{e}^{Sx}. \tag{6.9}$$

For $S \gg 1/L$ (*resp.* $S \ll -1/L$), this mode is localized near the right (*resp.* left) boundary. It is a constant mode for $S = 0$.

The functions $f_n(x)$, $n = 0, 1, 2, ...$ are normalized as

$$\int_0^L f_n(x) f_m(x)\mathrm{d}x = \frac{L}{2}\delta_{n,m}.$$

Since $f_n(x)$ are eigenfunctions for the kinetic operator $-\partial_1^2$, we can expand the field ϕ as

$$\phi(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\sqrt{\frac{2}{L}}\phi_n f_n(x),$$

so that the Lagrangian is written as

$$L_{\text{boson}} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\left(|\dot{\phi}_n|^2 - (M^2 + k_n^2)|\phi_n|^2\right), \tag{6.10}$$

where it is understood that $k_0^2 = -S^2$.

Let us next study the mode expansion of fermions. The boundary condition for b is exactly the same as for the scalar ϕ and thus it can be expanded by $f_n(x)$, $n = 0, 1, 2, ...$ The condition of c is easier to solve:

$$g_n(x) = \sin(k_n x), \qquad k_n = \frac{\pi n}{L} \quad (n = 1, 2, 3...). \tag{6.11}$$

On the subspace $b \propto f_n(x)$ and $c \propto g_n(x)$, for $n = 1, 2, 3, ...$, the kinetic operator is written as

$$\mathcal{D} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) & -i\sqrt{k_n^2 + S^2} \\ i\sqrt{k_n^2 + S^2} & -\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) \end{pmatrix},$$

and it is diagonalized by

$$\Psi_{n,\pm}(x) = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}\pm\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)}{L\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}} f_n(x) \\ \pm i\sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}\mp\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)}{L\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}} g_n(x) \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathcal{D} = \pm\sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}. \tag{6.12}$$

The $n = 0$ mode is non-oscillating,

$$\Psi_0(x) = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}} f_0(x) \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathcal{D} = \mathrm{Re}(\sigma). \tag{6.13}$$

If we expand the field Ψ as

$$\Psi(x) = b_0 \Psi_0(x) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(b_{n,+} \Psi_{n,+}(x) + b_{n,-}^\dagger \Psi_{n,-}(x) \right)$$

the Lagrangian is expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} L_{\mathrm{fermion}} &= i b_0^\dagger \dot{b}_0 - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) b_0^\dagger b_0 \\ &+ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(i b_{n,+}^\dagger \dot{b}_{n,+} + i b_{n,-}^\dagger \dot{b}_{n,-} - \sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}\, b_{n,+}^\dagger b_{n,+} + \sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}\, b_{n,-} b_{n,-}^\dagger \right). \end{aligned} \tag{6.14}$$

6.2.2 Neveu-Schwarz Sector

Let us now consider the NS sector (6.7). For the plane-wave $h(x) = a\sin(kx) + b\cos(kx)$, the boundary condition for ϕ reads

$$ka = -Sb, \qquad ka\cos(kL) - kb\sin(kL) = Sa\sin(kL) + Sb\cos(kL).$$

We find that the allowed wavenumbers k are

$$\cot(kL) = \frac{S}{2k} - \frac{k}{2S}. \tag{6.15}$$

There are solutions k_n labelled by an integer n such that

$$k_n \to \frac{\pi n}{L} \qquad \text{as } n \to \infty,$$

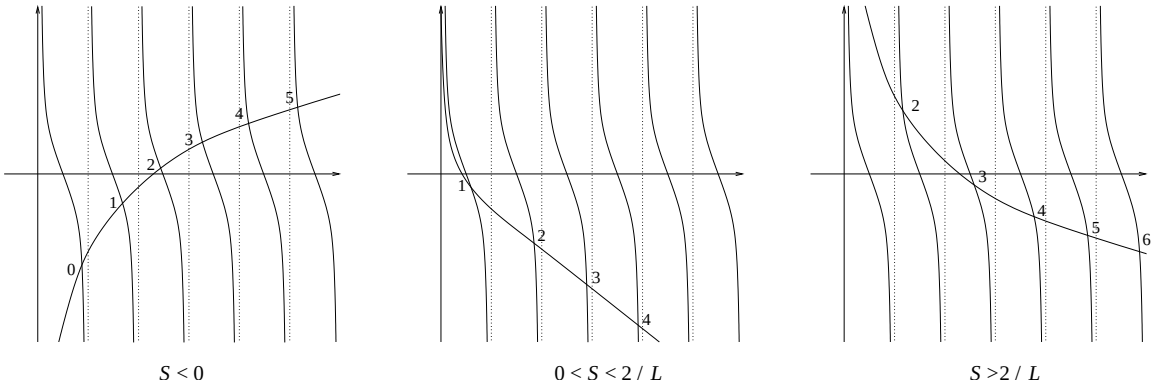


Figure 8: Flow of modes as S is varied — the scalar field (NS-sector).

but the precise value of k_n deviates from $\pi n/L$ for small n. Also, the starting number n depends on the value of S (See Fig. 8):

$$\begin{aligned} S < 0 \qquad & n = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, \ldots \\ 0 \le S < 2/L \qquad & n = \quad 1, 2, 3, 4, \ldots \\ S \ge 2/L \qquad & n = \qquad 2, 3, 4, \ldots \end{aligned}$$

For each such k_n we have the plane wave

$$h_n(x) = \frac{k_n \cos(k_n x) - S \sin(k_n x)}{\sqrt{k_n^2 + S^2}} \left(1 - \tfrac{2S}{L(k_n^2+S^2)}\right)^{-1/2}. \tag{6.16}$$

There may also be a non-oscillating mode spanned by exponential functions $h(x) = a\,\mathrm{e}^{\kappa x} + b\,\mathrm{e}^{-\kappa x}$. The condition reads

$$\kappa(a-b) = -S(a+b), \quad \kappa(\,\mathrm{e}^{\kappa L}a - \,\mathrm{e}^{-\kappa L}b) = S(\,\mathrm{e}^{\kappa L}a + \,\mathrm{e}^{-\kappa L}b),$$

from which we find that the allowed value of κ is

$$\coth(\kappa L) = \frac{S}{2\kappa} + \frac{\kappa}{2S}. \tag{6.17}$$

See Fig. 9 for the pattern of solutions to this equation. For $S < 0$, there is no solution other than $\kappa = 0$ for which the function $h(x)$ is zero. At $S = 0$, there is one solution $\kappa = \kappa_0 = 0$ for which $h(x)$ is a constant mode. For $0 < S < 2/L$, the solution is at $\kappa = \kappa_0 > S$. For $S \ge 2/L$, there are two solutions, one at $\kappa = \kappa_0 > S$ and another at $\kappa = \kappa_1 < S$. These two values of κ converge to S rapidly as SL grows;

$$\kappa_{0,1} \sim S \tanh^{\mp 1}(SL/2), \qquad SL \gg 1.$$

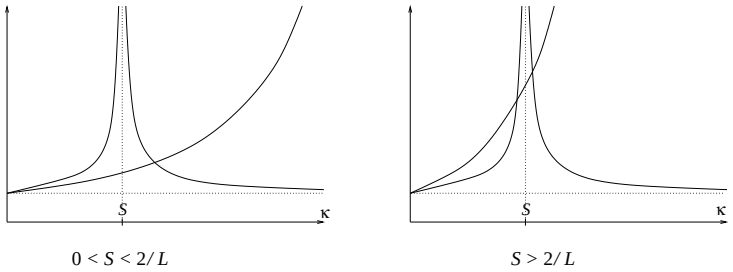


Figure 9: Solving (6.17), i.e., $\mathrm{e}^{2\kappa L} = \left(\frac{\kappa+S}{\kappa-S}\right)^2$.

These additional modes can be written as

$$h_0(x) = \sqrt{\frac{\kappa_0 L}{2(1-\mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa_0 L}+2\kappa_0 L\,\mathrm{e}^{-\kappa_0 L})}}\left(\mathrm{e}^{\kappa_0(x-L)}+\mathrm{e}^{-\kappa_0 x}\right) \qquad S \geq 0, \tag{6.18}$$

$$h_1(x) = \sqrt{\frac{\kappa_1 L}{2(1-\mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa_1 L}-2\kappa_1 L\,\mathrm{e}^{-\kappa_1 L})}}\left(-\mathrm{e}^{\kappa_1(x-L)}+\mathrm{e}^{-\kappa_1 x}\right) \quad S \geq 2/L. \tag{6.19}$$

Note that $h_0(x) = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2}}$ at $S = 0$ and $h_1(x) = \sqrt{\frac{3}{2}}\frac{L-2x}{L}$ at $S = 2/L$. For $S \gg 1/L$, these modes are localized near the two boundaries.

The modes are labeled by $n = 0, 1, 2, ...$ at any value of S — for $S < 0$ they are all oscillating modes while for $S > 2/L$ the first two are exponential modes. These functions are normalized as

$$\int_0^L h_n(x)h_m(x) = \delta_{n,m}\frac{L}{2}, \qquad n, m = 0, 1, 2, 3, ...$$

If we expand the field as

$$\phi(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\sqrt{\frac{2}{L}}\phi_n h_n(x),$$

the Lagrangian reads as

$$L_{\text{boson}} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\left(|\dot{\phi}_n|^2 - (M^2+k_n^2)|\phi_n|^2\right), \tag{6.20}$$

where it is understood that $k_0^2 = -\kappa_0^2$ and/or $k_1^2 = -\kappa_1^2$ whenever it applies.

The boundary conditions of the fermions b, c are satisfied by $\sin(kx)$ and $\sin(k(x-L))$ respectively, provided k obeys the equation

$$\tan(kL) = \frac{k}{S}. \tag{6.21}$$

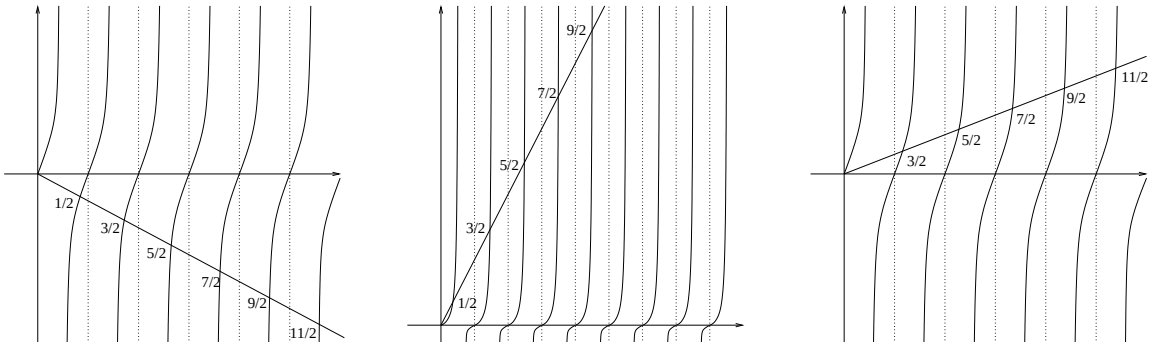


Figure 10: Flow of modes as S is varied — the Dirac fermion (NS sector): the scale for the case $0 < S < 1/L$ is different.

There are solutions k_r labelled by a half integer r such that

$$k_r \to \frac{\pi r}{L} \qquad \text{as } r \to \infty.$$

The starting number r depends on the value of S (See Fig. 10):

$$\begin{aligned} S < 1/L \qquad & r = \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}, \frac{5}{2}, \frac{7}{2}, \dots, \\ S \geq 1/L \qquad & r = \quad \frac{3}{2}, \frac{5}{2}, \frac{7}{2}, \dots, \end{aligned}$$

For each such k_r, we have the plane-waves

$$\begin{aligned} g_r(x) &= \sin(k_r x) \left(1 - \tfrac{S}{L(k_r^2+S^2)}\right)^{-1/2}, \\ h_r(x) &= g_r(L-x) = \frac{k_r \cos(k_r x) - S \sin(k_r x)}{\sqrt{k_r^2 + S^2}} \left(1 - \tfrac{S}{L(k_r^2+S^2)}\right)^{-1/2}, \end{aligned}$$

which are normalised as

$$\int_0^L g_r(x) g_s(x) \mathrm{d}x = \int_0^L h_r(x) h_s(x) \mathrm{d}x = \delta_{r,s} \frac{L}{2}.$$

On this subspace of wavenumber k_r, the kinetic operator $\mathcal{D}$ is expressed as

$$\mathcal{D} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) & i\sqrt{k_r^2 + S^2} \\ -i\sqrt{k_r^2 + S^2} & -\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) \end{pmatrix},$$

and it is diagonalized by

$$\Psi_{r,\pm}(x) = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_r^2} \pm \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)}{L\sqrt{M^2+k_r^2}}} g_r(x) \\ \mp i \sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_r^2} \mp \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)}{L\sqrt{M^2+k_r^2}}} h_r(x) \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathcal{D} = \pm\sqrt{M^2 + k_r^2}. \tag{6.22}$$

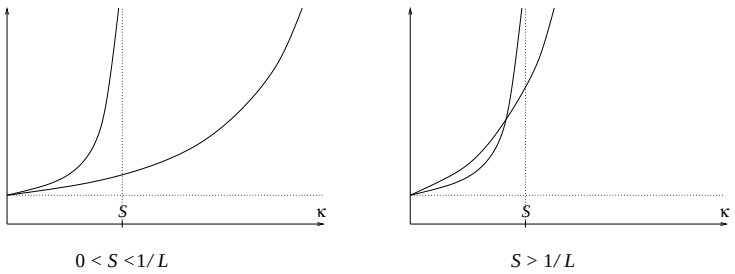


Figure 11: Solving (6.23), i.e., $\mathrm{e}^{2\kappa L} = \frac{S+\kappa}{S-\kappa}$.

There may also be eigenmodes spanned by exponential functions $\mathrm{e}^{\pm\kappa x}$ — there is indeed such a mode for κ solving

$$\tanh(\kappa L) = \frac{S}{\kappa}. \tag{6.23}$$

There is no non-zero solution if $S < 1/L$, and there is a single non-zero solution when $S > 1/L$ (see Fig. 11). It approaches S rapidly as SL grows,

$$\kappa \sim S\tanh(SL), \qquad SL \gg 1.$$

Thus, this exponential mode can be regarded as the replacement of the $r = \frac{1}{2}$ oscillating mode that is missing for $S \geq 1/L$. The modes are obtained by simply replacing $k_{\frac{1}{2}}$ by $i\kappa$ in $\Psi_{\frac{1}{2},\pm}(x)$, explicitly,

$$\begin{aligned}\Psi_{\frac{1}{2},\pm}(x) &= \frac{2\sqrt{\kappa}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\kappa L}}{\sqrt{1-\mathrm{e}^{-4\kappa L}-4\kappa L\,\mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa L}}}\begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{M^2-\kappa^2}\pm\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)}{\sqrt{M^2-\kappa^2}}}\sinh(\kappa x) \\ \pm i\sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{M^2-\kappa^2}\mp\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)}{\sqrt{M^2-\kappa^2}}}\sinh(\kappa(x-L)) \end{pmatrix}, \\ \mathcal{D} &= \pm\sqrt{M^2-\kappa^2}. \end{aligned} \tag{6.24}$$

In the limit $S \searrow 1/L$, κ approaches zero but $\Psi_{\frac{1}{2},\pm}$ approaches a non-zero linear function. Thus, for any value of S the modes are parametrized by positive half-integers $r = \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}, \ldots..$ If we expand the field Ψ as

$$\Psi(x) = \sum_{r=\frac{1}{2},\frac{3}{2},\ldots}\left(b_{r,+}\Psi_{r,+}(x) + b^\dagger_{r,-}\Psi_{r,-}(x)\right),$$

the Lagrangian is expressed as

$$L_{\text{fermion}} = \sum_{r=\frac{1}{2},\frac{3}{2},\ldots}\left(\, ib^\dagger_{r,+}\dot{b}_{r,+} + ib^\dagger_{r,-}\dot{b}_{r,-} - \sqrt{M^2+k_r^2}\,b^\dagger_{r,+}b_{r,+} + \sqrt{M^2+k_r^2}\,b_{r,-}b^\dagger_{r,-}\,\right), \tag{6.25}$$

where it is understood that $k^2_{\frac{1}{2}} = -\kappa^2$ if $S \geq 1/L$.

6.3 The Ground State

Let us next quantize the system. Looking at the Lagrangian, (6.10) and (6.14) in the Ramond sector, (6.20) and (6.25) in the NS sector, it is clear what to do.

The bosonic system is simply the sum of harmonic oscillators. For each mode n we introduce creation and annihilation operators

$$[a_n^i, (a_m^j)^\dagger] = \delta^{i,j}\delta_{n,m}, \qquad [a_n^i, a_m^j] = [(a_n^i)^\dagger, (a_m^j)^\dagger] = 0, \tag{6.26}$$

where we need two sets, $i, j = 1, 2$, since we have *complex* (two real) oscillators. The variables $\phi_n = (\phi_n^1 + i\phi_n^2)/\sqrt{2}$ and their conjugate momenta can be written as

$$\phi_n^i = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}}}(a_n^i + (a_n^i)^\dagger), \quad \dot{\phi}_n^i = \sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}}{2}}(-ia_n^i + i(a_n^i)^\dagger),$$

or equivalently, for $\phi = (\phi^1 + i\phi^2)/\sqrt{2}$,

$$\phi^i(x) = \sum_n \sqrt{\frac{1}{L\sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}}}(a_n^i + (a_n^i)^\dagger)F_n(x),$$

$$\dot{\phi}^i(x) = \sum_n \sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}}{L}}(-ia_n^i + i(a_n^i)^\dagger)F_n(x),$$

where $F_n(x) = f_n(x)$ (*resp.* $h_n(x)$) in the Ramond sector (*resp.* NS sector). The Hamiltonian of the system is the standard one

$$H_{\text{boson}} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\sum_{i=1,2}\sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}\left((a_n^i)^\dagger a_n^i + \frac{1}{2}\right). \tag{6.27}$$

For the fermion system, it is simply to require the anticommutation relations to the mode coefficients

$$\{b_{n,\alpha}, b_{m,\beta}^\dagger\} = \delta_{n,m}\delta_{\alpha,\beta}, \qquad \{b_{n,\alpha}, b_{m,\beta}\} = \{b_{n,\alpha}^\dagger, b_{m,\beta}^\dagger\} = 0, \tag{6.28}$$

where the indices α, β are for $\pm$. In the Ramond sector, we also have the non-oscillating modes, b_0 and $b_0^\dagger$, which obey

$$\{b_0, b_0^\dagger\} = 1, \quad b_0^2 = (b_0^\dagger)^2 = 0, \tag{6.29}$$

and anticommute with all others, $b_{n,\alpha}$ and $b_{n,\alpha}^\dagger$. The Hamiltonian is given by

$$H_{\text{fermion}} = \sum_{n,\alpha}\sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}\left(b_{n,\alpha}^\dagger b_{n,\alpha} - \frac{1}{2}\right), \tag{6.30}$$

with the addition of

$$H_{\text{fermion }0} = \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)\left(b_0^\dagger b_0 - \frac{1}{2}\right), \tag{6.31}$$

in the Ramond sector. Here, we have chosen the standard operator ordering $b^\dagger b \to \frac{1}{2}[b^\dagger, b] = b^\dagger b - \frac{1}{2}$.

The ground state of the system is the state $|0\rangle$ annihilated by all annihilation operators

$$a_n^i|0\rangle = b_{n,\alpha}|0\rangle = 0. \tag{6.32}$$

In the Ramond sector, we need an additional condition — if $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) > 0$, the ground state must be annihilated by b_0 while it must be annihilated by $b_0^\dagger$ if $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) < 0$:

$$\begin{aligned} b_0|0\rangle &= 0, \quad \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) > 0, \\ b_0^\dagger|0\rangle &= 0, \quad \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) < 0. \end{aligned} \tag{6.33}$$

The energy gap to the first excited state is $\sqrt{M^2 + k_0^2}$. In the Ramond sector k_0^2 is understood as $-S^2$ and thus the gap is $\sqrt{M^2 - S^2} = |\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|$. For $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) = 0$, the gap vanishes. In this case, the $n = 0$ exponential modes for the scalars have vanishing potential, see (6.10), and the ground state wavefunction is not normalizable in the ϕ_0 directions. In addition, there is a two-fold degeneracy from the exponential mode from the fermion. In the NS sector, k_0^2 is non-negative for $S \leq 0$ but is negative, $k_0^2 = -\kappa_0^2$, for $S > 0$. As $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)$ approaches zero while S is positive, $M^2 + k_0^2 = M^2 - \kappa_0^2$ turns negative (this occurs when $|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)| \ll 2S\,\mathrm{e}^{-SL/2}$ provided $SL \gg 1$). In such a case, the potential for the $n = 0$ exponential mode is unbounded below, see (6.20), and there is no ground state in the system. The appearance of the zero mode or unstable mode at special values of σ is extremely important and plays a crucial rôle later in this paper. For now, we focus on the cases where there is a unique normalizable ground state and study its energy and charge.

6.4 The Energy

Let us compute the energy and its density of the ground state.

6.4.1 Total Energy

R sector

The computation in the Ramond sector is extremely simple: For each non-zero mode, the positive energy from the boson and the negative energy from the fermion cancel out;

$$\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{2}\right)+\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}\left(-\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}\right)=0.$$

The ground state energy from the bosonic zero mode is $\sqrt{M^2+k_0^2}\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{2}\right)=\sqrt{M^2-S^2}=|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|$. The ground state energy from the fermionic zero mode is $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)$ if $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)>0$ and $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$ if $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)<0$ (see (6.33)), that is, $-\frac{1}{2}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|$ for any case. They fail to cancel against each other, $|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|-\frac{1}{2}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|=\frac{1}{2}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|$. Thus, the gound state energy in the Ramond sector is

$$E_{\mathrm{vac}}=\frac{1}{2}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)| \tag{6.34}$$

NS Sector

The energy of the ground state in the NS sector is less straightforward to compute, but it is possible to find the answer in the limit $L\to\infty$.

Let us first start with the $S=0$ case where the bosons have integer modes $k_n=\frac{\pi n}{L}$, $n=0,1,2,...$ and fermions have half-integer modes $k_r=\frac{\pi r}{L}$, $r=\frac{1}{2},\frac{3}{2},\frac{5}{2},....$ The ground state energy is

$$E_{\mathrm{vac}}=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}-\sum_{r=\frac{1}{2},\frac{3}{2},...}\sqrt{M^2+k_r^2} \tag{6.35}$$

This is infinity minus infinity and we need an appropriate regularization to define the sum. We do this using the fact that the sum over

$$\begin{aligned} I_n &:= \sqrt{M^2+\left(\frac{\pi n}{L}\right)^2}-\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{M^2+\left(\frac{\pi\left(n-\frac{1}{2}\right)}{L}\right)^2}-\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{M^2+\left(\frac{\pi\left(n+\frac{1}{2}\right)}{L}\right)^2} \\ &= -\frac{M^2}{2}\left(\frac{\pi}{2L}\right)^2\left(M^2+\left(\frac{\pi n}{L}\right)^2\right)^{-\frac{3}{2}}+\frac{1}{L^3}O\left(\frac{1}{\left(\frac{\pi n}{L}\right)^2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

is finite. Namely, we evaluate the sum (6.35) as

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\rm vac} &= \frac{1}{2}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\left(\sqrt{M^2+\left(\frac{\pi n}{L}\right)^2}-\sqrt{M^2+\left(\frac{\pi\left(n+\frac{1}{2}\right)}{L}\right)^2}\right) \\ &\quad +\frac{1}{2}\left\{M+\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left(\sqrt{M^2+\left(\frac{\pi n}{L}\right)^2}-\sqrt{M^2+\left(\frac{\pi\left(n-\frac{1}{2}\right)}{L}\right)^2}\right)\right\} \\ &= \frac{M}{2}+\frac{1}{2}\left(M-\sqrt{M^2+\left(\frac{\pi}{2L}\right)^2}\right)+\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}I_n \\ &= \frac{M}{2}+O\left(\frac{1}{ML^2}\right)+O\left(\frac{1}{L}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Thus, in the limit $L\to\infty$ we have

$$\lim_{L\to\infty}E_{\rm vac}=\frac{M}{2}=\frac{1}{2}|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|. \tag{6.36}$$

The validity of this regularization will be examined momentarily.

Let us move on to the case with non-zero S. We are interested in the limit of large L for a fixed S, so that we may assume $|S|\gg 1/L$. We divide the total energy into two parts, the part $E'_{\rm vac}$ coming from the oscillating or constant modes and the part coming from the exponential modes. The latter part is present for $S>0$ but is absent for $S\le 0$. To find $E'_{\rm vac}$, we first compute the derivative $\frac{\partial}{\partial S}E'_{\rm vac}$ and then integrate,

$$\frac{\partial E'_{\rm vac}}{\partial S}=\sum_n{}'\frac{k_n}{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}\frac{\partial k_n}{\partial S}-\sum_r{}'\frac{k_r}{\sqrt{M^2+k_r^2}}\frac{\partial k_r}{\partial S}.$$

The sum is over $n=0,1,2,...$, $r=\frac{1}{2},\frac{3}{2},...$ if $S\le 0$ while it omits $n=0,1$ and $r=\frac{1}{2}$ if $S\gg 1/L$. The equations determining k_n and k_r are in (6.15) and (6.21) respectively, from which it follows

$$\frac{\partial k_n}{\partial S}=-\frac{1}{L}\frac{2k_n}{k_n^2+S^2}(1+\cdots),\qquad \frac{\partial k_r}{\partial S}=-\frac{1}{L}\frac{k_r}{k_r^2+S^2}(1+\cdots),$$

where $+\cdots$ are terms that vanish as $L\to\infty$ (in what follows such terms will not be mentioned). Thus we find

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial E'_{\rm vac}}{\partial S} &= -2\sum_n{}'\frac{1}{L}\frac{k_n^2}{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}(k_n^2+S^2)}+\sum_r{}'\frac{1}{L}\frac{k_r^2}{\sqrt{M^2+k_r^2}(k_r^2+S^2)} \\ &\overset{L\to\infty}{\longrightarrow} -\int_0^{\infty}\frac{{\rm d}k}{\pi}\frac{k^2}{\sqrt{M^2+k^2}(k^2+S^2)} \end{aligned}$$

This is logarithmically divergent and we introduce a cut-off $\Lambda \gg M$:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial E'_{\rm vac}}{\partial S} &= -\int_0^\Lambda \frac{{\rm d}k}{\pi}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{M^2+k^2}} - \frac{S^2}{\sqrt{M^2+k^2}(k^2+S^2)}\right)\\ &= -\frac{1}{\pi}\log\left(\frac{2\Lambda}{M}\right) + \int_0^\Lambda \frac{{\rm d}k}{\pi}\frac{S^2}{\sqrt{M^2+k^2}(k^2+S^2)}\\ &= -\frac{1}{\pi}\log\left(\frac{2\Lambda}{M}\right) + \frac{1}{\pi}\tan\theta\left(\pm\frac{\pi}{2}-\theta\right), \qquad S \gtrless 0.\end{aligned}$$

where $S = M\sin\theta$, with $0 < \theta < \pi$ or $-\pi < \theta < 0$. Integrating, we find for $\pm S > 0$

$$\begin{aligned}&E'_{\rm vac}(S) - E'_{\rm vac}(0_\pm)\\ &= -\frac{S}{\pi}\left[\log\left(\frac{2\Lambda}{M}\right)+1\right] \mp \frac{\sqrt{M^2-S^2}}{2} \pm \frac{M}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{M^2-S^2}}{\pi}\arctan\left(\frac{S}{\sqrt{M^2-S^2}}\right).\end{aligned}$$

Here, arctangent is assumed to take values between $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\frac{\pi}{2}$. Let us now determine $E'_{\rm vac}(0_\pm)$. We recall that the spectrum of oscillating modes is continuous as S approaches 0 from below (the lowest mode converges to the zero mode). Thus we have $E'_{\rm vac}(0_-) = E'_{\rm vac}(0) = E_{\rm vac}(0) = \frac{M}{2}$. On the other hand, we loose *two* bosonic and *one* fermionic oscillating modes as S is increased beyon $2/L$. Since each mode comes with a pair (complex for boson and $\pm$ for fermion), we have

$$E'_{\rm vac}(0_+) = -2M + M + E'_{\rm vac}(0) = -\frac{M}{2}.$$

Using these we find

$$E'_{\rm vac}(S) = -\frac{S}{\pi}\left[\log\left(\frac{2\Lambda}{M}\right)+1\right] \mp \frac{\sqrt{M^2-S^2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{M^2-S^2}}{\pi}\arctan\left(\frac{S}{\sqrt{M^2-S^2}}\right),$$
$$\text{for} \quad \begin{matrix} S > 0 \\ S \le 0. \end{matrix}$$

If $S > 0$, which actually means $S \gg 2/L$, we need to add the contribution from the exponential modes,

$$\sqrt{M^2-\kappa_0^2} + \sqrt{M^2-\kappa_1^2} - \sqrt{M^2-\kappa^2} \simeq \sqrt{M^2-S^2}.$$

After the addition, the term $\mp\frac{\sqrt{M^2-S^2}}{2}$ in $E'_{\rm vac}$ becomes just $+\frac{\sqrt{M^2-S^2}}{2}$ for any value of S. In this way, we find that the total energy is

$$E_{\rm vac} = -\frac{{\rm Im}(\sigma)}{\pi}\left[\log\left(\frac{2\Lambda}{|\sigma|}\right)+1\right] + \frac{|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|}{2} + \frac{|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|}{\pi}\arctan\left(\frac{{\rm Im}(\sigma)}{|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|}\right). \qquad (6.37)$$

6.4.2 Energy Density

Let us next compute the vacuum energy density, defined as the vacuum expectation value

$$\mathcal{E}(x) = \langle 0|\mathcal{H}(x)|0\rangle \tag{6.38}$$

of the Hamiltonian density

$$\mathcal{H}(x) = |\dot{\phi}(x)|^2 + \overline{\phi}(x)(-\partial_x^2 + M^2)\phi(x) + \frac{1}{2}[\Psi(x)^\dagger, \mathcal{D}\Psi(x)].$$

R Sector

In the Ramond sector it is

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}_{\rm R}(x) &= 2\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}{L}f_n(x)^2 - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}{L}(f_n(x)^2+g_n(x)^2) \\
&= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}{L}(f_n(x)^2-g_n(x)^2) \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}{L}\frac{k_n^2\cos(2k_nx)+k_nS\sin(2k_nx)}{k_n^2+S^2} + \frac{\sqrt{M^2-S^2}}{L}\frac{SL}{\mathrm{e}^{2SL}-1}\,\mathrm{e}^{2Sx}
\end{aligned}$$

Let us focus on the region near the left boundary $x = 0$, and take the $L \to \infty$ limit. In this limit, the last term becomes

$$\frac{\sqrt{M^2-S^2}}{L}\frac{SL}{\mathrm{e}^{2SL}-1}\,\mathrm{e}^{2Sx} \longrightarrow \begin{cases} 0 & S>0 \\ \frac{M}{2L}\to 0 & S=0 \\ -\sqrt{M^2-S^2}S\,\mathrm{e}^{2Sx} & S<0. \end{cases}$$

Thus, the density can be written in the limit as

$$\lim_{L\to\infty}\mathcal{E}_{\rm R}(x) = \int_0^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{\pi}\sqrt{M^2+k^2}\frac{k^2\cos(2kx)+kS\sin(2kx)}{k^2+S^2} - \theta_{S<0}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|S\,\mathrm{e}^{2Sx}. \tag{6.39}$$

If x is strictly away from the boundary, $x > 0$, one may proceed the computation as follows:

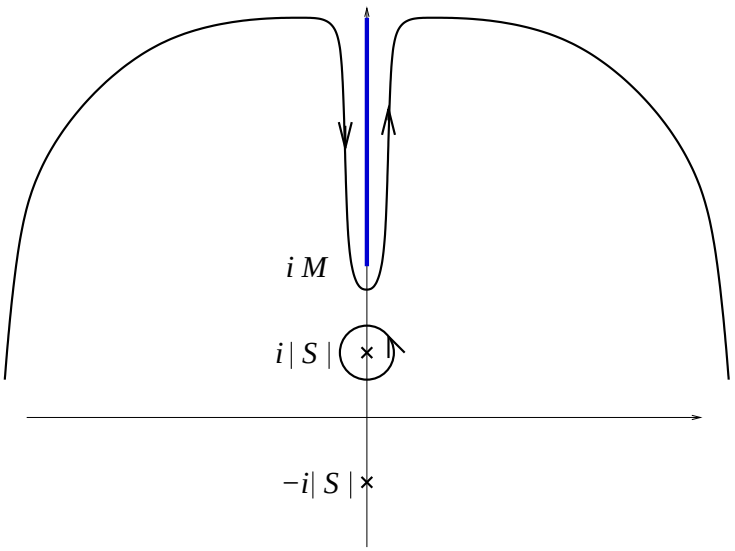


Figure 12: Deformed contour.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lim_{L\to\infty} \mathcal{E}_{\mathrm{R}}(x) &= \int_0^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{\pi}\sqrt{M^2+k^2}\frac{k}{2}\left[\frac{k-iS}{k^2+S^2}\,\mathrm{e}^{2ikx}+\frac{k+iS}{k^2+S^2}\,\mathrm{e}^{-2ikx}\right]-\theta_{S<0}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|S\,\mathrm{e}^{2Sx} \\
&= \int_{-\infty}^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{2\pi}\sqrt{M^2+k^2}\frac{k}{k+iS}\,\mathrm{e}^{2ikx}-\theta_{S<0}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|S\,\mathrm{e}^{2Sx} \\
&= \int_M^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}iK}{2\pi}\left(i\sqrt{K^2-M^2}-(-i\sqrt{K^2-M^2})\right)\frac{iK}{iK+iS}\,\mathrm{e}^{-2Kx} \\
&\quad +\theta_{S<0}\frac{2\pi i}{2\pi}\sqrt{M^2-S^2}(-iS)\,\mathrm{e}^{2Sx}-\theta_{S<0}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|S\,\mathrm{e}^{2Sx} \\
&= -\int_M^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}K}{\pi}\sqrt{K^2-M^2}\frac{K}{K+S}\,\mathrm{e}^{-2Kx}. \qquad (6.40)
\end{aligned}
$$

From the second to the third line, the contour is deformed as in Fig. 12 using the fact that x is strictly positive. Note that there is a simple pole at $k=-iS$ only when S is negative, which produces the additional term $\theta_{S<0}(\cdots)$, which in turn is canceled against the contribution from the exponential mode.

We see that the density is localized near the boundary $x=0$ with widths $1/M$. Let us compute the total of this localized energy by integrating the density *after* the limit $L\to\infty$. (This is different from integration before the limit, which simply reproduces the total energy given in (6.34).) Since the integration domain includes $x=0$, we must go back to the expression (6.39) before the contour deformation of Fig. 12. Also, we need to

cut off the momentum integral at $k = \Lambda$:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{x\sim 0} &= \lim_{R\to\infty} \int_0^R \mathrm{d}x \lim_{L\to\infty} \mathcal{E}_R(x)\Big|_{\text{cut off }\Lambda} \\ &= \lim_{R\to\infty} \int_0^R \mathrm{d}x \left[\int_0^\Lambda \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{\pi} \sqrt{M^2+k^2} \frac{k^2\cos(2kx) + kS\sin(2kx)}{k^2+S^2} - \theta_{S<0}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|S\,\mathrm{e}^{2Sx} \right] \\ &= \lim_{R\to\infty} \int_0^\Lambda \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{\pi} \frac{\sqrt{M^2+k^2}}{k^2+S^2} \left[k^2 \frac{\sin(2kR)}{2k} + S\frac{-\cos(2kR)+1}{2} \right] + \theta_{S<0}\frac{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

At this stage we use

$$\lim_{R\to\infty} \frac{\sin(2kR)}{2k} = \frac{\pi}{2}\delta(k),$$

and also the fact that

$$\int_0^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{\pi} \frac{\sqrt{M^2+k^2}}{k^2+S^2} \cos(2kR)$$

decays exponentially as $RM, RS \to \infty$ — as can be shown by deforming the contour as in (6.40). Then we find

$$E_{x\sim 0} = S\int_0^\Lambda \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{2\pi} \frac{\sqrt{M^2+k^2}}{k^2+S^2} + \delta_{S,0}\frac{M}{4} + \theta_{S<0}\frac{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|}{2}. \tag{6.41}$$

The integral on the right hand side is defined to be zero for $S = 0$. For $S \neq 0$, it can be evaluated;

$$\begin{aligned} & S\int_0^\Lambda \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{2\pi} \frac{\sqrt{M^2+k^2}}{k^2+S^2} \\ &= \frac{S}{2\pi}\left[\log\left(\frac{2\Lambda}{M}\right) + 1 \right] - \frac{\sqrt{M^2-S^2}}{2\pi} \arctan\left(\frac{S}{\sqrt{M^2-S^2}} \right) + \frac{1}{4}\mathrm{sgn}(S)\sqrt{M^2-S^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the localized energy at $x = 0$ is

$$E_{x\sim 0} = \frac{\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{2\pi}\left[\log\left(\frac{2\Lambda}{|\sigma|}\right) + 1 \right] - \frac{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|}{2\pi} \arctan\left(\frac{\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|} \right) + \frac{1}{4}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|. \tag{6.42}$$

Let us next compute the energy localized near the right boundary $x = L$, where we use the coordinate $y = x - L \leq 0$. Namely, we take the limit $L \to \infty$ of $\mathcal{E}_\mathrm{R}(x)$ keeping y finite. Since the wavenumbers are $k_n = \pi n/L$, we have equations $\sin(2k_n x) = \sin(2k_n y)$ and $\cos(2k_n x) = \cos(2k_n y)$ that allow us to write the energy density in the y coordinate:

$$\mathcal{E}_\mathrm{R}(x) = \sum_{n=1}^\infty \frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}{L} \frac{k_n^2\cos(2k_n y) + k_n S\sin(2k_n y)}{k_n^2+S^2} + \frac{\sqrt{M^2-S^2}}{L}\frac{SL}{1-\mathrm{e}^{-2SL}}\,\mathrm{e}^{2Sy}$$

The limit can now be taken straightforwardly:

$$\lim_{L\to\infty} \mathcal{E}_R(x) = \int_0^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{\pi} \sqrt{M^2+k^2} \frac{k^2\cos(2ky) + kS\sin(2ky)}{k^2+S^2} + \theta_{S>0}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|S\,\mathrm{e}^{2Sy}. \tag{6.43}$$

Proceeding as before, we find

$$\lim_{L\to\infty} \mathcal{E}_{\rm R}(x) = -\int_M^\infty \frac{{\rm d}K}{\pi}\sqrt{K^2-M^2}\,\frac{K}{K-S}\,{\rm e}^{2Ky} \qquad \text{for } y<0 \text{ strictly,} \tag{6.44}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} E_{x\sim L} &= \lim_{R\to\infty}\int_{-R}^0 {\rm d}y\left[\int_0^\Lambda \frac{{\rm d}k}{\pi}\sqrt{M^2+k^2}\,\frac{k^2\cos(2ky)+kS\sin(2ky)}{k^2+S^2} + \theta_{S>0}|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|S\,{\rm e}^{2Sy}\right] \\ &= -S\int_0^\Lambda \frac{{\rm d}k}{2\pi}\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k^2}}{k^2+S^2} + \delta_{S,0}\frac{M}{4} + \theta_{S>0}\frac{|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|}{2} \\ &= -\frac{{\rm Im}(\sigma)}{2\pi}\left[\log\left(\frac{2\Lambda}{|\sigma|}\right)+1\right] + \frac{|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|}{2\pi}\arctan\left(\frac{{\rm Im}(\sigma)}{|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|}\right) + \frac{1}{4}|{\rm Re}(\sigma)| \end{aligned} \tag{6.45}$$

Note that

$$E_{x\sim 0} + E_{x\sim L} = \frac{|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|}{2} = E_{\rm vac},$$

see (6.34). This means that the total energy comes purely from the energies localized at the two boundaries. This is consistent with the fact that the energy density vanishes in the bulk of the interval $\frac{1}{M} \ll x \ll L - \frac{1}{M}$.

NS Sector

Let us next discuss the energy density of the ground state in the NS sector (6.7). Actually, we know what to expect: At the right boundary $x = L$, the boundary condition is exactly the same as the Ramond boundary condition and thus we should obtain the same answer as $\mathcal{E}_{\rm R}(x)$. The NS condition at the left boundary $x = 0$ is obtained from the Ramond condition at the right boundary $x = L$, by $\psi_\pm(x) \to \pm\overline{\psi}_\mp(L-x)$, $\phi(x) \to \phi(L-x)$. Therfore we expect that $\mathcal{E}_{\rm NS}(x)$ for x close to 0 is obtained from $\mathcal{E}_{\rm R}(x)$ at x close to L, by the replacement $x \to L - x$. To summarize, the expectation is

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{L\to\infty}\mathcal{E}_{\rm NS}(x) &= \begin{cases} \displaystyle\int_0^\infty \frac{{\rm d}k}{\pi}\sqrt{M^2+k^2}\,\frac{k^2\cos(2ky)+kS\sin(2ky)}{k^2+S^2} + \theta_{S>0}|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|S\,{\rm e}^{2Sy} \\ \qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad x \lesssim L, \\ \displaystyle\int_0^\infty \frac{{\rm d}k}{\pi}\sqrt{M^2+k^2}\,\frac{k^2\cos(2kx)-kS\sin(2kx)}{k^2+S^2} + \theta_{S>0}|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|S\,{\rm e}^{-2Sx} \\ \qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad x \gtrsim 0, \end{cases} \\ &= \begin{cases} \displaystyle -\int_M^\infty \frac{{\rm d}K}{\pi}\sqrt{K^2-M^2}\,\frac{K}{K-S}\,{\rm e}^{2Ky} & x < L \ \text{ strictly,} \\ \displaystyle -\int_M^\infty \frac{{\rm d}K}{\pi}\sqrt{K^2-M^2}\,\frac{K}{K-S}\,{\rm e}^{-2Kx} & x > 0 \ \text{ strictly,} \end{cases} \end{aligned} \tag{6.46}$$

and

$$E_{x\sim 0} = E_{x\sim L} = -S\int_0^\Lambda \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{2\pi}\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k^2}}{k^2+S^2} + \delta_{S,0}\frac{M}{4} + \theta_{S>0}\frac{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|}{2}$$
$$= -\frac{\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{2\pi}\left[\log\left(\frac{2\Lambda}{|\sigma|}\right)+1\right] + \frac{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|}{2\pi}\arctan\left(\frac{\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|}\right) + \frac{1}{4}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)| \quad (6.47)$$

The sum of the two is is nothing but the total energy (6.37) of the NS vacuum.

One can indeed verify the above expectations. We split the density into two parts, the part $\mathcal{E}'_{\mathrm{NS}}(x)$ from the oscilating or constant modes, and the part $\mathcal{E}^{exp}_{\mathrm{NS}}(x)$ from the exponential modes that are present only for $S > 0$. We first consider the contribution from the oscillating/constant modes. By definition we have

$$\mathcal{E}'_{\mathrm{NS}}(x) = 2{\sum_n}' \frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}{L}h_n(x)^2 - {\sum_r}'\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_r^2}}{L}(g_r(x)^2+h_r(x)^2).$$

See Section 6.2.2 for the quantities that appears here. In particular, k_n and k_r are defined by the equations (6.15) and (6.21). Let us look at the behaviour near the left boundary $x \gtrsim 0$, taking the limit $L\to\infty$ for a finite x. In this limit, the difference between neighboring wavenumbers disappears $|k_n - k_{r=n\pm\frac{1}{2}}| < \frac{\pi}{L} \to 0$, and we have $h_n(x) \sim h_r(x)$ for a finite $k_n \sim k_r$. Thus we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}'_{\mathrm{NS}}(x) &= {\sum_n}'\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}{L}(h_n(x)^2 - g_{n\pm\frac{1}{2}}(x)^2) + \cdots \\
&= {\sum_n}'\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}{L}\frac{k_n^2\cos(2k_nx) - k_nS\sin(2k_nx)}{k_n^2+S^2} + \cdots \\
&\xrightarrow{L\to\infty} \int_0^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{\pi}\sqrt{M^2+k^2}\frac{k^2\cos(2kx)-kS\sin(2kx)}{k^2+S^2}, \qquad x \gtrsim 0,
\end{aligned}$$

where $+\cdots$ are terms that vanish in the $L\to\infty$ limit. Let us now look near the right boundary $x \lesssim L$: take the limit $L\to\infty$ with $y = x - L$ kept finite. To do this, we write everything as a function of y. Using the defining equation of k_n and k_r we find

$$\begin{aligned}
h_n(x) &= \pm\frac{k_n\cos(k_ny) + S\sin(k_ny)}{\sqrt{k_n^2+S^2}}(1+\cdots) \\
g_r(x) &= \pm\frac{k_r\cos(k_ry) + S\sin(k_ry)}{\sqrt{k_r^2+S^2}}(1+\cdots) \\
h_r(x) &= -\sin(k_ry)(1+\cdots).
\end{aligned}$$

In the limit $L\to\infty$ the sum over the modes becomes an integral over k where the difference of k_n and k_r disappears. Noting that $h_n(x)^2 \sim g_r(x)^2 \neq h_r(x)^2$ for $k_n \sim k_r$, we

find

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}'_{\rm NS}(x) &= {\sum_n}' \frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}{L}(h_n(x)^2 - h_{n\pm\frac{1}{2}}(x)^2) + \cdots \\
&= {\sum_n}' \frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}{L}\frac{k_n^2\cos(2k_n y) + k_n S\sin(2k_n y)}{k_n^2+S^2} + \cdots \\
&\stackrel{L\to\infty}{\longrightarrow} \int_0^\infty \frac{{\rm d}k}{\pi}\sqrt{M^2+k^2}\frac{k^2\cos(2ky)+kS\sin(2ky)}{k^2+S^2}, \qquad x \lesssim L.
\end{aligned}$$

We next consider the contribution from the exponential modes, which are given by (6.18), (6.19) and (6.24). These functions behave as follows, in the limit $L\to\infty$ for finite x and finite $y = x - L$,

$$\text{(finite } x\text{)}: \quad \begin{cases} h_0(x), h_1(x) \to \sqrt{\frac{SL}{2}}\,{\rm e}^{-Sx}, \sqrt{\frac{SL}{2}}\,{\rm e}^{-Sx} \\ \Psi_{\frac{1}{2},+}(x), \Psi_{\frac{1}{2},-}(x) \to \begin{cases} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ i\sqrt{2S}\,{\rm e}^{-Sx} \end{pmatrix} & {\rm Re}(\sigma) > 0 \\ \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -i\sqrt{2S}\,{\rm e}^{-Sx} \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} & {\rm Re}(\sigma) < 0 \end{cases} \end{cases}$$

$$\text{(finite } y\text{)}: \quad \begin{cases} h_0(x), h_1(x) \to \sqrt{\frac{SL}{2}}\,{\rm e}^{Sy}, -\sqrt{\frac{SL}{2}}\,{\rm e}^{Sy} \\ \Psi_{\frac{1}{2},+}(x), \Psi_{\frac{1}{2},-}(x) \to \begin{cases} \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{2S}\,{\rm e}^{Sy} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} & {\rm Re}(\sigma) > 0 \\ \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{2S}\,{\rm e}^{Sy} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} & {\rm Re}(\sigma) < 0 \end{cases} \end{cases}$$

The contribution to the energy density is

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}^{exp}_{\rm NS}(x) &= \sqrt{M^2-\kappa_0^2}\frac{2}{L}h_0(x)^2 + \sqrt{M^2-\kappa_1^2}\frac{2}{L}h_1(x)^2 \\
&\quad -\frac{\sqrt{M^2-\kappa^2}}{2}\Big(\Psi_{\frac{1}{2},+}(x)^\dagger\Psi_{\frac{1}{2},+}(x) + \Psi_{\frac{1}{2},-}(x)^\dagger\Psi_{\frac{1}{2},-}(x)\Big) \\
&\stackrel{x\,\text{finite}}{\longrightarrow} |{\rm Re}(\sigma)|S\,{\rm e}^{-2Sx} + |{\rm Re}(\sigma)|S\,{\rm e}^{-2Sx} - \frac{|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|}{2}2S\,{\rm e}^{-2Sx} = |{\rm Re}(\sigma)|S\,{\rm e}^{-2Sx} \\
&\stackrel{y\,\text{finite}}{\longrightarrow} |{\rm Re}(\sigma)|S\,{\rm e}^{2Sy} + |{\rm Re}(\sigma)|S\,{\rm e}^{2Sy} - \frac{|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|}{2}2S\,{\rm e}^{2Sy} = |{\rm Re}(\sigma)|S\,{\rm e}^{2Sy}.
\end{aligned}$$

The sum $\mathcal{E}'_{\rm NS}(x) + \mathcal{E}^{exp}_{\rm NS}(x)$ leads to the expected answer (6.46) in the limit $L\to\infty$.

6.5 The Charge

Let us compute the charge of the ground state. The charge density operator is defined by

$$j^0 = \frac{i}{2}\{\overline{\phi}, \dot{\phi}\} - \frac{i}{2}\{\phi, \dot{\overline{\phi}}\} + \frac{1}{2}[\Psi^\dagger, \Psi] \tag{6.48}$$

and we want to compute the eigenvalue of the total charge

$$Q = \int_0^L j^0(x)\mathrm{d}x$$

of the ground state $|0\rangle$ and the vacuum expectation value of the density

$$\rho(x) = \langle 0|j^0(x)|0\rangle.$$

R Sector

Using the mode expansion, we find that the density operator is expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} j^0(x) \;=& \sum_{n,m=0}^{\infty} \frac{i}{L}\left(\frac{M^2+k_m^2}{M^2+k_n^2}\right)^{\frac{1}{4}} f_n(x) f_m(x)\left[(a_n^1 + a_n^{1\dagger})(a_m^2 - a_m^{2\dagger}) - (a_n^2 + a_n^{2\dagger})(a_m^1 - a_m^{1\dagger})\right] \\ &+ \sum_{n,m=0}^{\infty}\left(\frac{1}{2}\left[b_{n,+}^\dagger, b_{m,+}\right]\Psi_{n,+}(x)^\dagger \Psi_{m,+}(x) - \frac{1}{2}\left[b_{m,-}^\dagger, b_{n,-}\right]\Psi_{n,-}(x)^\dagger \Psi_{m,-}(x)\right. \\ &\left. + b_{n,-}b_{m,+}\Psi_{n,-}(x)^\dagger \Psi_{m,+}(x) + b_{n,+}^\dagger b_{m,-}^\dagger \Psi_{n,+}(x)^\dagger \Psi_{m,-}(x)\right), \end{aligned} \tag{6.49}$$

in which we set $\Psi_{0,+}(x) = \Psi_0(x)$ and $\Psi_{0,-}(x) = 0$, and the total charge is

$$Q = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left[\, i\left(a_n^{1\dagger}a_n^2 - a_n^{2\dagger}a_n^1\right) + b_{n,+}^\dagger b_{n,+} - b_{n,-}^\dagger b_{n,-}\,\right] + \left[\, i\left(a_0^{1\dagger}a_0^2 - a_0^{2\dagger}a_0^1\right) + b_0^\dagger b_0 - \frac{1}{2}\right]. \tag{6.50}$$

The ground state $|0\rangle$ is annihilated by b_0 if $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) > 0$ and by $b_0^\dagger$ if $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) < 0$. Thus, it has charge

$$Q_{\mathrm{vac}} = \begin{cases} -\frac{1}{2} & \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) > 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) < 0 \end{cases} = -\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{sgnRe}(\sigma). \tag{6.51}$$

The charge density is

$$\begin{aligned}\rho_{\rm R}(x) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\left[-\frac{1}{2}\Psi_{n,+}(x)^\dagger\Psi_{n,+}(x)+\frac{1}{2}\Psi_{n,-}(x)^\dagger\Psi_{n,-}(x)\right]-\frac{1}{2}{\rm sgnRe}(\sigma)\Psi_0(x)^\dagger\Psi_0(x)\\ &= -\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{{\rm Re}(\sigma)}{L\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}(f_n(x)^2-g_n(x)^2)-\frac{1}{2}{\rm sgnRe}(\sigma)\frac{2S\,{\rm e}^{2Sx}}{{\rm e}^{2SL}-1}\\ &= -\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{{\rm Re}(\sigma)}{L\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}\frac{k_n^2\cos(2k_nx)+k_nS\sin(2k_nx)}{k_n^2+S^2}-{\rm sgnRe}(\sigma)\frac{S\,{\rm e}^{2Sx}}{{\rm e}^{2SL}-1}. \end{aligned} \tag{6.52}$$

Let us look at the neighborhood of the left boundary $x=0$ by taking the limit $L\to\infty$ for a finite x. In this limit we have

$$\lim_{L\to\infty}\rho_{\rm R}(x)=-\int_0^\infty\frac{{\rm d}k}{\pi}\frac{{\rm Re}(\sigma)}{\sqrt{M^2+k^2}}\frac{k^2\cos(2kx)+kS\sin(2kx)}{k^2+S^2}+\theta_{S<0}{\rm sgnRe}(\sigma)S\,{\rm e}^{2Sx}. \tag{6.53}$$

If x is strictly away from the boundary $x>0$, it is

$$\lim_{L\to\infty}\rho_{\rm R}(x)=-\int_M^\infty\frac{{\rm d}K}{\pi}\frac{{\rm Re}(\sigma)K}{\sqrt{K^2-M^2}(K+S)}\,{\rm e}^{-2Kx}. \tag{6.54}$$

We see that the charge is localized near the boundary with width $1/M$. The total localized charge is

$$\begin{aligned}Q_{x\sim0} &= \lim_{R\to\infty}\int_0^R\lim_{L\to\infty}\rho_{\rm R}(x){\rm d}x\\ &= {\rm sgn}({\rm Re}(\sigma))\left[\frac{1}{2\pi}\arctan\left(\frac{{\rm Im}(\sigma)}{|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|}\right)-\frac{1}{4}\right]. \end{aligned} \tag{6.55}$$

Let us next look at the neighborhood of the right boundary $x=L$. In the limit $L\to\infty$ for a finite $y=x-L$, we have

$$\lim_{L\to\infty}\rho_{\rm R}(x)=-\int_0^\infty\frac{{\rm d}k}{\pi}\frac{{\rm Re}(\sigma)}{\sqrt{M^2+k^2}}\frac{k^2\cos(2ky)+kS\sin(2ky)}{k^2+S^2}-\theta_{S>0}{\rm sgnRe}(\sigma)S\,{\rm e}^{2Sy}. \tag{6.56}$$

If x is strictly away from the boundary $x<L$, i.e. $y<0$, it is

$$\lim_{L\to\infty}\rho_{\rm R}(x)=-\int_M^\infty\frac{{\rm d}K}{\pi}\frac{{\rm Re}(\sigma)K}{\sqrt{K^2-M^2}(K-S)}\,{\rm e}^{2Ky}. \tag{6.57}$$

Again, the charge is localized near the boundary. The total is

$$\begin{aligned}Q_{x\sim L} &= \lim_{R\to\infty}\int_{-R}^0\lim_{L\to\infty}\rho_{\rm R}(x){\rm d}y\\ &= {\rm sgn}({\rm Re}(\sigma))\left[-\frac{1}{2\pi}\arctan\left(\frac{{\rm Im}(\sigma)}{|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|}\right)-\frac{1}{4}\right]. \end{aligned} \tag{6.58}$$

We note that the sum of the localized charges $Q_{x\sim0}+Q_{x\sim L}$ reproduces the total charge given by (6.51).

NS Sector

The charge density operator $j^0(x)$ can be expanded in terms of the modes as in (6.49), from which it follows that

$$Q = \sum_n i \left(a_n^{1\dagger} a_n^2 - a_n^{2\dagger} a_n^1 \right) + \sum_r \left(b_{r,+}^\dagger b_{r,+} - b_{r,-}^\dagger b_{r,-} \right). \tag{6.59}$$

In particular, the vacuum has zero total charge,

$$Q_{\rm vac} = 0. \tag{6.60}$$

The charge density of the ground state can be determined either directly or by employing the symmetry argument as in the computation of the energy density. In the latter method, we consider the transformation $\psi_\pm(x) \to \pm\overline{\psi}_\mp(L-x)$, $\phi(x) \to \overline{\phi}(L-x)$ that maps the Ramond boundary condition at $x = L$ to the NS boundary condition at $x = 0$. Note that it flips the sign of the charge density, $j^0(x) \to -j^0(x-L)$. In either way we find

$$\begin{aligned}
\rho_{\rm NS}(x) \;&=\; -{\sum_r}' \frac{{\rm Re}(\sigma)}{L\sqrt{M^2+k_r^2}} (g_r(x)^2 - h_r(x)^2) - \frac{1}{2}\theta_{S>0} \left(\|\Psi_{\frac{1}{2},+}(x)\|^2 - \|\Psi_{\frac{1}{2},-}(x)\|^2 \right) \\
&\overset{L\to\infty}{\longrightarrow} \begin{cases} -\displaystyle\int_0^\infty \frac{{\rm d}k}{\pi} \frac{{\rm Re}(\sigma)}{\sqrt{M^2+k^2}} \frac{k^2\cos(2ky) + kS\sin(2ky)}{k^2+S^2} - \theta_{S>0}{\rm sgnRe}(\sigma) S\, {\rm e}^{2Sy} \\ \qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad x \lesssim L, \\ \displaystyle\int_0^\infty \frac{{\rm d}k}{\pi} \frac{{\rm Re}(\sigma)}{\sqrt{M^2+k^2}} \frac{k^2\cos(2kx) - kS\sin(2kx)}{k^2+S^2} + \theta_{S>0}{\rm sgnRe}(\sigma) S\, {\rm e}^{-2Sx} \\ \qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad x \gtrsim 0, \end{cases} \\
&= \begin{cases} -\displaystyle\int_M^\infty \frac{{\rm d}K}{\pi} \frac{{\rm Re}(\sigma) K}{\sqrt{K^2-M^2}(K-S)}\, {\rm e}^{2Ky} & x < L \quad \text{strictly}, \\ \displaystyle\int_M^\infty \frac{{\rm d}K}{\pi} \frac{{\rm Re}(\sigma)}{\sqrt{K^2-M^2}(K-S)}\, {\rm e}^{-2Kx} & x > 0 \quad \text{strictly}, \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$Q_{x\sim L} = -Q_{x\sim 0} = {\rm sgn}({\rm Re}(\sigma)) \left[-\frac{1}{2\pi} \arctan\left(\frac{{\rm Im}(\sigma)}{|{\rm Re}(\sigma)|} \right) - \frac{1}{4} \right] \tag{6.61}$$

In Fig. 13, we plot the graph of the function (6.58)=(6.61) that shows the charge localized at the right boundary, for both Ramond and NS sectors.

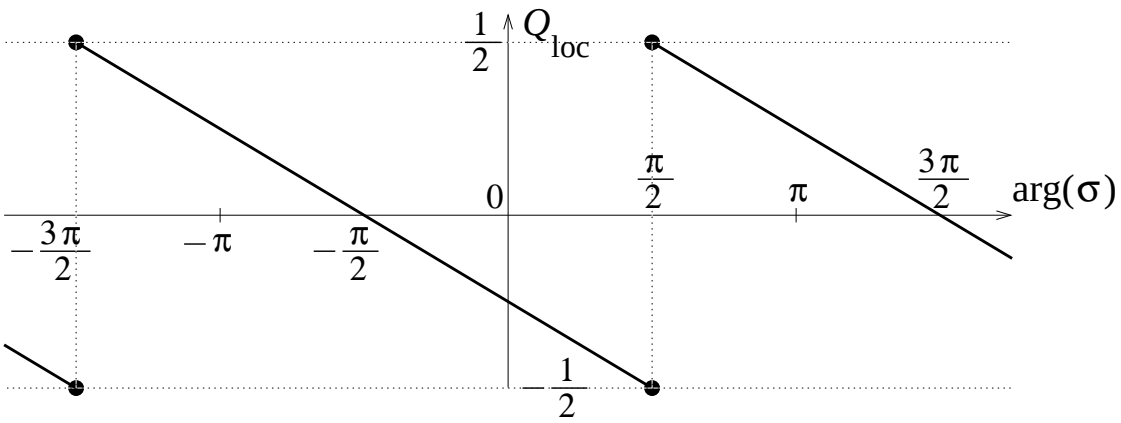


Figure 13: Charge localized near the right boundary of an interval

6.6 Note On Supersymmetry

Let us comment on the supersymmetry of the states. The system in the Ramond sector has an $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetry which transforms the fields as

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta\phi &= \sqrt{2}\epsilon b, \\
\delta b &= -\sqrt{2}\overline{\epsilon}(i\partial_t\phi + \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)\phi), \\
\delta c &= i\sqrt{2}\overline{\epsilon}(\partial_x\phi - \mathrm{Im}(\sigma)\phi).
\end{aligned}$$

By Noether procedure we find the supercharges generating them;

$$\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{Q}_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbf{Q}_n \tag{6.62}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{Q}_0 &= i\sqrt{2}\left(-i\dot{\overline{\phi}}_0 + \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)\overline{\phi}_0\right) b_0 \\
&= \begin{cases} i\sqrt{2|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|}\left(a_0^{1\dagger} - ia_0^{2\dagger}\right) b_0 & \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) > 0, \\ -i\sqrt{2|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|}\left(a_0^{1} - ia_0^{2}\right) b_0 & \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) < 0, \end{cases}
\end{aligned} \tag{6.63}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{Q}_n &= i\sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}+\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)}{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}}\left(-i\dot{\overline{\phi}}_n + \sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}\phi_n\right) b_{n,\uparrow} \\
&\quad + i\sqrt{\frac{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}-\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)}{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}}}\left(-i\dot{\overline{\phi}}_n - \sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}\phi_n\right) b_{n,\downarrow}^{\dagger} \\
&= i\sqrt{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}+\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)}b_{n,+}\left(a_n^{1\dagger} - ia_n^{2\dagger}\right) - i\sqrt{\sqrt{M^2+k_n^2}-\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)}b_{n,-}^{\dagger}\left(a_n^{1} - ia_n^{2}\right)
\end{aligned} \tag{6.64}$$

The supercharges obey the supersymmetry relations with equivariant parameter $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)$;

$$\frac{1}{2}\{\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{Q}^\dagger\} = H + \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) Q, \tag{6.65}$$

$$\mathbf{Q}^2 = \mathbf{Q}^{\dagger 2} = 0. \tag{6.66}$$

The operator Q on the right hand side of the first equation is the total charge operator (6.50) (not a supercharge).

We note that each term of $\mathbf{Q}$ and $\mathbf{Q}^\dagger$ has an annihilation operator. This is obvious for the $n \neq 0$ modes but is true also for the $n = 0$ mode; see the property (6.33) of the ground state. Therefore, the ground state is supersymmetric, i.e., annihilated by both of the supercharges

$$\mathbf{Q}|0\rangle = \mathbf{Q}^\dagger|0\rangle = 0.$$

The energy and the charge of the Ramond ground state is computed in (6.34) and (6.51); The energy is $E_{\mathrm{vac}} = |\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|/2$ while the charge is $Q_{\mathrm{vac}} = -\mathrm{sgn}(\mathrm{Re}(\sigma))/2$. These are perfectly consistent with the supersymmetry algebra (6.65) and the fact that the state is supersymmetric. The ground state has positive energy but it does not mean that supersymmetry is broken in this matter sector.

6.7 The Case Of The Half-Space

Let us comment on the theory formulated on the half-space, say,

$$x \leq 0. \tag{6.67}$$

To be specific, we consider the boundary conditions which are the same as in the "right boundary $x = L$" of the finite interval. Namely we add the term (6.2) at the boundary $x = 0$ and impose the associated boundary conditions (6.3) there:

$$\partial_1 \phi = S\phi, \quad \psi_+ = \psi_-, \quad \partial_1(\psi_+ + \psi_-) = S(\psi_+ + \psi_-).$$

As in the finite interval there are oscillating modes and exponential modes. Oscillating modes for the fields ϕ and $b = (\psi_+ + \psi_-)/\sqrt{2}$, or $c = (\psi_- - \psi_+)/\sqrt{2}$ are

$$f_k(x) = \frac{k\cos(kx) + S\sin(kx)}{k^2 + S^2}, \quad \text{or} \quad g_k(x) = \sin(kx), \tag{6.68}$$

for any positive k. In addition, ϕ and b may have exponential modes, proportional to

$$\mathrm{e}^{Sx}. \tag{6.69}$$

They are normalizable when S is positive. Since they decay rapidly as $x \to -\infty$, we shall call them *decaying modes*. They have a frequency $\sqrt{M^2 - S^2} = |\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|$ and become zero modes when $S = M$, that is, when $\sigma = i|\sigma|$. If S is negative, the function e^{Sx} grows exponentially and will not be considered.

Mode expansion and quantization is straightforward. It is simply to consider the $L \to \infty$ limit of the finite interval theory — we only have to discard the modes that vanishes in that limit (such as the exponential mode in the Ramond sector of the $S < 0$ theory, and a linear combination of the two exponential modes of the NS sector in the $S > 1/L$ and $S > 2/L$ theory). The fields are expanded as

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi^i(x) &= \int_0^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{\sqrt{\pi}} \frac{1}{\sqrt[4]{k^2 + M^2}} \Big(a^i(k) + a^i(k)^\dagger \Big) f_k(x) \\
&\quad + \theta_S \frac{1}{\sqrt[4]{M^2 - S^2}} \Big(a_D^i + a_D^{i\dagger} \Big) \sqrt{S}\, \mathrm{e}^{Sx}, \qquad (6.70) \\
\pi_{\phi^i}(x) &= \int_0^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{\sqrt{\pi}} \sqrt[4]{k^2 + M^2} \Big(-ia^i(k) + ia^i(k)^\dagger \Big) f_k(x) \\
&\quad + \theta_S \sqrt[4]{M^2 - S^2} \Big(-ia_D^i + ia_D^{i\dagger} \Big) \sqrt{S}\, \mathrm{e}^{Sx}, \qquad (6.71) \\
\Psi(x) &= \int_0^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{\sqrt{\pi\sqrt{k^2 + M^2}}} \left[\Psi_{\uparrow,k}(x) b_\uparrow(k) + \Psi_{\downarrow,k}(x) b_\downarrow(k)^\dagger \right] + \theta_S \sqrt{2S} b_D \Psi_D(x), \\
&\qquad (6.72)
\end{aligned}$$

where $\Psi_{\alpha,k}(x)$ and $\Psi_D(x)$ are the eigen modes of the kinetic operator $\mathcal{D}$ defined by

$$\Psi_{\uparrow,k} = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\sqrt{k^2 + M^2} + \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)} f_k(x) \\ i\sqrt{\sqrt{k^2 + M^2} - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)} g_k(x) \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathcal{D} = \sqrt{k^2 + M^2} \qquad (6.73)$$

$$\Psi_{\downarrow,k} = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\sqrt{k^2 + M^2} - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)} f_k(x) \\ -i\sqrt{\sqrt{k^2 + M^2} + \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)} g_k(x) \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathcal{D} = -\sqrt{k^2 + M^2}. \qquad (6.74)$$

$$\Psi_D = \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{Sx} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathcal{D} = \mathrm{Re}(\sigma). \qquad (6.75)$$

The mode operators obey the (anti-)commutation relations

$$\begin{aligned}
&[a^i(k_1), a^j(k_2)^\dagger] = \delta^{i,j} \delta(k_1 - k_2), \\
&([a_D^i, a_D^{j\dagger}] = \delta^{i,j}, \quad [a_D^i, a^j(k)^\dagger] = 0 \ \text{ etc}), \\
&\{b_\alpha(k_1), b_\beta(k_2)^\dagger\} = \delta_{\alpha\beta} \delta(k_1 - k_2), \quad \{b_\alpha(k_1), b_\beta(k_2)\} = 0, \\
&(\,\{b_D, b_D^\dagger\} = 1, \quad \{b_D, b_\alpha(k)^\dagger\} = 0 \ \text{ etc}),
\end{aligned}$$

so that the fields obey the canonical (anti-)commutation relations

$$
\begin{aligned}
&[\phi^i(x_1), \pi_{\phi^j}(x_2)] = i\delta^i_j \delta(x_1 - x_2), \\
&[\phi^i(x_1), \phi^j(x_2)] = [\pi_{\phi^i}(x_1), \pi_{\phi^j}(x_2)] = 0. \\
&\{b(x_1), b(x_2)^\dagger\} = \delta(x_1 - x_2), \quad \{b(x_1), b(x_2)\} = 0, \\
&\{c(x_1), c(x_2)^\dagger\} = \delta(x_1 - x_2), \quad \{c(x_1), c(x_2)\} = 0, \\
&\{b(x_1), c(x_2)^\dagger\} = 0, ...
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that we need the decaying mode (in the case $S > 0$) for this to work.

The ground state is the state annihilated by all the annihilation operators $a^i(k), b_\alpha(k)$ and, in the case $S > 0$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
b_D|0\rangle &= 0 \quad \text{if } \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) > 0, \\
b_D^\dagger|0\rangle &= 0 \quad \text{if } \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) < 0.
\end{aligned}
\tag{6.76}
$$

This is because the decaying mode contributes to the total Hamiltonian by

$$
H_D = \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)[b_D^\dagger, b_D].
$$

which has value $-\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)$ (*resp.* $+\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)$) for the state annihilated by b_D (*resp.* $b_D^\dagger$). The energy gap to the first excited state is M for $S \leq 0$ and is $|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|$ for $S > 0$ from the decaying modes of ϕ and b. It vanishes at $\sigma = i|\sigma|$ where the decaying modes become zero modes. In particular, the ground states are two-fold degenerate and non-normalizable.

We can easily obtain the energy (density) and the charge (density) of the vacuum — we simply use the result of the $L \to \infty$ limit of the finite interval theory:

$$
\begin{aligned}
E &= -\frac{\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{2\pi}\left[\log\left(\frac{2\Lambda}{|\sigma|}\right) + 1\right] + |\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|\left[\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{2\pi}\arctan\left(\frac{\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|}\right)\right] \qquad (6.77) \\
&\left(\mathcal{E}(x) = -\frac{1}{\pi}\int_M^\infty \mathrm{d}K \sqrt{K^2 - M^2}\,\frac{K}{K - S}\,\mathrm{e}^{2Kx} \qquad x < 0 \ \text{ strictly}\right), \\
Q &= -\mathrm{sgn}(\mathrm{Re}(\sigma))\left[\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{2\pi}\arctan\left(\frac{\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|}\right)\right] \qquad (6.78) \\
&\left(\rho(x) = -\frac{\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)}{\pi}\int_M^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}K}{\sqrt{K^2 - M^2}}\,\frac{K}{K - S}\,\mathrm{e}^{2Kx} \qquad x < 0 \ \text{ strictly}\right).
\end{aligned}
$$

The formula (6.77) agrees with the result obtained in [65]. Alternatively, one can find these results independently of the finite interval computation, directly from the above mode expansions. Then, we can learn about the finite interval theory. In particular, we can reproduce all of the results on the energy (density) and charge (density) at least for the case L is very large.

6.8 Cases With Several Matters

Let us record the results for the case where we have n matter fields with charges $Q_1, ..., Q_n$. We just have to sum the results for the single field cases with $M = |Q_i\sigma|$, $S = \mathrm{Im}(Q_i\sigma)$.

If the theory is formulated on the half space (6.67), the energy and the charge are localized near the boundary, and the totals are

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \frac{1}{2\pi}\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left\{Q_i\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)\left[\log\left(\frac{|Q_i\sigma|}{2\Lambda}\right)-1\right]+Q_i|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|\arctan\left(\frac{\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|}\right)+\frac{|Q_i|}{4}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|\right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi}\mathrm{Im}\left\{\sum_{i=1}^{n}Q_i\sigma\left[\log\left(\frac{Q_i\sigma}{2\Lambda}\right)-1\right]\right\}+\sum_{i=1}^{n}\frac{|Q_i|}{4}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|, \qquad (6.79) \\ Q &= -\frac{\mathrm{sgnRe}(\sigma)}{2\pi}\sum_{i=1}^{n}Q_i\arctan\left(\frac{\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|}\right)-\sum_{i=1}^{n}\frac{|Q_i|}{4}\mathrm{sgnRe}(\sigma), \qquad (6.80) \end{aligned}$$

where "arctan" is assumed to take values between $-\frac{\pi}{2}$ and $\frac{\pi}{2}$.

If formulated on the interval, the energy and the charge are localized near the two boundaries. The ones at the right boundary, $x = L$, are the same as on the half space, (6.79) and (6.80), for both NS and Ramond sectors. The ones at the left boundary, $x = 0$, depend on the sector. In the NS sector, the energy is the same while the charge is opposite, in comparison to (6.79) and (6.80). In the Ramond sector, the energy and the charge are opposite to (6.79) and (6.80) except the last terms involving the $|Q_i|$'s. The total energy and charge are the sum of those localized ones:

$$E_{\mathrm{R\,vac}} = \sum_{i=1}^{n}\frac{|Q_i|}{2}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|, \qquad Q_{\mathrm{R\,vac}} = -\sum_{i=1}^{n}\frac{|Q_i|}{2}\mathrm{sgn}(\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)), \qquad (6.81)$$

$$E_{\mathrm{NS\,vac}} = 2E, \qquad Q_{\mathrm{NS\,vac}} = 0. \qquad (6.82)$$

Assuming the Calabi-Yau condition

$$\sum_{Q_i>0}Q_i = -\sum_{Q_i<0}Q_i =: \mathcal{S},$$

the above formulae simplify, in particular

$$E = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sum_{i=1}^{n}Q_i\log|Q_i|\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)+\frac{\mathcal{S}}{2}|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|, \qquad (6.83)$$

$$Q = -\mathrm{sgnRe}(\sigma)\frac{\mathcal{S}}{2}. \qquad (6.84)$$

6.9 Gauge Dynamics

So far, we have set all the fields in the gauge multiplet zero, except the constant mode of the scalar component σ. If we want to obtain the effective potential for σ we need to integrate out the gauge field and the auxiliary field.

Let us consider the system on the interval $0 \le x \le L$ with charges q_l and q_r on the left and the right boundaries respectively. The Lagrangian is given by

$$L = \int_0^L \mathrm{d}x \left\{ \frac{1}{2e^2}(v_{01}^2 + D^2) + \frac{\theta}{2\pi} v_{01} \right\} - q_r v_0 \Big|_{x=L} + q_l v_0 \Big|_{x=0} + L_{\text{matter}} \tag{6.85}$$

where L_{matter} is the matter sector Lagrangian — in the case of a single chiral multiplet with charge 1, it is the sum of the bulk part (6.1) and the boundary parts (6.2), (6.4). Integrating out the auxiliary field D simply produces the D-term potential

$$U_D = \frac{e^2}{2} \left(|\phi|^2 - r \right)^2 .$$

When we quantize a gauge theory in operator formalism, it is best to switch to the canonical formulation. The action in the canonical formulation is given by (see e.g. [66])

$$\begin{aligned} S &= \int \mathrm{d}t \int_0^L \mathrm{d}x \left\{ \frac{1}{e^2}(\partial_0 v_1 - \partial_1 v_0) E_1 - \frac{1}{2e^2}(E_1)^2 - v_0 j^0 + \frac{\theta}{2\pi}(\partial_0 v_1 - \partial_1 v_0) \right\} \\ &\quad - \int \left(q_r v_0 \Big|_{x=L} - q_l v_0 \Big|_{x=0} \right) \mathrm{d}t + S_{\text{matter}}, \end{aligned} \tag{6.86}$$

where j^0 is the charge density

$$j^0 = i\overline{\phi}\pi_{\overline{\phi}} - i\phi\pi_\phi + \overline{\psi}_-\psi_- + \overline{\psi}_+\psi_+, \tag{6.87}$$

and S_{matter} is the matter action

$$\begin{aligned} S_{\text{matter}} &= \int \mathrm{d}t \int_0^L \mathrm{d}x \Big\{ \pi_\phi \dot{\phi} + \pi_{\overline{\phi}} \dot{\overline{\phi}} - |\pi_\phi|^2 - |D_1\phi|^2 - |\sigma|^2|\phi|^2 - U_D \\ &\qquad + i\overline{\psi}_-(\partial_0 - \overleftrightarrow{D_1})\psi_- + i\overline{\psi}_+(\partial_0 - \overleftrightarrow{D_1})\psi_+ - \overline{\psi}_-\sigma\psi_+ - \overline{\psi}_+\overline{\sigma}\psi_- \Big\} \\ &\quad + \text{boundary terms, (6.2) + (6.4).} \end{aligned} \tag{6.88}$$

It is easy to see that we get back the system with the Lagrangian (6.85) after integrating out E_1, π_ϕ, $\pi_{\overline{\phi}}$. On the other hand, in the Hamiltonian formulation, they play the role of conjugate momenta for v_1, ϕ and $\overline{\phi}$. ($i\overline{\psi}_\pm$ are conjugate momenta for $\psi_\pm$). v_0 is a non-dynamical variable and imposes the Gauss law constraints.

We choose the boundary condition such that v_0 is allowed to vary at the boundary. The Gauss law constraints are then

$$\frac{1}{e^2}\partial_1 E_1 = j^0 \qquad \text{(in the bulk)}, \tag{6.89}$$

$$\frac{1}{e^2}E_1 + \frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q_r = 0 \qquad \text{(on the right boundary)} \quad \text{and}, \tag{6.90}$$

$$\frac{1}{e^2}E_1 + \frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q_l = 0 \qquad \text{(on the left boundary)}. \tag{6.91}$$

They can be solved by

$$\frac{1}{e^2}E_1(x) = -\left(\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q_l\right) + \int_0^x j^0(x')\mathrm{d}x' \stackrel{\text{or}}{=} -\left(\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q_r\right) + \int_L^x j^0(x')\mathrm{d}x'$$

which is consistent if and only if the following condition is satisfied:

$$Q = \int_0^L j^0(x')\mathrm{d}x' = q_l - q_r. \tag{6.92}$$

For a given pair of Chan-Paton charges, this is the condition on the state of the matter system: the charge of that state must agree with the difference of the Chan-Paton charges at the left and the right boundaries.

The Hamiltonian density of the total system, with the gauge condition $v_1 = 0$, is given by

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{H}(x) &= \frac{1}{2e^2}E_1(x)^2 + U_D(\phi) + \mathcal{H}_{\text{matter}}(x) \\ &= \frac{e^2}{2}\left(\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q_l - \int_0^x j^0(x')\mathrm{d}x'\right)^2 + \frac{e^2}{2}\Big(|\phi(x)|^2 - r\Big)^2 + \mathcal{H}_{\text{matter}}(x)\end{aligned} \tag{6.93}$$

where $\mathcal{H}_{\text{matter}}$ is the Hamiltonian density of the matter sector. The task is to find the ground state of the Hamiltonian $\int_0^L \mathcal{H}(x)\mathrm{d}x$ and its energy. This is a hard problem. An exception is the case of a Dirac fermion with $\sigma = 0$ (massless Schwinger model) where the diagonalization can be done exactly. For the massive model, there are various approximation methods to treat this problem depending on the range of parameters, such as the relation of the gauge coupling constant e and the mass $|\sigma|$ of the matter fields. See for example [57]. Although this is a very interesting problem in its own right, we do not develop a thorough study in the present paper.

Instead, we take just one approximation method, which leads to the following answer for the energy density of the ground state:

$$\mathcal{E}_{\text{vac}}(x) = \frac{e^2}{2}\left(\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q_l - \int_0^x \langle j^0(x')\rangle \mathrm{d}x'\right)^2 + \frac{e^2}{2}\Big(\langle|\phi(x)|^2\rangle - r\Big)^2 + \mathcal{E}_{\text{vac}}^{\text{matter}}(x). \tag{6.94}$$

In the above expression, $\langle \mathcal{O}(x) \rangle$ stands for the expectation value with respect to the ground state $|0\rangle$ of the matter sector, $\langle 0|\mathcal{O}(x)|0\rangle$. Note that $\langle j^0(x)\rangle$ is the charge density $\rho(x)$ which we have computed in Section 6.5. Also, $\mathcal{E}_{\rm vac}^{\rm matter}(x)$ in (6.94) is the energy density of the ground state in the matter sector, which was obtained in Sections 6.4.2 and 6.7.

Let us describe the origin of (6.94) and estimate the error. The exact answer would be obtained by integrating out the matter fields as well as the fields v_μ and D, in a fixed background of σ. One way to perform this is to first integrate out the matter fields for a fixed general profile for $v_\mu(x)$ and $D(x)$, and then integrate out the latter. At the first step, we may treat the coupling $-v_0(x)j^0(x) + D(x)|\phi(x)|^2$ perturbatively and keep only the first order terms, that is, repace it with $-v_0(x)\langle j^0(x)\rangle + D(x)\langle|\phi(x)|^2\rangle$. This is the approximation that leads to (6.94). The discarded part starts with terms of the form

$$L\frac{v_{01}^2}{\Delta E}, \qquad L\frac{D^2}{\Delta E},$$

where ΔE is the energy gap between the ground state and the first excited state. The rest are of higher order in v_{01} and D. These errrors shift the gauge coupling as

$$\frac{1}{e^2} \longrightarrow \frac{1}{e^2} + \text{constant} \cdot \frac{L}{\Delta E}.$$

As long as the shift is small compared to $1/e^2$, we may say that (6.94) is a valid approximation, with an error given by power series in $\frac{e^2 L}{\Delta E}$. Recall that the energy gap is of the order of the real part of σ, $\Delta E \sim |\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|$, provided the imaginary part is positive, $\mathrm{Im}(\sigma) > 0$, in the NS sector, and for any case in the Ramond sector. In such a case, the condition for the validity of (6.94) is

$$|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)| \gg e^2 L. \tag{6.95}$$

This is in addition to the condition $|\sigma| \gg e$ which is already assumed in the bulk theory. In Section 7.4, we will obtain the same condition from a different perspective.

The gap $\Delta E \sim |\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|$ in the matter sector comes from the exponential modes (the deacying modes) localized near the boundary. Recall that they become the zero modes or unstable modes when $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)$ vanishes. In such a case, the whole idea of the effective action for the vector multiplet breaks down. We must treat those modes on the same footing as the vector multiplet fields. For example, we may integrate out the oscillating modes only, leaving the decaying modes dynamical. Then (6.94) is a Hamiltonian density operator that involves the decaying modes and the σ fields. Note that we no longer have

an unstable potential for the decaying modes in such a treatment. Although this problem is important and interesting on its own right, we do not attempt to solve it here.

Thus, let us assume (6.95). Even in such a case, one may still wonder if the expression (6.94) makes sense, since $\rho(x) = \langle j^0(x) \rangle$ as well as $\langle |\phi(x)|^2 \rangle$ diverges at the boundary and their squares may be dangerous. To examine this and also to find how the answer bahaves as a function of σ, let us compute the total of the electrostatic and D-term energies. This is enough to see whether there is a problem locally, since these two terms are positive semi-definite.

Let us first compute it in the Ramond sector. The mode expansion leads to the expression

$$\langle |\phi(x)|^2 \rangle = \sum_n \frac{1}{L} \frac{f_n(x)^2}{\sqrt{M^2 + k_n}^2}.$$

Using this we find that the energy from the D-term potential is

$$\begin{aligned} E_D &= \frac{e^2}{2} L \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2L\sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}} - r(\Lambda) \right)^2 \\ &\quad + \frac{e^2}{4} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{4L(M^2 + k_n^2)} - \frac{S^2}{L|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|\sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}(k_n^2 + S^2)} \right) \\ &\quad + \frac{e^2 S}{8\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)^2} \left(\frac{1}{\tanh(SL)} - \frac{1}{SL} \right), \end{aligned} \tag{6.96}$$

where it is understood that $k_0^2 = -S^2$ so that $\sqrt{M^2 + k_0^2} = |\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|$. Also, using the expression (6.52) for $\langle j^0(x') \rangle = \rho_R(x')$, we find that the electrostatic energy is

$$\begin{aligned} E_{es} &= \frac{e^2}{2} L \left(\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q_l + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) S}{2L\sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}(k_n^2 + S^2)} + \frac{\mathrm{sgnRe}(\sigma)}{4} \left(\frac{2}{1 - \mathrm{e}^{2SL}} + \frac{1}{SL} \right) \right)^2 \\ &\quad \frac{e^2}{8} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)^2}{2L(M^2 + k_n^2)(k_n^2 + S^2)} - \frac{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|}{L\sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}(k_n^2 + S^2)} \right) \\ &\quad + \frac{e^2}{32S} \left(\frac{1}{\tanh(SL)} - \frac{1}{SL} \right). \end{aligned} \tag{6.97}$$

Despite its appearance, this is continuous at $S = 0$, with

$$\begin{aligned} E_D &\overset{S=0}{=} \frac{e^2}{2} L \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2L\sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}} - r(\Lambda) \right)^2 + \frac{e^2}{16} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{L(M^2 + k_n^2)}, \\ E_{es} &\overset{S=0}{=} \frac{e^2}{2} L \left(\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q_l + \frac{1}{4}\mathrm{sgnRe}(\sigma) \right)^2 + \frac{e^2}{16} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{k_n^2}{L(k_n^2 + M^2)(\sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2} + M)^2}. \end{aligned}$$

To obtain the last expression, we have used the formula

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} = \frac{\pi^2}{6}.$$

The behaviour at large L is

$$\begin{aligned} E_D &= \frac{e^2}{2} L \left(\frac{1}{2\pi} \log \left(\frac{2\Lambda}{|\sigma|} \right) - r(\Lambda) \right)^2 + \frac{e^2}{32|\sigma|} + \frac{e^2 \mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{4\pi \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)^2} \arctan \left(\frac{\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|} \right), \\ E_{es} &= \frac{e^2}{2} L \left(\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q_l - Q_{x\sim 0} \right)^2 - \frac{e^2}{32|\sigma|} + \frac{e^2}{8\pi \mathrm{Im}(\sigma)} \arctan \left(\frac{\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Here $Q_{x\sim 0}$ is the charge localized near the left boundary (6.55). The result is regular everywhere away from the locus $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) = 0$ which we excluded by (6.95). The quantity inside the parenthesis in the extensive part $\frac{e^2}{2} L (\cdots)^2$ should be defined as the series that appears in the first expressions (6.96), (6.97) — an error of order $1/L$ there would affect the non-extensive part. Note that it is finite as the cut-off is removed, since the FI parameter depends on it as $r(\Lambda) = r(\mu) + \frac{1}{2\pi} \log \left(\frac{\Lambda}{\mu} \right)$. The sum of the D-term and electrostatic energies, $E_{D,es} = E_{es} + E_D$, is thus

$$E_{D,es} = \frac{e^2}{2} L |t_{\mathit{eff}}|^2 + \frac{e^2}{8\pi} \left(\frac{2\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)^2} + \frac{1}{\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)} \right) \arctan \left(\frac{\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|} \right), \tag{6.98}$$

where

$$t_{\mathit{eff}} = r(\Lambda) - \frac{1}{2\pi} \log \left(\frac{2\Lambda}{|\sigma|} \right) - i \left[\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q_l - Q_{x\sim 0} \right] + O(1/L).$$

Let us next write down the result for the NS sector. We have to treat the three cases, $S > 0$, $S = 0$ and $S < 0$, separately. The main point is that it is continuous at $S = 0$, with

$$\begin{aligned} E_D &\overset{S=0}{=} \frac{e^2}{2} L \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2L\sqrt{M^2 + k_n^2}} - r(\Lambda) \right)^2 + \frac{e^2}{16} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{L(M^2 + k_n^2)} \\ E_{es} &\overset{S=0}{=} \frac{e^2}{2} L \left(\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q_l - \mathrm{sgnRe}(\sigma) \left[\frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{L} I \right] \right)^2 + \frac{e^2}{16} \sum_{r}^{\infty} \frac{k_r^2}{L(k_r^2 + M^2)(\sqrt{M^2 + k_r^2} + M)^2} \end{aligned}$$

with

$$I := \sum_r \frac{1}{2L\sqrt{M^2 + k_r^2}(\sqrt{M^2 + k_r^2} + M)}.$$

To obtain this, we used the formula

$$\sum_{r = \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}, \ldots} \frac{1}{r^2} = \frac{\pi^2}{2}.$$

The behaviour at large L for the general value of $S = \mathrm{Im}(\sigma)$ is

$$\begin{aligned} E_D &= \frac{e^2}{2} L \left(\frac{1}{2\pi} \log\left(\frac{2\Lambda}{|\sigma|}\right) - r(\Lambda) \right)^2 + \frac{e^2}{32|\sigma|} + \frac{e^2 \mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)^2} Q_{x\sim 0}^2, \\ E_{es} &= \frac{e^2}{2} L \left(\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q_l - Q_{x\sim 0} \right)^2 - \frac{e^2}{32|\sigma|} + \frac{e^2}{2\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)} \left[Q_{x\sim 0}^2 - \frac{1}{16} \right], \end{aligned}$$

where $Q_{\sim 0}$ is the localized charge given now by (6.61). The result is regular everywhere away from the excluded locus $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) = 0$. The sum of them is

$$E_{D,es} = \frac{e^2}{2} L |t_{eff}|^2 + \frac{e^2}{2} \left[\left(\frac{2\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)}{\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)^2} + \frac{1}{\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)} \right) Q_{x\sim 0}^2 - \frac{1}{16\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)} \right], \tag{6.99}$$

where t_{eff} is as in the Ramond sector, with $Q_{x\sim 0}$ from (6.61).

The main conclusion of these computations is that, in both R and NS sectors, the D-term and electrostatic energy of the ground state behaves as

$$E_{D,es} = \frac{e^2}{2} L |t_{eff}|^2 + \frac{e^2}{|\sigma|} A. \tag{6.100}$$

A is a function of $\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)/\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)$, independent of L, which is regular everywhere except $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) \to 0$. This also holds in the theory with multiple fields of various charges.

This concludes that there is no danger from taking the square of a quantity that diverges at the boundary. Furthermore, we see that the dominant part of the vacuum energy, for large σ with a fixed L, is the localized energy from the matter sector which grows linearly with σ. Compare (6.100) with the expressions obtained in earlier subsections, for example (6.79).

An Anomaly

Although it is not directly relevant for the main discussion of this paper, we would like to comment on an anomaly in the Ramond sector that comes from the Gauss law constraint. We consider a $U(1)$ gauge theory with n matter fields of charges $Q_1, \ldots, Q_n$, which we assume integers with $\mathrm{q.c.d.}(Q_i) = 1$.

The Gauss law implies that the total charge Q of the state in the matter sector must match the difference of the charges q_l and q_r which we place on the two boundaries, (6.92). We usually take both q_l and q_r to be integers, and hecne Q must be an integer. The total charge of a state in the matter sector is an integer plus the charge of the ground state. In the NS sector, we found that the charge of the ground state vanishes, see (6.82). Thus,

the charges of all states are integers. In the Ramond sector, on the other hand, the charge of the ground state is obtained in (6.82), from which we conclude that the charges of all states are $\sum_{i=1}^{n} Q_i/2$ modulo integers. Thus, we find a conflict with the Gauss law when

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} Q_i \quad \text{is odd.} \tag{6.101}$$

In the context of linear sigma models, this is precisely the case when the corresponding toric variety is not a spin manifold. In an open string Ramond sector of the non-linear sigma model, we need to have a spin structure of the target space in order to quantize the fermionic zero modes. The above anomaly is understood as the Coulomb branch counterpart of this. There is of course no problem when the Calabi-Yau condition is assumed, $\sum_{i=1}^{n} Q_i = 0$.

6.10 Mass From Superpotential

We now turn to a different system: the LG model of two variables U, V with superpotential

$$W = 2MUV$$

where M is taken to be real positive. We also consider a D-brane correponding to the matrix factorization

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sqrt{2M}u \\ \sqrt{2M}v & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We may regard this as a part of the matter sector of a $U(1)$ gauge theory in which U and V have charges -1 and 1. If we write the matrix as $Q = \sqrt{2M}(u\eta + v\overline{\eta})$, then η and $\overline{\eta}$ have gauge charges 1 and -1 respectively. In this section we study the property of the ground state of the open string whose both ends have the brane Q. In particular, we are interested in the energy and charge density of the ground state, especially in the limit where the length L of the string is taken to be very large.

Before doing any computation, we already know quite a lot about the ground state. First of all, there is just one chiral ring element proportional to the identity

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{6.102}$$

Thus, by the spectral flow, we know that there is a unique supersymmetric ground state. In particular the ground state energy is zero

$$E_{\text{vac}} = 0.$$

At this point we recall that any quantum field theory formulated on a compact space, such as the interval $[0, L]$ we are considering, behaves like quantum mechanics. In particular, any symmetry present in the system cannot be spontaneously broken by the ground state $|0\rangle$. In the present open string system, there are two symmeties in sight. One is the $U(1)$ charge symmetry (under which U, V has charge $-1, 1$). The other is the parity symmetry $x \to L - x$ that swaps the left and the right boundaries. That the $U(1)$ symmetry is unbroken means that the ground state has charge zero:

$$Q_{\rm vac} = 0.$$

That the parity symmetry is unbroken means that the energy and charge density of the ground state is symmetric under $x \to L - x$:

$$\mathcal{E}(x) = \mathcal{E}(L - x), \qquad \rho(x) = \rho(L - x).$$

Finally, one more important fact is that the bulk theory has a mass gap. This in particular means that any local observable $\mathcal{O}(x)$ approaches the value of the bulk vacuum when it is *far enough* from the boundary, that is, when $1/M \ll x \ll L - 1/M$. In particular we expect

$$\mathcal{E}(x) \longrightarrow 0, \quad \rho(x) \longrightarrow 0$$

in that regime. Namely $\mathcal{E}(x)$ and $\rho(x)$ might have a non-trivial profile but that is confined in a region of width $1/M$ near the two boundaries. Moreover, the parity symmetry as well as $E_{\rm vac} = Q_{\rm vac} = 0$ tell us that the total energy and the charge accumulated near each of the boundaries vanish. Thus, for a long distance observer, it looks as if the energy and the charge density identically vanishes without any delta function support at the boundaries. In what follows, we confirm this expectation by an explicit computation.

The system (6.1) we considered in the bulk part of this section does not have the parity symmetry $x \to L - x$. To be precise, there would be a parity symmetry only when it is combined with a sign flip of of σ and a complex conjugation of ϕ and ψ. Thus, the energy and charge densities are not symmetric under the parity but only so when the appropriate operation is applied.

Explcit quantization of a related system had been done in [50] and later also in [33]. These works studied the Dirichlet boundary condition $U = 0$ in the same bulk theory. That brane can be obtained from the above matrix factorization by replacing $\sqrt{2M}u$, $\sqrt{2M}v$ by $\zeta\sqrt{2M}u$, $\zeta^{-1}\sqrt{2M}v$ and taking the limit $\zeta \to \infty$.

6.10.1 The Ground State

The Lagrangian of the open string system reads as

$$\begin{aligned} L &= \int_0^L \Big[|\dot{u}|^2 - |u'|^2 + |\dot{v}|^2 - |v'|^2 - M^2|u|^2 - M^2|v|^2 \\ &\qquad + i\overline{\psi}^u_-(\overleftrightarrow{\partial_t} + \overleftrightarrow{\partial_x})\psi^u_- + i\overline{\psi}^u_+(\overleftrightarrow{\partial_t} - \overleftrightarrow{\partial_x})\psi^u_+ \\ &\qquad + i\overline{\psi}^v_-(\overleftrightarrow{\partial_t} + \overleftrightarrow{\partial_x})\psi^v_- + i\overline{\psi}^v_+(\overleftrightarrow{\partial_t} - \overleftrightarrow{\partial_x})\psi^v_+ \\ &\qquad - iM(\psi^u_+\psi^v_- + \psi^v_+\psi^u_-) + iM(\overline{\psi}^v_-\overline{\psi}^u_+ + \overline{\psi}^u_-\overline{\psi}^v_+) \Big] \mathrm{d}x \\ &\quad + \left[-\frac{i}{2}(\psi^u_+\overline{\psi}^u_- + \overline{\psi}^u_+\psi^u_-) - \frac{i}{2}(\psi^v_+\overline{\psi}^v_- + \overline{\psi}^v_+\psi^v_-) \right]_0^L \\ &\quad + \Big[i\overline{\eta}_L\dot{\eta}_L + \sqrt{2M}\mathrm{Re}(\psi^u\eta_L + \psi^v\overline{\eta}_L) - M|u|^2 - M|v|^2 \Big]_{x=L} \\ &\quad - \Big[i\overline{\eta}_0\dot{\eta}_0 + \sqrt{2M}\mathrm{Re}(\psi^u\eta_0 + \psi^v\overline{\eta}_0) + M|u|^2 + M|v|^2 \Big]_{x=0} \end{aligned} \tag{6.103}$$

Note that the boundary fermions $\eta_0, \overline{\eta}_0$ have the opposite orientation of time. In particular, they have the "wrong" sign kinetic term and obey the non-standard hermiticity relation

$$\eta_0^\dagger = -\overline{\eta}_0,$$

with respect to the standard orientation of time.

We take the standard supersymmetric Neumann condition for the bulk fields:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \partial_1 u = \partial_1 v = 0, \\ \psi^u_+ - \psi^u_- = \psi^v_+ - \psi^v_- = 0, \\ \partial_1(\psi^u_+ + \psi^u_-) = \partial_1(\psi^v_+ + \psi^v_-) = 0, \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \text{at both } x = 0, L. \tag{6.104}$$

Note that this does not agree with the one coming from the variational principle. For example, the condition on u from the variational principle would be

$$\partial_1 u + Mu = 0 \ \text{ at } x = L; \quad \partial_1 u - Mu = 0 \ \text{ at } x = 0,$$

but we take the Neumann condition $\partial_1 u = 0$ at both boundaries. However, we will find no problem in quantization. In fact, the boundary conditions from the variational principle will show up in an interesting way.

This system has $U(1)$ symmetry: $u, \psi^u_\pm, \overline{\eta}_L, \overline{\eta}_0$ has charge -1 and $v, \psi^v_\pm, \eta_L, \eta_0$ has charge 1. There is also a parity symmetry

$$\begin{aligned}
&u(x) \to iu(L-x), \quad v(x) \to iv(L-x),\\
&\psi^u_\pm(x) \to i\psi^u_\mp(L-x), \quad \psi^v_\pm(x) \to i\psi^v_\mp(L-x),\\
&\eta_L \to i\eta_0, \quad \overline{\eta}_L \to i\overline{\eta}_0, \quad \eta_0 \to i\eta_L, \quad \overline{\eta}_0 \to i\overline{\eta}_L,
\end{aligned}$$

that commutes with the $U(1)$ symmetry.

The action is quadratic in all fields and the quantization is straightforward provided we find a clever choice of variables. The bosonic part is a decoupled sum of four copies (two from u and two from v) of the real scalar field ϕ with Lagrangian

$$L_B = \frac{1}{2}(\dot\phi, \dot\phi) - \frac{1}{2}(\phi, \mathcal{D}_B\phi)$$

where $(\phi_1, \phi_2) := \int_0^L \mathrm{d}x \phi_1(x)^* \phi_2(x)$ and

$$\mathcal{D}_B = -\partial_1^2 + M^2 + M\delta(x-L) + M\delta(x). \tag{6.105}$$

The fermionic system decomposes into two sectors. Let us take the linear combination $\psi^\pm_\alpha = (\psi^v_\alpha \pm \overline{\psi}^u_\alpha)/\sqrt{2}$ where $\alpha = \pm$ is the spinor index and then introduce

$$\Psi^+ = \begin{pmatrix} b^+ \\ c^+ \\ \eta_0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \Psi^- = \begin{pmatrix} b^- \\ c^- \\ \eta_L \end{pmatrix},$$

for $b^\pm := (\psi^\pm_- + \psi^\pm_+)/\sqrt{2}$, $c^\pm := (\psi^\pm_- - \psi^\pm_+)/\sqrt{2}$. The Lagrangian can be written as

$$L_F = i(\Psi^+, \dot\Psi^+) + i(\Psi^-, \dot\Psi^-) - (\Psi^+, \mathcal{D}^+\Psi^+) - (\Psi^-, \mathcal{D}^-\Psi^-)$$

where $(\Psi_1, \Psi_2) := \int_0^L \mathrm{d}x (b_1(x)^\dagger b_2(x) + c_1(x)^\dagger c_2(x)) + \eta_1^\dagger \eta_2$ and

$$\mathcal{D}^+ = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i\partial_1 + iM & \sqrt{2M}\delta(x) \\ -i\partial_1 - iM & 0 & 0 \\ \sqrt{2M}\mathrm{ev}_0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{6.106}$$

$$\mathcal{D}^- = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i\partial_1 - iM & \sqrt{2M}\delta(x-L) \\ -i\partial_1 + iM & 0 & 0 \\ \sqrt{2M}\mathrm{ev}_L & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{6.107}$$

Here ev_* is the evaluation map, $\mathrm{ev}_L b = b(L)$ and $\mathrm{ev}_0 b = b(0)$.

The kinetic operators $\mathcal{D}_B$, $\mathcal{D}^\pm$ are hermitian operators in the space of functions defined by (6.104): Neumann for $u, v, b^\pm$ and Dirichlet for $c^\pm$. Thus, they have eigenvectors with real eingenvalues. Let us diagonalize these operators. To this end, we introduce projection operators onto Neumann and Dirichlet functions

$$(P_c f)(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n(x)(c_n, f), \qquad (P_s f)(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} s_n(x)(s_n, f),$$

where $c_0(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{L}}$, $c_n(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}}\cos(\frac{\pi n x}{L})$ and $s_n(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}}\sin(\frac{\pi n x}{L})$. They obey the following relations

$$(P_c f)'(x) = (P_s f')(x), \tag{6.108}$$

$$(P_s f)'(x) = (P_c f')(x) - \delta(x-L)f(L) + \delta(x)f(0), \tag{6.109}$$

$$P_c P_s P_c = P_c. \tag{6.110}$$

Using the first two, we find

$$\mathcal{D}_B P_c f = P_c(-f'' + M^2 f) + \delta(x-L)(f' + Mf) - \delta(x)(f' - Mf).$$

Thus, if f obeys the boundary condition

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) + Mf(x) &= 0 \quad \text{at } x = L \\ f'(x) - Mf(x) &= 0 \quad \text{at } x = 0, \end{aligned} \tag{6.111}$$

$\mathcal{D}_B$ is simply represented by $-f'' + M^2 f$. At this point, we notice that this boundary condition for f is precisely the same as the boundary condition for the boson in the system considered earlier: the NS condition (6.7) for ϕ with $S = -M$. In particular, for a plane wave $f(x) = a\sin(kx) + b\cos(kx)$ the allowed wavenumbers k are determined by the equation (6.15) with $S = -M$. As before we denote the solutions by k_n, $n = 0, 1, 2, ...$, which approach $\frac{\pi n}{L}$ as $n \to \infty$.

For the fermion $\Psi = (P_c f, P_s g, \beta)$, the equations $\mathcal{D}^\pm \Psi = \lambda \Psi$ both lead to

$$P_c(-f'' + M^2 f) + \delta(x-L)(f' + Mf) - \delta(x)(f' - Mf) = \lambda^2 P_c f.$$

This can be obtained by eliminating $P_s g$ and η from the three equations and using (6.108) (6.109) and (6.110). Again we find the standard eingenvalue problem $-f'' + M^2 f = \lambda^2 f$ provided f obeys the boundary condition (6.111). In particular, we have plane wave solutions with eigenvalue $\lambda = \pm\sqrt{k_n^2 + M^2}$, where k_n solves (6.15) with $S = -M$.

Normalized modes are given as follows: For bosons, we have

$$h_n(x) = \alpha_n(P_c f_n)(x), \qquad \mathcal{D}_B = k_n^2 + M^2 \tag{6.112}$$

and for fermions

$$\Psi^+_{n,\pm}(x) = \frac{\alpha_n}{\sqrt{L}} \begin{pmatrix} (P_c f_n)(x) \\ \pm i(-1)^n (P_s g_n)(x-L) \\ \pm \frac{\sqrt{2M}k_n}{k_n^2+M^2} \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathcal{D}^+ = \pm\sqrt{k_n^2+M^2}, \tag{6.113}$$

$$\Psi^-_{n,\pm}(x) = \frac{\alpha_n}{\sqrt{L}} \begin{pmatrix} (P_c f_n)(x) \\ \pm i(P_s g_n)(x) \\ \pm(-1)^n \frac{\sqrt{2M}k_n}{k_n^2+M^2} \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathcal{D}^- = \pm\sqrt{k_n^2+M^2}, \tag{6.114}$$

where

$$\alpha_n = \left(1+\tfrac{2M}{L(k_n^2+M^2)}\right)^{-\frac{1}{2}}, \quad f_n(x) = \frac{k_n\cos(k_n x)+M\sin(k_n x)}{\sqrt{k_n^2+M^2}}, \quad g_n(x) = \sin(k_n x).$$

Expanding the fields as

$$\phi^i(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \phi^i_n \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}} h_n(x), \quad i=1,2,3,4,$$
$$\Psi^\pm(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(b^\pm_{n,+}\Psi^\pm_{n,+}(x) + b^{\pm\,\dagger}_{n,-}\Psi^\pm_{n,-}(x)\right),$$

the Lagrangian can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} L \;=\; & \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\Bigg[\sum_{i=1}^{4}\left(\frac{1}{2}(\dot\phi^i_n)^2 - \frac{k_n^2+M^2}{2}(\phi^i_n)^2\right) \\ & + \sum_{\epsilon=\pm}\left(i b^{\epsilon\,\dagger}_{n,+}\dot b^\epsilon_{n,+} + i b^{\epsilon\,\dagger}_{n,-}\dot b^\epsilon_{n,-} - \sqrt{k_n^2+M^2}\, b^{\epsilon\,\dagger}_{n,+} b^\epsilon_{n,+} + \sqrt{k_n^2+M^2}\, b^\epsilon_{n,-} b^{\epsilon\,\dagger}_{n,-}\right)\Bigg]. \end{aligned}$$

The Hamiltonian is

$$H = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\left[\sum_{i=1}^{4}\sqrt{k_n^2+M^2}\left(a^{i\,\dagger}_n a^i_n + \frac{1}{2}\right) + \sum_{\epsilon,\alpha}\sqrt{k_n^2+M^2}\left(b^{\epsilon\,\dagger}_{n,\alpha} b^\epsilon_{n,\alpha} - \frac{1}{2}\right)\right], \tag{6.115}$$

where $a^{i\,\dagger}_n$, a^i_n, $b^{\epsilon\,\dagger}_{n,\alpha}$, $b^\epsilon_{n,\alpha}$ are the creation and annihilation operators obeying the standard (anti-)commutation relations. There is a unique ground state $|0\rangle$ characterized by

$$a^i_n|0\rangle = b^\epsilon_{n,\alpha}|0\rangle = 0.$$

Let us discuss the energy and its density of the ground state $|0\rangle$. The bosonic and fermionic contributions to the energy cancel at each level: $4\frac{\sqrt{k_n^2+M^2}}{2} - 4\frac{\sqrt{k_n^2+M^2}}{2} = 0$. Therefore the total energy of the ground state vanishes:

$$E_{\rm vac} = 0 \tag{6.116}$$

This is of course a consequence of supersymmetry. To find the energy density, let us introduce the notation

$$\left[\Psi_1(x)^\dagger \overset{x}{,}_* \Psi_2(x)\right] := [b_1(x)^\dagger, b_2(x)] + [c_1(x)^\dagger, c_2(x)] + \delta(x-x_*)[\eta_1^\dagger, \eta_2].$$

Then, the energy density operator can be written as

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{H}(x) &= \sum_{i=1}^{4}\left(\frac{1}{2}\dot{\phi}^i(x) + \frac{1}{2}\phi^i(x)\mathcal{D}_B\phi^i(x)\right) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2}\left[\Psi^-(x)^\dagger \overset{L}{,} \mathcal{D}^-\Psi^-(x)\right] + \frac{1}{2}\left[\Psi^+(x)^\dagger \overset{0}{,} \mathcal{D}^+\Psi^+(x)\right] \end{aligned} \tag{6.117}$$

The energy density of the ground state is

$$\begin{aligned}&\mathcal{E}(x) := \langle 0|\mathcal{H}(x)|0\rangle = \\ &\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{k_n^2+M^2}}{L}\alpha_n^2\left(2f_n(x)^2 - g_n(x)^2 - g_n(x-L)^2 - \frac{2Mk_n^2}{(k_n^2+M^2)^2}(\delta(x-L)+\delta(x))\right).\end{aligned} \tag{6.118}$$

It is indeed symmetric under $x \to L-x$, as one can see by using $f_n(L-x) = (-1)^n f_n(x)$.

Let us next discuss the $U(1)$ charge of the ground state. The charge density operator is defined by

$$\begin{aligned}j^0(x) &= \frac{i}{2}\{\overline{v}, \dot{v}\} - \frac{i}{2}\{v, \dot{\overline{v}}\} - \frac{i}{2}\{\overline{u}, \dot{u}\} + \frac{i}{2}\{u, \dot{\overline{u}}\} \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2}\left[\Psi^-(x)^\dagger \overset{L}{,} \Psi^-(x)\right] + \frac{1}{2}\left[\Psi^+(x)^\dagger \overset{0}{,} \Psi^+(x)\right].\end{aligned}$$

The total charge as well as its density of the ground state vanish

$$Q_{\rm vac} = 0, \tag{6.119}$$

$$\rho(x) := \langle 0|j^0(x)|0\rangle = 0. \tag{6.120}$$

This matches with the expectation.

6.10.2 $L \to \infty$ Limit

Let us look at the energy density in the limit where L is very large compared to $1/M$. We first look at the region close to the left boundary $x = 0$, that is, $0 \le x \ll L$. The formula (6.118) can be rewritten as

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}(x) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{\sqrt{k_n^2+M^2}}{L}\frac{2k_n^2\alpha_n^2}{(k_n^2+M^2)^2}\Big((k_n^2-M^2)\cos(2k_nx) + 2k_nM\sin(2k_nx) \\ &\qquad - M(\delta(x-L)+\delta(x))\Big).\end{aligned}$$

In the limit $L \to \infty$ the sum over n turns into integral over the momentum k. If x is close to but strictly away from $x = 0$, the contour of the integral can be deformed and we have

$$\mathcal{E}(x) = -2 \int_M^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}K}{\pi} \frac{\sqrt{K^2 - M^2} K^2}{(K+M)^2} \, \mathrm{e}^{-2Kx} \tag{6.121}$$

We see that it decays exponentially as e^{-2Mx} or faster. This is of course a consequence of the mass gap of the bulk theory. By the symmetry $x \to L - x$, we find the same behaviour near the right boundary $x = L$. Namely, the energy density is non-trivial only in the region of width $1/M$ near the two boundaries. Since the total energy vanishes (6.116), we learn that the energies localized near the left and the right boundaries vanish indivisually. Indeed that can be confirmed by a direct computation:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{x\sim 0} &:= \lim_{R\to\infty} \int_0^R \mathcal{E}(x) \mathrm{d}x \\ &= \lim_{R\to\infty} \int_0^\Lambda \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{\pi} \sqrt{k^2+M^2} \frac{k}{(k^2+M^2)^2} \Big((k^2 - M^2) \sin(2kR) + 2kM(1 - \cos(2kR)) \Big) \\ &\qquad - \int_0^\Lambda \frac{\mathrm{d}k}{\pi} \sqrt{k^2+M^2} \frac{2Mk^2}{(k^2+M^2)^2}. \end{aligned}$$

The last term comes from the delta function at $x = 0$ — the one at $x = L$ of course does not contribute. The two lines cancel out and we have $E_{x\sim 0} = 0$.

6.10.3 $L \to 0$ Limit

For completeness, let us consider the opposite regime, $ML \ll 1$. In the limit $ML \to 0$, the momenta k_n approach the standard value

$$k_n L \to \pi n, \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots.$$

In particular, the $n = 0$ mode approaches the constant mode while the $n \geq 1$ modes approach the standard plane wave modes $\cos(\frac{\pi n}{L} x), \sin(\frac{\pi n}{L} x)$, for $0 \leq x \leq L$. To be more precise, using the defining equation (6.15), we find that k_0 diverges as

$$k_0^2 \to \frac{2M}{L},$$

but it is still true that the mode approches a constant, $\cos(k_0 x) \to 1$ and $\sin(k_0 x) \to 0$, as long as x is in the interval $[0, L]$. Let us look at the ground state $|0\rangle$ in this zero mode sector.

In the limit $ML \ll 1$, the fermionic zero mode becomes

$$\Psi^+_{0,\pm}(x), \Psi^-_{0,\pm}(x) \longrightarrow \frac{1}{\sqrt{2L}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \pm\sqrt{L} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Thus, we can write $b^\epsilon = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2L}}(b^\epsilon_{0,+} + b^{\epsilon\,\dagger}_{0,-})$, $\eta_L = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(b^-_{0,+} - b^{-\,\dagger}_{0,-})$, $\eta_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(b^+_{0,+} - b^{+\,\dagger}_{0,-})$, Since the ground state $|0\rangle$ is annihilated by $b^\epsilon_{n,\alpha}$, it is annihilated by

$$b^- + \frac{1}{\sqrt{L}}\eta_L, \quad b^{-\dagger} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{L}}\eta_L^\dagger, \quad b^+ + \frac{1}{\sqrt{L}}\eta_0, \quad b^{+\dagger} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{L}}\eta_0^\dagger.$$

It follows that the zero mode ground state is of the form

$$|0\rangle^{\text{zero}} \propto \left(b^{+\dagger} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{L}}\eta_0^\dagger\right)\left(b^{-\dagger} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{L}}\eta_L^\dagger\right)|0\rangle_1,$$

where $|0\rangle_1$ is the state annihilated by η_0, η_L, b^+, b^- as well as the bosonic annihilation operators. (Note the normalization $\{b^{\epsilon_1}, b^{\epsilon_2\dagger}\} = \delta^{\epsilon_1,\epsilon_2}/\sqrt{L}$.) Recalling the definition of $b^\pm$, and using the matrix representation of η_L, η_0, etc,

$$\eta_L \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix},$$
$$\eta_0 \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} (-1)^a a & -(-1)^b b \\ -(-1)^c c & (-1)^d d \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

we find that the ground state is given by

$$|0\rangle^{\text{zero}} = \begin{pmatrix} |0\rangle' - \frac{L}{2}\overline{\psi}^v\overline{\psi}^u|0\rangle' & -\sqrt{L}\overline{\psi}^v|0\rangle' \\ \sqrt{L}\overline{\psi}^u|0\rangle' & |0\rangle' + \frac{L}{2}\overline{\psi}^v\overline{\psi}^u|0\rangle' \end{pmatrix}. \tag{6.122}$$

Here, $|0\rangle'$ is the state of the bulk zero mode sector that is annihilated by ψ^u, ψ^v as well as the bosonic annihilation operators. As a wave function of u, v, it is proportional to $\mathrm{e}^{-\sqrt{2ML}(|u|^2+|v|^2)}$. The state (6.122) is indeed annihilated by the zero mode supercharge

$$\begin{aligned} i\mathbf{Q}^{\text{zero}} &= \overline{\psi}^u\partial_{\overline{u}} + \overline{\psi}^v\partial_{\overline{v}} + \sqrt{2M}(\eta_L u + \overline{\eta}_L v) - \sqrt{2M}(\eta_0 u + \overline{\eta}_0 v), \\ i\mathbf{Q}^{\text{zero}\dagger} &= \psi^u\partial_u + \psi^v\partial_v - \sqrt{2M}(\overline{\eta}_L\overline{u} + \eta_L\overline{v}) - \sqrt{2M}(\overline{\eta}_0\overline{u} + \eta_0\overline{v}). \end{aligned}$$

Note the normalization $\{\psi^u, \overline{\psi}^u\} = \{\psi^v, \overline{\psi}^v\} = 2/L$. It indeed corresponds to (6.102):

$$|0\rangle^{\text{hol}} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

in the holomorphic truncation.

7 The Grade Restriction Rule

We now discuss the first main quantum effect of the linear sigma model with boundary. The goal of the paper is to construct parallel families of boundary interactions over the bulk of the Kähler moduli space, including in particular the boundaries between different phases. At each phase boundary, at least one $U(1)$ subgroup of the gauge group is unbroken, and the corresponding Coulomb branch has a bounded bulk potential which vanishes exactly at the singular point. The focus of study will be the behaviour of boundary interactions and boundary conditions on that Coulomb branch. This leads us to *the grade restriction rule* (or *the band restriction rule*), which classifies the Chan-Paton representation of the gauge group for the D-brane that can be transported across the phase boundary. This is the main result of this paper.

7.1 A-branes In LG-Models

The theory on the Coulomb branch is described in terms of the twisted chiral superfield $\Sigma = \overline{D}_+ D_- V$ and has a superpotential which is classically $\widetilde{W}(\Sigma) = -t\Sigma$. Note that B-type boundary conditions on twisted chiral superfields are like A-type boundary conditions on chiral superfields. To pave the way to discuss the boundary condition of bulk fields on the Coulomb branch, we briefly digress to reexamine the general requirement for A-branes in Landau-Ginzburg models. For simplicity, we consider the LG model of n chiral superfields spanning a flat Euclidean space $\mathbf{C}^n$, with some polynomial superpotential W.

It was argued in [7, 67] that an A-brane in a LG model is a Lagrangian submanifold whose image in the W-plane must be parallel to the real line, or equivalently

$$\mathrm{Im}\, W = \text{constant} \tag{7.1}$$

on the brane. It is definitely true that (7.1) must be satisfied as long as we use the standard bulk action without a boundary term and impose the standard D-brane boundary condition. By *the standard D-brane boundary condition* we mean Dirichlet on normal and Neumann on tangent coordinates along with the condition on fermions that follows from supersymmetry. However, the requirement (7.1) is relaxed if we modify the action by a suitable boundary interaction which leads to a non-standard boundary condition.

Let us first examine the $\mathcal{N} = 2_A$ supersymmetry of the boundary conditions themselves, which does not depend on the detail of the action. It is convenient to use the real components of the chiral superfields, $x^I, \psi_\pm^I, f^I$ $(I = 1, ..., 2n)$, which are related to the

complex ones as $\phi^i = x^{2i-1} + ix^{2i}$, $\psi_\pm^i = \psi_\pm^{2i-1} + i\psi_\pm^{2i}$, $F^i = -i(f^{2i-1} + if^{2i})$. We also introduce

$$N^I := \partial_1 x^I - f^I \qquad I = 1, \ldots, 2n,$$

in additon to $\psi^I = \psi_+^I + \psi_-^I$, $\widetilde{\psi}^I = \psi_+^I - \psi_-^I$. The variation of these component fields reads

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta x^I &= i\epsilon_1 \psi^I + i\epsilon_2 \mathcal{J}^I{}_J \widetilde{\psi}^J, \\
\delta \psi^I &= -2\epsilon_1 \dot{x}^I + 2\epsilon_2 \mathcal{J}^I{}_J N^J, \\
\delta \widetilde{\psi}^I &= -2\epsilon_1 N^I + 2\epsilon_2 \mathcal{J}^I{}_J \dot{x}^J, \\
\delta N^I &= i\epsilon_1 \dot{\widetilde{\psi}}^I + i\epsilon_2 \mathcal{J}^I{}_J \dot{\psi}^J,
\end{aligned} \tag{7.2}$$

where $\mathcal{J}^I{}_J$ is the complex structure (multiplication by $i = \sqrt{-1}$ written in real coordinate): $\mathcal{J}^{2i}_{2i-1} = -\mathcal{J}^{2i-1}_{2i} = 1$ and all other entries are zero. ϵ_1 is the parameter of the $\mathcal{N} = 1$ supersymmetry while ϵ_2 is the extension to $\mathcal{N} = 2_A$. We find an invariant set of boundary conditions of the form[1]

$$x \in L, \qquad \psi \in \mathrm{T}_x L, \quad \widetilde{\psi} \in \mathcal{J}_x \mathrm{T}_x L, \quad N \in \mathcal{J}_x \mathrm{T}_x L, \tag{7.3}$$

for some submanifold L of $\mathbf{R}^{2n}$. This is consistent and complete when $\mathrm{T}_x L$ and $\mathcal{J}_x \mathrm{T}_x L$ have no overlap (except the origin x) and span the whole of $\mathrm{T}_x \mathbf{R}^{2n} \cong \mathbf{R}^{2n}$,

$$\mathrm{T}_x L \cap \mathcal{J}_x \mathrm{T}_x L = \{x\}, \qquad \mathrm{T}_x L + \mathcal{J}_x \mathrm{T}_x L = \mathbf{R}^{2n}.$$

Such an L is called a *totally real* submanifold of $(\mathbf{R}^{2n}, \mathcal{J}) = \mathbf{C}^n$. It must be middle dimensional, $\dim_{\mathbf{R}} L = n$. To summarize, we have an invariant set of boundary conditions (7.3) for each totally real submanifold of $\mathbf{C}^n$.

Let us next examine the invariance of the action. We first take the standard bulk action S_{bulk} without a boundary term. Its variation is

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta S_{\text{bulk}} \;=\; & \int_{\partial \mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t \left[\frac{i}{2}\epsilon_1 \Big(g(\dot{x}, \widetilde{\psi}) - g(N, \psi) + 2\psi^I \partial_I \mathrm{Im}(W) \Big) \right. \\
& \left. + \frac{i}{2}\epsilon_2 \Big(g(\dot{x}, \mathcal{J}\psi) - g(N, \mathcal{J}\widetilde{\psi}) + 2(\mathcal{J}\widetilde{\psi})^I \partial_I \mathrm{Im}(W) \Big) \right].
\end{aligned} \tag{7.4}$$

Vanishing of the term $\epsilon_1 g(\dot{x}, \widetilde{\psi})$ requires that $\mathrm{T}_x L$ and $\mathcal{J}_x \mathrm{T}_x L$ must be orthogonal to each other,

$$\mathrm{T}_x L \perp \mathcal{J}_x \mathrm{T}_x L.$$

[1] There are more general boundary conditions which eventually lead to coisotropic branes [68]. However, they require at least complex dimension two, $n \geq 2$. Since we are primarily interested in the Coulomb branch, especially for $U(1)$ gauge theories, we shall focus on the conditions of the type (7.3).

For a totally real submanifold L, this is nothing but the condition that it is a *Lagrangian* submanifold with respect to the symplectic structure $\omega(v,w) = g(\mathcal{J}v, w)$. Once that is satisfied, the only remaining condition is that $\psi^I \partial_I \mathrm{Im}W = (\mathcal{J}\widetilde{\psi})^I \partial_I \mathrm{Im}W = 0$. Since the vectors ψ and $\mathcal{J}\widetilde{\psi}$ are tangent to L, this means that $\mathrm{Im}W$ is locally constant on L. This is how the requirement (7.1) arises. It is easy to see that the boundary condition (7.3) is consistent with the variational equation from the standard action: Since the action has no boundary term, the variational equation requires that $\partial_1 x$ must be normal to the brane. Since $N = \partial_1 x - f \in \mathcal{J}\mathrm{T}L$ is normal to L we find that $\partial_1 x$ and f must be independently normal to L. If we use the bulk equation for the auxiliary field

$$f^I = -g^{IJ}\partial_J \mathrm{Im}W, \tag{7.5}$$

the condition that f is normal to L is automatically satisfied provided $\mathrm{Im}W$ is constant on L. This is the basic story of [7].

The standard bulk action S_{bulk} can be modified by a boundary term so that it is $\mathcal{N} = 2_A$ invariant without use of any boundary condition. In fact one can write down a manifestly $\mathcal{N} = 2_A$ invariant action as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} S_{\mathrm{tot}} &= \frac{1}{2}\int_{\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}^2 s\, \mathbf{Q}_A \mathbf{Q}_A^\dagger [\mathbf{Q}_+, \overline{\mathbf{Q}}_+] K(\phi, \overline{\phi}) - \mathrm{Re}\int_{\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}^2 s\, \mathbf{Q}_A \mathbf{Q}_A^\dagger W(\phi) \\ &= S_{\mathrm{bulk}} + \int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t \left(\frac{1}{2}\sum_{I,J=1}^{2n} g_{IJ} x^I N^I - \mathrm{Im}\, W \right) \end{aligned} \tag{7.6}$$

Here we used the Kähler potential $K = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{I,J=1}^{2n} g_{IJ} x^I x^J$. If we use this action, obviously, no requirement should arise from the $\mathcal{N}_A = 2$ invariance. This time, however, a condition comes from the consistency of the boundary condition (7.3) and the variational equation from (7.6), which reads

$$\frac{1}{2} g_{IJ}(\delta x^I N^J + x^I \delta N^J) - \delta x^I (g_{IJ}\partial_1 x^J + \partial_I \mathrm{Im}W) + \frac{i}{4} g_{IJ}(\delta\psi^I \widetilde{\psi}^J + \delta\widetilde{\psi}^I \psi^J) = 0.$$

From the fermion terms, we find again the condition that $\mathcal{J}_x \mathrm{T}_x L$ must be orthogonal to $\mathrm{T}_x L$, that is, L must be a Lagrangian submanifold. If we use the bulk equation for the auxiliary field (7.5), the δx^I-terms combine to give $g_{IJ}\delta x^I N^J = 0$, which is again satisfied under $\mathcal{J}_x \mathrm{T}_x L \perp \mathrm{T}_x L$. This leaves us with the equation $\sum_{I,J=1}^{2n} g_{IJ} x^I \delta N^J = 0$. This is not satisfied for an arbitrary Lagrangian submanifold L — it has to be a Lagrangian plane that goes through the origin $x = 0$, that is, a linear Lagrangian subspace of $\mathbf{R}^{2n}$. Note that we have the modified Neumann condition

$$\partial_1 x^{I_t} + g^{I_t J}\partial_J \mathrm{Im}W = 0, \tag{7.7}$$

in the direction tangent to the brane.

We have found that the manifestly invariant action (7.6) admits only a very spacial class of D-branes — linear Lagrangian subspaces. In fact, one can modify the action by adding a boundary term that is by itself $\mathcal{N}_A = 2$ invariant. For example, we may add a boundary D-term

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta S_{\text{bdry}} &= \int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t\, \mathbf{Q}_A \mathbf{Q}_A^\dagger h \\ &= \int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t\, \left(\mathcal{J}^I{}_J N^J \partial_I h + \frac{i}{2} (\mathcal{J}\widetilde{\psi})^I \psi^J \partial_I \partial_J h \right) \end{aligned} \tag{7.8}$$

for some function h of $\mathbf{R}^{2n}$. We see that this changes the boundary term of (7.6) as

$$g_{IJ} x^I N^J \to g_{IJ} \left(x^I - 2\omega^{IK} \partial_K h \right) N^J$$

which corresponds to a Hamiltonian deformation of the brane L. Thus, *D-term deformations on the boundary generate Hamiltonian deformations of the brane.* If h is linear in x^I's then this simply corrsponds to a parallel displacement of L. If h is quadratic it corresponds to a symplectic rotation of L. For a more general function, we obtain a more general Lagrangian submanifold. This is one way to obtain more general D-branes than just linear Lagrangian subspaces. Alternatively, we may simply take

$$S_{\text{tot}} = S_{\text{bulk}} + \int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t \left(-\mathrm{Im}\, W \right). \tag{7.9}$$

It is not automatically $\mathcal{N}_A = 2$ invariant but the invariance requires only the Lagrangian condition $\mathrm{T}_x L \perp \mathcal{J}_x \mathrm{T}_x L$. The variational equation is then solved again by (7.3) that includes the modified Neumann condition (7.7). Thus, we find an A-brane for *any* Lagrangian submanifold L. The imaginary part of W does not have to be a constatnt on L.

In the new formulation, with the action (7.6) or (7.9), the system has a potential energy at the boundary

$$V_{\text{bdry}} = \mathrm{Im}\, W. \tag{7.10}$$

The imaginary part of a holomorphic function is unbounded below and above on $\mathbf{R}^{2n}$. Thus, depending on the asymptotic direction of the brane L, the boundary potential can be unbounded below. To avoid any problem associated with it, we propose to require that $\mathrm{Im}\, W$ must be bounded below on the brane L. Necessity of such a constraint is not so obvious since there is also a bulk potential $U_{\text{bulk}} = \frac{1}{4} g^{i\bar{\jmath}} \partial_i W \partial_{\bar{\jmath}} \overline{W}$. An exception is the case where W is linear, which is the main focus of the present section: the bulk potential is

constant whereas the boundary potential is linear. In this case, it is absolutely necessary to require that $\mathrm{Im}W$ is bounded below at every infinity of the brane L. When W is quadratic or higher, it is less clear whether we need the constraint. However, as we shall see below, it is preferable to keep this requirement also in the general case.

If we loose the requirement (7.1), the set of allowed D-branes is considerably expanded. However, we may identify the branes that are related by boundary D-term deformations. We have seen that a Hamiltonian deformation of the brane corresponds to the boundary D-term of the form (7.8). Here we must be careful — (7.8) can be regarded as a deformation only when its effect is small at infinity in the field space. In the absence of a superpotential, we need to assume that the function h approaches a constant at infinity or a linear function at most. For example, a quadratic function h corresponds to a rotation of the brane and cannot be regarded as a "deformation" since it results in an indefinitely large move at infinity. The parallel displacement, corresponding to a linear h, is the marginal case where one may or may not regard it as a deformation. In the presence of bulk and boundary potentials, a higher power of h is allowed as long as the effect is small relative to the effect of the potentials. In fact, as long as the potentials grow fast enough along the brane L, the wavefunction in that infinity direction is damped exponentially, so that the Hamiltonian deformation for almost any function h can be safely regarded as a boundary D-term deformation.

An important invariant under the boundary D-term deformation is the overlap of the boundary state $|B_L\rangle$ with a R-R ground state $|i\rangle$, known as the *generalized central charge*. (Here we assume that the polynomial W is quadratic or higher so that there are supersymmetric ground states as many as $\deg W - 1$.) It is realized as the path integral on a semi-infinite cigar and is represented as the integral:

$$\langle i|B_L\rangle = \int_L \mathrm{e}^{-\beta \,\mathrm{Im}\, W}\omega_i(\beta). \tag{7.11}$$

Here β is the circumferemce of the boundary circle of the cigar and $\omega_i(\beta)$ is the differential form on $\mathbf{R}^{2n}$ of middle degree that corresponds to the ground state $|i\rangle$. To be precise, the form $\omega_i(\beta)$ realizes the ground state of the supersymmetric quantum mechanics obtained by compactification on the circle of circumference β. See [50] for details. It is normalizable and has the asymptotic behaviour $\|\omega_i(\beta)\| \sim \mathrm{e}^{-\beta|W|}$. Although it indeed decays exponentially at infinity, the factor $\mathrm{e}^{-\beta \,\mathrm{Im}\, W}$ coming from the boundary potential (7.10) can be dangerous if L extends to the direction with $\mathrm{Im}\, W = -|W|$. Thus, Hamiltonian deformations of L across that dangerous hypersurface cannot be regarded as boundary D-term deformations. Therefore, we should better avoid that hypersurface. Given the freedom to use boundary D-term deformation, we may even require that $\mathrm{Im}W$ grows at

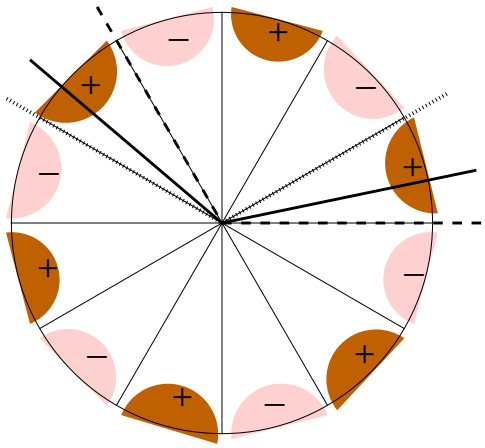


Figure 14: Some A-branes in LG model with $W = \Phi^6$.

every asymptotic direction of L. In that case the integral (7.11) can be recast into an integral of a holomorphic differential $\int_L e^{i\beta W}\Omega_i(\beta)$ [50].

This picture of A-branes in LG models is consistent with all known results based on (7.1) and also on other methods. It actually explains some of the puzzles in the old picture. For example, in [7] only branes with $\mathrm{Im}W =$ constant and $\mathrm{Re}W \to +\infty$ were considered, and those with $\mathrm{Re}W \to -\infty$ were completely ignored. In the new picture, those branes with $\mathrm{Re}W \to +\infty$ and those with $\mathrm{Re}W \to -\infty$ are connected via D-term deformations through the region with large positive $\mathrm{Im}W$. There is a one to one correspondence between the D-isomorphism classes in such two sets of branes. For illustration, let us consider the LG model for the minimal model $W = \Phi^{k+2}$. If we require $\mathrm{Im}W = 0$, a brane is a union of two rays in the directions $e^{\pi mi/(k+2)}$, $m = 0, ..., 2k+3$. However, only rays in the directions $e^{2\pi mi/(k+2)}$, $m = 0, ..., k+1$ were considered in [7]. In the new picture, each ray can be in any direction bewteen $e^{2\pi mi/(k+2)}$ and $e^{\pi(2m+1)i/(k+2)}$ so that $\mathrm{Im}W$ is bounded below at infinity. Fig. 14 shows the case $k = 4$. The dashed line is an example of a brane taken in [7] while the centipede line satisfies $\mathrm{Im}W = 0$ but was ignored. In the new picture any brane is allowed as long as it has asymptotic region with positive $\mathrm{Im}W$. The solid line is such an example and it indeed connects the dashed line and the centipede line. For the branes preserving the opposite supercharge $\mathbf{Q}'_A = \overline{\mathbf{Q}}_+ - \mathbf{Q}_-$ (or for the branes preserving the same supercharge but on the left boundary), the boundary potential has the opposite sign, $V^{\mathrm{bdry}} = -\mathrm{Im}\, W$, and thus the requirement is that $\mathrm{Im}\, W$ is bounded above on L. Then, the rays must be between $e^{\pi(2m-1)i/(k+2)}$ and $e^{2\pi mi/(k+2)}$. This alternation pattern has been observed in the geometrical picture of D-branes in the $U(1)$ gauged $SU(2)$ WZW model (Kazama-Suzuki model) that realizes the minimal model [36].

7.2 Asymptotic Condition In The Coulomb Branch

We now come back to the study of boundary linear sigma models. Our focus will be the boundary condition on the Coulomb branch. As discussed in the previous section, we need to specify a Lagrangian submanifold L on which the boundary potential is bounded below. We first consider a model with $U(1)$ gauge group and assume the Calabi-Yau condition

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} Q_i = 0.$$

In the region with large σ, it is appropriate to integrate out the charged matter fields. This yields corrections to the potential and kinetic terms and also produces higher derivative terms. Corrections to the kinetic term and higher derivative terms are written as power series in $e/|\sigma|$ and $k_\mu/|\sigma|$ and are negligible in the low energy limit in the region $|\sigma| \gg e$. Therefore, we can use the classical kinetic term (5.2) in that regime. Since it is written in the manifestly supersymmetric form with quadratic Kähler potential, as discussed in the previous section, the Lagrangian L must be a linear Lagrangian subspace. Namely, it must be asymptotically a straight line in the Coulomb branch. Of course the correction will be large in the region $|\sigma| < e$, and there is no reason for L to be straight there. Thus, the Lagrangian L is a bent line, coming in toward the origin from one asymptotic direction and going out to infinity in another direction. In order for the brane to be coupled to the Higgs branch theory, L should better go through the region $|\sigma| \ll e$.

The correction to the potential can be non-zero even in the asymptotic region. In the bulk, the twisted superpotential is corrected simply by the shift of the FI-theta parameter, $\widetilde{W} = -t\Sigma \to \widetilde{W}_{\mathit{eff}} = -t_{\mathit{eff}}\Sigma$

$$t_{\mathit{eff}} = t + \sum_{i=1}^{n} Q_i \log(Q_i) \mod 2\pi i\mathbf{Z}.$$

The $2\pi\mathbf{Z}$ ambiguity of the imaginary part is fixed by the boundary charge. Quantum corrections to the boundary potential and the boundary charge were analyzed in Section 6. For the Wilson line brane with charge q, the effective boundary potential is

$$V_{\mathit{eff}}^{\mathrm{bdry}} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\left(r + \sum_{i=1}^{n} Q_i \log|Q_i|\right)\mathrm{Im}(\sigma) - \left(\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q\right)\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) + \frac{1}{4}\sum_{i=1}^{n}|Q_i\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|, \tag{7.12}$$

and the effective charge is

$$q_{\mathit{eff}} = q - \mathrm{sgnRe}(\sigma)\sum_{i=1}^{n}\frac{|Q_i|}{4}. \tag{7.13}$$

The potential can indeed be written as $V_{eff}^{\text{bdry}} = -\frac{1}{2\pi}\text{Im}\,\widetilde{W}_{eff}$ with $t_{eff} = r_{eff} - i(\theta + 2\pi q_{eff})$ where $r_{eff} = r + \sum_{i=1}^{n} Q_i \log|Q_i|$. (In comparison with (7.10), the factor of $\frac{1}{2\pi}$ is just a convention and the sign is the difference between chiral and twisted chiral superpotentials.)

Note that there is a discontinuity in the effective charge and singularity in the potential at $\text{Re}(\sigma) = 0$, that is, on the imaginary line. This is due to the appearance of zero modes from the charged matter sector: The decaying modes localized at the boundary become zero modes exactly at $\sigma = i|\sigma|$ for positively charged fields and at $\sigma = -i|\sigma|$ for negatively charged fields. In those directions, no matter how large $|\sigma|$ is, the matter fields are not really decoupled from the low energy dynamics. The effective description purely in terms of Σ breaks down at $\sigma = \pm i|\sigma|$. In this sense we shall sometimes call the imaginary σ line a *singular line*.

The asymptotic lines for L must be such that the boundary potential (7.12) is bounded below. Let us depict the region of positive boundary potential, for various values of r and a fixed $\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q$. The behaviour depends very much on the relation of $\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q$ and the charge shift $\pm\frac{1}{2}\mathbb{S}$,

$$\mathbb{S} := \frac{1}{2}\sum_{i=1}|Q_i| = \sum_{Q_i>0} Q_i. \tag{7.14}$$

We consider three cases separately.

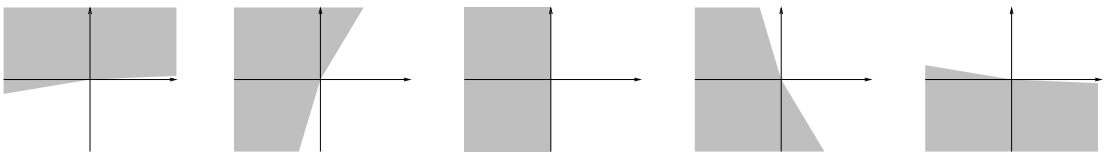


Figure 15: $\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q > \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{S}$

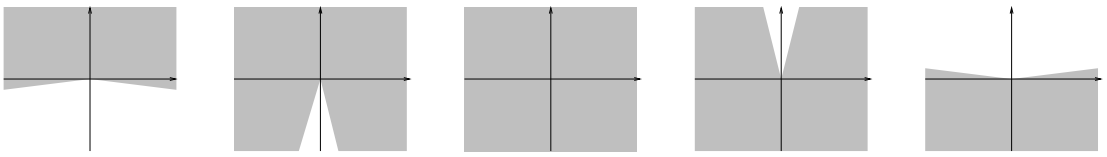


Figure 16: $-\frac{1}{2}\mathbb{S} < \frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q < \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{S}$

The boundary potential is positive in the shaded regions. If $\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q$ is larger than $\frac{\mathbb{S}}{2}$ or smaller than $-\frac{\mathbb{S}}{2}$, the positive potential region rotates roughly by 180 degrees as r is changed from $+\infty$ to $-\infty$. Not a single Lagrangian can stay inside the region for all

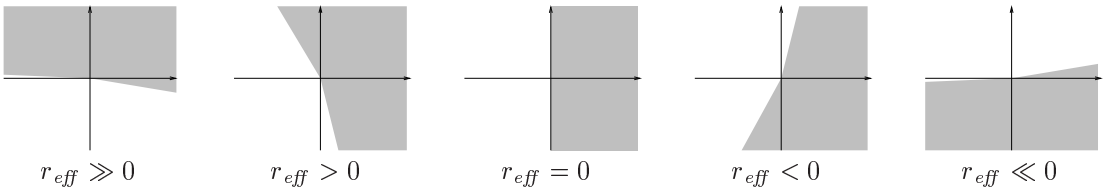


Figure 17: $\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q < -\frac{1}{2}\mathbb{S}$

values of r. On the other hand, if $-\frac{1}{2}\mathbb{S} < \frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q < \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{S}$, the region does not rotate. In particular, the real line is always inside.

As discussed in the previous section, we can deform the brane L as long as they stay inside the admissible region — that would be a boundary D-term deformation. If we use this freedom we notice that some of the configurations should be regarded as trivial. For example, we can consider deformations as shown in Figure 18. When the two rays are

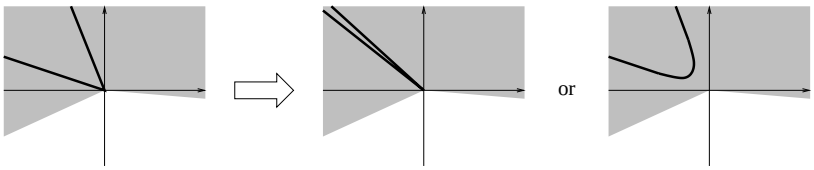


Figure 18: Annihilation of the brane.

deformed to coincide, brane-antibrane annihilation takes place. Alternatively, the brane may be detached from the center of the Coulomb branch. Then, it is decoupled from the Higgs branch theory and will eventually disappear to infinity. The existence of such deformations means that the starting configuration (left) should be regarded as trivial. This does not apply if the two rays of L are on the opposite side of the singular line at $\sigma = \pm i|\sigma|$. In order to move the two rays until they coincide, either one or both of them must hit the singular line. Also, even if the brane is detached from the origin, it will still intersect with the singular line and continue to be coupled to the matter sector.

7.3 Rules Of D-Brane Transport

We now describe rules of D-brane transport. We first consider models with $U(1)$ gauge group and next the cases of higher rank gauge groups.

7.3.1 $U(1)$ Gauge Group —The Grade Restriction

We are interested in transporting branes along a path that goes from the large volume phase $r \gg 0$ to the small volume phase $r \ll 0$, or in the opposite direction. The path should better avoid the singular points at $r_{\mathit{eff}} = 0$ and $\theta \in 2\pi\mathbf{Z} + \pi\mathcal{S}$. Thus, it must go

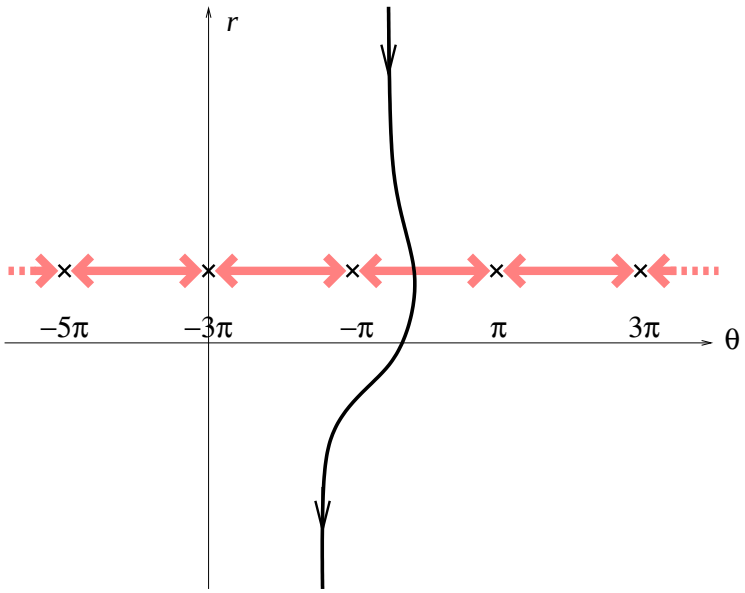


Figure 19: A path through one of the windows.

through the windows between the singular points. For simplicity, we consider paths that goes just once through one of the windows, as shown in Figure 19. (The Figure is for the case where $\mathcal{S}$ is odd. For even $\mathcal{S}$, the windows are at $2\pi n < \theta < 2\pi(n+1)$, $n \in \mathbf{Z}$). More complicated paths are just some combinations of such simple paths. We claim

The Grade Restriction Rule:

The Wilson line brane $\mathcal{W}(q)$ can be transported smoothly between the two phases if and only if the inequality

$$-\frac{\mathcal{S}}{2} < \frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q < \frac{\mathcal{S}}{2} \tag{7.15}$$

holds in the window. The same can be said on a complex of Wilson line branes $\mathcal{W}(q_i)$ or a matrix factorization of the superpotential: each q_i must obey the inequality (7.15) in the window in order for the brane to be transported smoothly.

For a given choice of window, this rule selects $\mathcal{S}$ consequtive integers as the allowed set of boundary charges q. For example, in a theory with $\mathcal{S} = 3$, the allowed set is $\{-1, 0, 1\}$

if the window is at $-\pi < \theta < \pi$. If we change the window to $-3\pi < \theta < -\pi$, the set changes to $\{0, 1, 2\}$. Below, we provide a derivation of this rule.

Suppose the inequality (7.15) is not satisfied on the window. To be concerete, suppose that q is too large for that. As we move along the path, say from $r \gg 0$ to $r \ll 0$, the region of positive boundary potential rotates counter-clockwise as in Figure 15. The rays of L must be rotated so that they are always inside that region. We depict an example of such a rotation in Figure 20. The starting configuration (left) is chosen so that the

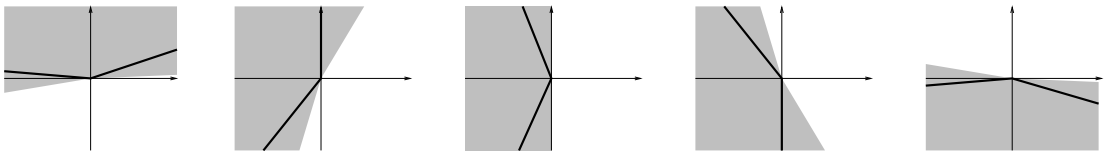


Figure 20: Rotation of L in the case where q is too large for (7.15).

two rays are on the opposite side of the singular line $\sigma = \pm i|\sigma|$. As we have discussed above, this is required for the brane to be non-trivial. At some moment before we go through the window, the ray that was on the right of the singular line must overlap with the singular line on $\sigma = i|\sigma|$ (second from left). At that moment, something non-trivial must happen to the brane. If nothing had happened, then after that we would have a configuration where both of the rays are on the left of the singular line (center). But that configuration is trivial as the brane would annihilate by admissible deformations. This is in contradiction to the fact that the starting configuration was non-trivial. Somthing non-trivial must also happen when the other ray overlaps with the singular line on $\sigma = -i|\sigma|$ (second from right). At this stage, we cannot exactly tell *what* really happens except that it has to do with the zero modes from the matter sector. Later in this paper, we will discuss this point from a different perspective.

Let us now consider the case where the inequality (7.15) is satisfied. If the path is a straight line at a constant θ obeying (7.15), then there is no need to move L as the real line

$$\mathrm{Im}(\sigma) = 0 \tag{7.16}$$

is always inside the admissible region. If the path is curved as in Figure 19, then it may happen that the inequality is not satisfied along a part of the path. Then, we may need to deform L away from the real line. However, as long as the inequality is satisfied on the window at $r_{\mathit{eff}} = 0$, the admissible region is always on both sides of the singular line $\sigma = \pm i|\sigma|$, and the two rays do not have to overlap with the line, never at any point of the path. Thus, the brane can be continuously deformed from one phase to another.

To summarize, we can consider branes for arbitrary boundary charges q_i. They are non-trivial as long as the two rays of L are on opposite sides of the singular line $\sigma = \pm i|\sigma|$. However, only those obeying the grade restriction rule can be continuously transported between the two phases through the window. For a component of a brane which does not satisfy the grade restriction rule, the asymptotic condition on the Coulomb branch L must overlap with the singular line $\sigma = \pm i|\sigma|$ along the way, and *something non-trivial* is expected to happen. This is the meaning of the grade restriction rule.

7.3.2 Higher Rank Gauge Group — The Band Restriction

We now consider the model with higher rank gauge group $T \cong U(1)^k$ $(k \geq 2)$. We are interested in transporting branes along a path that goes from one phase to another in the multi-dimensional Kähler moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$. Here we focus on paths that go from one phase to an adjacent phase through the phase boundary in the asymptotic region, that is, the region with large values of FI parameters. Any two phases can be connected by a combination of such paths.

In the asymptotic region, there is exactly one $U(1)$ subgroup of the gauge group T that can be unbroken at the phase boundary. The remaining gauge group is completely Higgsed and can be ignored. Repeating what we have done before for the unbroken $U(1)$ subgroup, we find a rule of D-brane transport. Let us arrange the basis of the Lie algebra of T so that the first factor is the unbroken $U(1)$. Then, the coordinate r^1 is transverse to the phase boundary. The singular locus is asymptotically at $r^1_{\mathit{eff}} = r^1 + \sum_{i=1}^n Q_i^1 \log|Q_i^1| = 0$ and $\theta^1 \in 2\pi\mathbf{Z} + \pi\mathcal{S}^1$ where

$$\mathcal{S}^1 := \sum_{Q_i^1 > 0} Q_i^1. \tag{7.17}$$

We fix one of the windows at $r^1_{\mathit{eff}} = 0$ and consider a path that goes though it. We have

The Band Restriction Rule:

The Wilson line brane $\mathcal{W}(q^1, ..., q^k)$ can be transported smoothly across the phase boundary if and only if the inequality

$$-\frac{\mathcal{S}^1}{2} < \frac{\theta^1}{2\pi} + q^1 < \frac{\mathcal{S}^1}{2} \tag{7.18}$$

holds in the window. The same can be said for a complex of Wilson line branes $\mathcal{W}(\vec{q_i})$ or a matrix factorization of the superpotential: each q_i^1 must obey the inequality (7.18) in the window.

There is no condition on $q^2, ..., q^n$. For a choice of window, this selects a band of width

$\mathbb{S}^1$ in the lattice of charge vectors. For example, let us consider the two parameter model (Example (C) in Section 4.4), and look at the boundary between Phase I and Phase IV. The unbroken subgroup is the original $U(1)_1$, with the number $\mathbb{S}^1 = 4$. If we choose the window $0 < \theta^1 < 2\pi$ at $r^1_{\mathit{eff}} = r^1 - 4\log 4 = 0$, $r^2 \gg 0$, then the band is $\{(q^1, q^2) \,|\, q^1 = -2, -1, 0, 1\}$ as shown in Figure 21 (left). The Figure also shows a sample of bands at

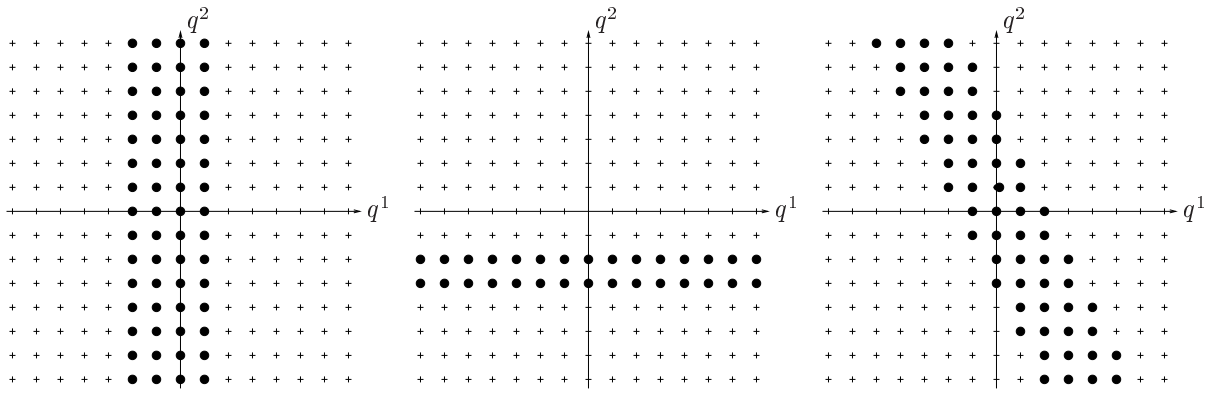


Figure 21: Examples of bands in the two parameter model.

other phase boundaries; the I-II or III-IV boundary (middle) and the II-III boundary (right).

7.4 The Nature Of The Rule

The above derivation of the grade/band restriction rule is certainly concerned with the transport of D-branes in a linear sigma model with *finite gauge coupling* e which is formulated on a worldsheet of *finite (spatial) volume*.

In fact, the effective boundary potential (7.12) as well as the effective boundary charge (7.13) ceases to be valid if we take the infinite coupling or infinite volume limit. The validity of a perturbative treatment of the gauge interaction that leads to these expressions had been analyzed in Section 6.9. Here we would like to discuss it from a different perspective. As before, we consider the strip of width L. There is a bulk contribution to the total energy

$$E_{\text{bulk}} = \frac{e^2 L}{2} r^2_{\mathit{eff}} + \frac{e^2 L}{2} \left(\frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q_b \right)^2 . \tag{7.19}$$

The second term is the electrostatic energy: q_b is the charge at the (right) boundary that determines the value of the electric field via the Gauss law. The boundary charge q_b can be changed if we choose a different state from the matter sector. Such a change may reduce the electrostatic energy E_{es}, but it may increase the energy of the matter

sector at the same time. The effective potential and charge are obtained by finding the configuration that minimizes the *total* energy. The results (7.12) and (7.13) are obtained by ignoring the contribution of E_{es} in the minimization problem. That is valid when the excitation energy in the matter sector is much larger than the possible change in E_{es} by the change of boundary charge. The separation of the energy levels is of order $|\sigma|$ for oscillating modes and $|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)|$ for decaying modes. Thus, the region of validity is

$$|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)| \gg e^2 L. \tag{7.20}$$

This is indeed the same as the condition (6.95) we obtained earlier. In the opposite regime, $|\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)| \ll e^2 L$, while $|\sigma|$ is still much larger than the gauge coupling e, the electrostatic bulk energy E_{es} is much more important than the boundary potential. Then, the state in the matter sector must be such that the boundary charge q_b minimizes the electrostatic energy. Thus, "the singular *line*" of purely imaginary σ, which played the crucial rôle for the grade/band restriction rule, is actually a singular *band* of width $\sim e^2 L$. This band spreads over the entire σ-plane if we take the infinite volume limit $L \to \infty$ or infinite gauge coupling limit $e \to \infty$, or any limit that sends $e^2 L$ to infinity.

The key question is what is the rule of D-brane transport in a theory formulated on a worldsheet of infinite volume, or in the conformal field theory to which the linear sigma model flows to in the infra-red limit. Does the grade restriction rule still hold? Is there some phase transition that is not visible at finite volume and finite gauge coupling?

A similar issue was discussed in the bulk theory [2] concerning the meaning of the Coulomb branch analysis to the phase transition in the infinite volume system. It was first noted that the existence of a phase transition depends on the particular path in the multi-parameter space of theories. Then the focus was concentrated on the paths inside conformal field theories for which we know the answer from mirror symmetry. It was argued that the finite volume and finite coupling theory is enough to find all possible singularities of the conformal field theories: if the singularity is purely due to the vanishing of the Coulomb branch potential (E_{bulk} above), then the potential only seems to grow in the infra-red limit $e \to \infty$ if that was non-zero for finite e and finite L. The only possible problem in this argument was the conflict of the condition $|\sigma| \gg e$ for the Coulomb branch analysis and the infra-red limit $e \to \infty$.

The situation is much more subtle in the boundary theory. It is certainly the case that the existence of a singularity depends on the particular path in the multi-parameter space of theories. The grade/band restriction rule is derived for the path in the (r, θ) space at fixed, *finite* values of e and L: there is no singularity in the transport of the brane if and only if any of the boundary charges of the brane is inside the grade/band restriction range

(7.15) or (7.18). Does it tell something about transport of the corresponding conformally invariant brane in the corresponding family of conformal field theories? For branes with charges outside the grade/band restriction range, the answer is simple. We do not even have a family of boundary conformal field theories from such a family of linear sigma model branes. This is so as long as they are defined as the infra-red limit of boundary QFTs with finite e and finite L. The grade restriction rule is valid as long as e^2L is finite, no matter how large it is. There is a problem already at finite volume and finite coupling, and hence there is nothing to study.

Things are non-trivial for branes with charges inside the grade/band restriction range. First of all, we do have a family of boundary conformal field theories from such a linear sigma model brane. The question is then whether there is a singularity along the way. There is no compelling argument like the one for the bulk theory that shows the non-existence of a singularity. On the contrary, it is *expected* that there are singularities or more appropriately transition points. We know many examples of D-brane decays when the closed string background is dialed through walls of marginal stability: on one side of the wall the brane is stable and on the other side it decays to, say, two stable D-branes. From the worldsheet point of view, the point of marginal stability can be regarded as a transition point in the family of boundary conformal field theories. Thus, it is not that there is no singularity if the grade/band restriction rule is obeyed. But it is that a grade restricted brane provides a family of boundary conformal field theories. It provides us with a starting point to study stability and D-brane decay.

7.5 The Full Boundary Conditions

Let us explicitly write down the boundary conditions on the bulk fields. For the Wilson line brane $\mathcal{W}(q)$ in a $U(1)$ gauge theory, the Lagrangian submanifold

$$\mathrm{Im}(\sigma) = 0$$

is in the admissible region as long as (r, θ) is in the strip domain $-\frac{\mathbb{S}}{2} < \frac{\theta}{2\pi} + q < \frac{\mathbb{S}}{2}$, $-\infty < r < \infty$. Thus, we take it as a part of the boundary condition of the vector multiplet fields. The boundary conditions on other component fields, (7.3), read $\lambda_+ + \lambda_- = 0$ and $\partial_1 \mathrm{Re}(\sigma) + v_{01} = 0$. Actually, we may take $v_1 = 0$ as an extra condition since its $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ variation is proportional to that of $\mathrm{Im}(\sigma)$. In this way, we find the following set of

boundary conditions

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathrm{Im}(\sigma) = 0, \\ &\lambda_+ + \lambda_- = 0, \\ &\partial_1(v_0 - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)) = 0, \\ &v_1 = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{7.21}$$

Another set of conditions follows from the Gauss law constraint:

$$\begin{aligned} &-\frac{1}{e^2} v_{01} = \theta + 2\pi q, \\ &\partial_1(\lambda_+ - \lambda_-) = 0, \\ &\partial_1(D + \partial_1 \mathrm{Im}(\sigma)) = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{7.22}$$

If we use (7.21), the conditions on the matter chiral multiplet fields (5.37) simplify to

$$\begin{aligned} &\partial_1 \phi = 0, \\ &\psi_+ = \psi_-, \\ &\partial_1(\psi_+ + \psi_-) = 0, \\ &F = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{7.23}$$

These are the full set of boundary conditions on the bulk fields. These are invariant under the $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetry and are compatible with the variational equation.

At a point (r, θ) away from the strip domain, only one half of the line $\mathrm{Im}(\sigma) = 0$ is in the admissible region. As we have discussed, the two asymptotic lines of L must be on the opposite sides of the singular line $\sigma = \pm i|\sigma|$. Thus, we take L to be the one obtained from $\mathrm{Im}(\sigma) = 0$ by rotating one of the asymptotic lines so that it is in the admissible region. This is possible as long as $r_{\mathit{eff}} \neq 0$. In particular, for $r \gg 0$ or $r \ll 0$, we can take L to be very close to the real line $\mathrm{Im}(\sigma) = 0$. The other set of conditions (7.22) can still be imposed. For the matter sector, we need to use the original condition (5.37) for the part of L away from $\mathrm{Im}(\sigma) = 0$.

Remarks

(i) The condition on the matter fields (7.23) is identical to the ultra-violet boundary condition (5.38). At this moment we do not know the significance of this observation. One possibility is that the $e = 0$ ultra-violet theory can be used to study some of the properties of the grade restricted branes. Indeed, as we will see in later sections, the $e = 0$ theory provides correct results for the space of chiral ring elements for any pair of grade restricted branes.

(ii) When there are bulk and boundary interactions from the superpotential W and the tachyon profile Q, the variational equation is changed and the boundary conditions should be modified. However, we can still use the above boundary conditions as long as we treat these interactions as perturbations. Recall the remark on this approach given in Section 5.5. Here, we would like to comment on the treatment of the Gauss law. Suppose a brane consists of more than one Wilson lines with various different charges q_i. The Gauss law constraint shows that the bulk fields obey different boundary conditions for different Chan-Paton components of the same brane. This may look strange at first sight but a moment of reflection reveals that there is nothing wrong, at least in perturbation theory. In the path-intergal formalism, we expand the path ordered exponential into a Dyson series. Each term of the series is a product of matrices of the form $\rho_*(v_0 - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma))$, $\psi^i\partial_i Q$, $\{Q, Q^\dagger\}$, etc, which are inserted at points of the worldsheet boundary. These points separate the boundary into segments — each segment corresponds to one of the Chan-Paton components. Then, it is simply that we impose different conditions on different parts of the worldsheet boundary. In the operator formalism, the situation is even clearer. The Chan-Paton space is already a part of the quantum Hilbert space — an open string wavefunction is a product of the bulk part and the Chan-Paton factor. It is simply that the bulk fields obey boundary conditions that depend on the Chan-Paton factor.

(iii) That one can take an extra condition $v_1 = 0$ is a special feature of the Lagrangian submanifold $\mathrm{Im}(\sigma) = 0$. In fact a similar property is possessed by the singular line

$$\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) = 0$$

on which the decaying modes from the matter sector become zero modes. One can take an extra condition $v_0 = 0$, since its $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ variation is identical to that of $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)$ (that is why the combination $v_0 - \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)$ is supersymmetric). The $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ invariant set of conditions including these is

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathrm{Re}(\sigma) = 0, \\ &\lambda_+ - \lambda_- = 0, \\ &D + \partial_1 \mathrm{Im}(\sigma) = 0, \\ &v_0 = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{7.24}$$

This may be completed by another set of conditions:

$$\begin{aligned} &\partial_1(\lambda_+ + \lambda_-) = 0, \\ &\partial_1(v_{01} + \partial_1 \mathrm{Re}(\sigma)) = 0, \\ &\partial_1 \mathrm{Im}(\sigma) = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{7.25}$$

In fact, (7.21) and (7.24) are the only possible $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ invariant sets that include two

independent equations of the form $f = 0$ and $gv_0 + hv_1 = 0$ where f, g, h are real valued functions of σ and $\overline{\sigma}$. We do not yet understand the significance of this observation.

8 Non-Compact Models

In this section, we achieve our main goal of the paper: using linear sigma models, we construct parallel families of D-branes over regions of the Kähler moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$ that encompass various different phases. The key result of the previous section, the grade (or band) restriction rule, plays the most important role in the construction. This section focuses on models without superpotential, whose low energy theories are non-linear sigma models on toric Calabi-Yau varieties, possibly with orbifold singularities.

In Section 8.1 we study how D-branes of the linear sigma model descend to the low energy theories deep inside the phases of the Kähler moduli space. We proceed in two steps: First, we determine the low energy boundary interaction of a given complex of Wilson line branes (5.20). Second, we take into account D-term deformations and brane-antibrane annihiliation, named *D-isomorphisms* in Section 3, which do not change the low energy behaviour of boundary interactions.

In Section 8.2, we apply the grade (or band) restriction rule and transport D-branes along paths that connect adjacent phases, achieving our main goal of the paper. As a consequence, this leads to one to one correspondences between D-isomorphism classes of D-branes at different phases. Mathematically, this results in equivalences of the derived categories of different toric varieties.

As an application, we obtain an honest understanding of D-brane monodromies associated to closed loops in Kähler moduli space, which we shall consider in Section 8.3. In Section 8.4, we demonstrate the power of construction in typical examples: the (local) flop transition and the McKay correspondence. In Section 8.5, we discuss families of D-branes over the central region of the moduli space where multiple phase boundaries meet. We find a simple construction which works under a certain condition.

8.1 Low Energy Boundary Conditions

We first study the low energy behaviour of D-branes of the linear sigma model, assuming that we are deep in some phase in the Kähler moduli space where the gauge group is broken either completely or to its discrete subgroup. At energies well below the gauge

coupling e, the theory reduces to the bottom of the scalar potential, the vacuum manifold $X_r = (\mathbf{C}^N - \Delta_r)/T_{\mathbf{C}}$, possibly with orbifold points. Thus, we are interested in how the linear sigma model branes descend to D-branes in the non-linear sigma model on X_r.

The low energy limit is achieved by the limit $e \to \infty$, in which the vector multiplet loses the kinetic term in the bulk. The auxiliary field D becomes a Lagrange multiplier field that imposes the D-term equation strictly. The components v_μ and σ become auxiliary fields and the effect of elimination is to set them equal to their classical values, see (4.12)-(4.14). We claim that, under appropriate boundary condition on the vector multiplet, this picture remains the same also in the presence of a boundary with the boundary interaction (5.5) or (5.7) that includes D, v_μ and σ. For concreteness, we consider a $U(1)$ gauge theory formulated on the left-half plane, $\mathbb{S} = \{(t,s)|s \leq 0\}$, and put the Wilson line brane $\mathcal{W}(q)$ at the boundary.

We first note that D and v_1 appear only in the boundary counter term $S_{\rm g}^{\rm c.t.}$ for the gauge kinetic terms, see (5.2) and (5.7). As we have discussed in Section 7.1, the boundary condition for the gauge multiplet fields are chosen so that this counter term vanishes. Thus, D and v_1 do not appear in the boundary interaction. In particular, the effect of integrating them out remains the same as in the bulk: impose the D-term equation as a constraint and set v_1 equal to the classical value (4.13). The part of the action that depends on v_0 is

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{S}} \left(v_0^2|\phi|^2 - 2iv_0\overline{\psi}\overleftrightarrow{\partial_t}\phi - v_0(\overline{\psi}_+\psi_+ + \overline{\psi}_-\psi_-) \right) \mathrm{d}t\mathrm{d}s - \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} (\theta + 2\pi q)v_0 \mathrm{d}t \\
&\quad = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{S}} \left(v_0^2|\phi|^2 - 2iv_0\overline{\psi}\overleftrightarrow{\partial_t}\phi - v_0(\overline{\psi}_+\psi_+ + \overline{\psi}_-\psi_-) - (\theta + 2\pi q)v_0\delta(s) \right) \mathrm{d}t\mathrm{d}s.
\end{aligned}$$

For simplicity of notation, we consider only a single charge 1 matter field. Completing the square and integrating out v_0, we are left with

$$\begin{aligned}
&-\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{S}} \frac{1}{|\phi|^2}\left(i\overline{\phi}\overleftrightarrow{\partial_t}\phi + \frac{1}{2}(\overline{\psi}_+\psi_+ + \overline{\psi}_-\psi_-) + \frac{1}{2}(\theta + 2\pi q)\delta(s) \right)^2 \mathrm{d}t\mathrm{d}s \\
&\quad = -\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{S}} \frac{1}{|\phi|^2}\left(i\overline{\phi}\overleftrightarrow{\partial_t}\phi + \frac{1}{2}(\overline{\psi}_+\psi_+ + \overline{\psi}_-\psi_-) \right)^2 \mathrm{d}t\mathrm{d}s \\
&\qquad -\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} \left[(\theta + 2\pi q)\left(i\overline{\phi}\overleftrightarrow{\partial_t}\phi + \frac{1}{2}(\overline{\psi}_+\psi_+ + \overline{\psi}_-\psi_-) \right) + \frac{1}{4}(\theta + 2\pi q)^2\delta(0) \right] \mathrm{d}t.
\end{aligned}$$

The effect is simply to set v_0 equal to the classical value of the bulk theory (4.12), except that we acquire the boundary term that involves $\delta(0)$. This looks problematic. For σ

integration, we find

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{S}}\Big(-|\sigma|^2|\phi|^2-\overline{\psi}_-\sigma\psi_+-\overline{\psi}_+\overline{\sigma}\psi_-+(\theta+2\pi q)\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)\delta(s)\Big)\mathrm{d}t\mathrm{d}s\\
\longrightarrow\quad&\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{S}}\frac{1}{|\phi|^2}|\overline{\psi}_+\psi_-|^2\mathrm{d}t\mathrm{d}s\\
&-\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}}\left[(\theta+2\pi q)\frac{1}{2}(\overline{\psi}_-\psi_++\overline{\psi}_-\psi_+)-\frac{1}{4}(\theta+2\pi q)^2\delta(0)\right]\mathrm{d}t
\end{aligned}$$

Again, we find the unwanted $\delta(0)$ at the boundary. However, we notice that it has the opposite sign and exactly the same absolute value compared to the $\delta(0)$ term from the v_0-integration. Thus, they completely cancel out. This cancellation occurs precisely when both v_0 and $\mathrm{Re}(\sigma)$ are unconstrained at the boundary. And this is indeed the type of boundary conditions we impose, as we have discussed in Sections 7.2 and 7.5. Otherwise, we may need to keep an uncancelled $\delta(0)$ in the low energy theory. Our choice of boundary conditions saves us from such a complication. The appearance of $\delta(0)$ at the boundary from elimination of auxiliary fields was found earlier in [69] where the significance of such a term to supersymmetry is discussed.

To summarize, the effect of intergrating out v_0 and σ also remains the same as in the bulk: set them equal to their classical values (4.12), (4.14). Accordingly, the boundary interaction for the Wilson line brane $\mathcal{W}(q)=\mathcal{W}(q^1\dots q^k)$ is expressed as

$$\mathcal{A}_t=\sum_{a=1}^{k}q^a\big[(v_a)_0-\mathrm{Re}(\sigma_a)\big]=\dot{x}^IA_I^{(q)}(x)-\frac{i}{4}F_{IJ}^{(q)}(x)\psi^I\psi^J,$$

where the term $\dot{x}^IA_I^{(q)}(x)$ is the pull-back of the connection on the holomorphic line bundle $\mathcal{O}(q)=\mathcal{O}(q^1,\dots,q^k)$ over X_r. This is nothing but the boundary interaction for the D-brane in the non-linear sigma model supporting the line bundle $\mathcal{O}(q)$, see (2.7). Thus, we find that the Wilson line brane descends to the brane supporting the line bundle

$$\mathcal{W}(q_1,\dots,q_k)\longrightarrow\mathcal{O}(q_1,\dots,q_k).$$

Things are as simple as this also for more general branes, direct sums of Wilson line branes $\mathcal{W}=\oplus_i\mathcal{W}(q_i)$ with interaction Q. The corresponding boundary interaction (5.12) directly descends to the boundary interaction (2.28) of a D-brane in the non-linear sigma model, associated with the vector bundle $E=\oplus_i\mathcal{O}(q_i)$ with connection $A=\mathrm{diag}(A^{(q_i)})$ and tachyon $\mathbf{T}=iQ-iQ^\dagger$. The R-symmetry also descends straightforwardly. Thus, the graded D-brane $\mathfrak{B}=(\mathcal{V},Q,\rho,R)$ directly descends to the graded D-brane $\mathcal{B}=(E,A,Q,R)$. In other words, a complex of Wilson line branes,

$$\mathcal{C}(\mathfrak{B}):\quad\cdots\xrightarrow{d^{j-1}}\mathcal{W}^{j-1}\xrightarrow{d^j}\mathcal{W}^j\xrightarrow{d^{j+1}}\mathcal{W}^{j+1}\xrightarrow{d^{j+2}}\cdots$$

with $\mathcal{W}^j = \oplus_{i=1}^{n_j} \mathcal{W}(q_{ij})$, becomes a complex of holomorphic vector bundles over the target space X_r,

$$\mathcal{C}(\mathcal{B}): \quad \cdots \stackrel{d^{j-1}}{\longrightarrow} \mathcal{E}^{j-1} \stackrel{d^j}{\longrightarrow} \mathcal{E}^j \stackrel{d^{j+1}}{\longrightarrow} \mathcal{E}^{j+1} \stackrel{d^{j+2}}{\longrightarrow} \cdots, \tag{8.1}$$

where the component of R-degree j is a direct sum of line bundles, $\mathcal{E}^j = \oplus_{i=1}^{n_j} \mathcal{O}(q_{ij})$.

In the above discussion, we have assumed that X_r is smooth, but everything goes through in the presence of orbifold loci as well, provided we consider a part of the gauge charges $(q^1, ..., q^k)$ as the data of the orbifold group action on the Chan-Paton factors rather than the data determining the vector bundle with connection. When X_r can be realized as a global orbifold of a space X_r', we may regard $\mathcal{O}(q^1, ..., q^k)$ as an equivariant line bundle over X_r'. In general, the correct mathematical name for it is a line bundle over the quotient stack $[(\mathbf{C}^N - \Delta_r)/T_{\mathbf{C}}]$, but not a sheaf over the algebraic varity X_r (see [70] and Section 9). In what follows, somewhat loosely we call such objects simply "line bundles or vector bundles over the toric variety X_r".

Let us introduce some notation. We denote by $\mathfrak{D}(\mathbf{C}^N, T)$ the set of graded D-branes in the linear sigma model. We denote by $D(X_r)$ the set of graded D-branes in the low energy theory with target space X_r. The map of D-branes obtained above is denoted by

$$\pi_r : \mathfrak{D}(\mathbf{C}^N, T) \longrightarrow D(X_r). \tag{8.2}$$

In the following, we shall indicate the degree 0 component of a complex by underlining it, $\mathcal{E}^0 = \underline{\mathcal{E}}$, when there is a room of confusion. Also, a complex consisting of a single vector bundle $\mathcal{E}$ at R-degree j will be denoted by $\mathcal{E}[-j]$. For the one at degree 0, we may simply denote it by $\mathcal{E}$ when there is no room of confusion.

D-isomorphisms

Let us now apply the concepts that are introduced in Section 3 to D-branes in the low energy theory. Namely, we regard D-branes to be isomorphic in $D(X_r)$ (or simply *D-isomorphic*) if they are related by a combination of D-term deformations and brane-antibrane annihilation. Isomorphic D-branes in $D(X_r)$ flow to the same infra-red fixed point, although the converse is not true in general. The map (8.2) is therefore the operation of modding out D-branes of the linear sigma model by D-isomorphism relations. In what follows, we study such isomorphism relations and see how they depend on the phases of the Kähler moduli space.

Recall from Section 3 that D-isomorphisms can be characterized as follows. For two D-branes in the linear sigma model, $\mathfrak{B}_1$ and $\mathfrak{B}_2$, a D-isomorphism of the image D-brane

in $D(X_r)$ may be represented by a degree 0 map φ in the linear sigma model whose cone

$$Q_{C(\varphi)} = \begin{pmatrix} -Q_1 & 0 \\ \varphi & Q_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

has positive definite boundary potential, $\{Q_{C(\varphi)}, Q^\dagger_{C(\varphi)}\} > 0$, everywhere on X_r. Notice that everywhere-positivity of the boundary potential depends heavily on the deleted set Δ_r, which is determined by the bulk D-term equation. This is how the D-isomorphism relations of linear sigma model branes depend on the phase that we are in.

Let us illustrate the dependence in Example (A) with $N = 3$, namely, $U(1)$ gauge theory with fields P, X_1, X_2, X_3 of charge $-3, 1, 1, 1$ respectively. The model has two phases, $r \gg 0$ and $r \ll 0$. The deleted sets are

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_+ &= \{x_1 = x_2 = x_3 = 0\}, \quad && \text{in the } \ r \gg 0 \text{ phase}, \\ \Delta_- &= \{p = 0\}, && \text{in the } \ r \ll 0 \text{ phase}. \end{aligned}$$

Let us consider the D-brane, $\mathfrak{B}_+$, given by the complex[1]

$$\mathcal{C}(\mathfrak{B}_+): \quad \mathcal{W}(-1) \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix}} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -x_3 & x_2 \\ x_3 & 0 & -x_1 \\ -x_2 & x_1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{(x_1, x_2, x_3)} \underline{\mathcal{W}(2)}. \tag{8.3}$$

The boundary potential is

$$\{Q_+, Q_+^\dagger\} \ = \ \left(|x_1|^2 + |x_2|^2 + |x_3|^2\right) \cdot \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{V}_+}. \tag{8.4}$$

In the low energy theory of the positive volume phase $r \gg 0$, the potential is strictly positive since the point $x_1 = x_2 = x_3 = 0$ is deleted. As a consequence complete brane-antibrane annihilation takes place: $\mathfrak{B}_+$ is D-isomorphic to the empty brane,

$$\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}_+) \cong 0.$$

On the other hand, we may view $\mathfrak{B}_+$ as a result of binding two D-branes,

$$\mathcal{C}(\mathfrak{B}_1): \quad \mathcal{W}(-1) \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \underline{\mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3}} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{C}(\mathfrak{B}_2) = \mathcal{W}(2),$$

by the right-most map $\varphi = (x_1, x_2, x_3)$ in (8.3), via the cone construction. Then, the positivity of $\{Q_+, Q_+^\dagger\}$ tells us that $\mathfrak{B}_1$ and $\mathfrak{B}_2$ determine isomorphic low energy D-branes in $D(X_r)$:

$$\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}_1) \ \cong \ \pi_+(\mathfrak{B}_2).$$

[1] In the following we use the short-hand notation $\mathcal{W}(-1) \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(2)$ for Koszul-like complexes (8.3).

Let us next study these branes in the negative volume phase $r \ll 0$, where the deleted set is $\Delta_- = \{p = 0\}$ and the low energy theory is the free orbifold $X_- = \mathbf{C}^3/\mathbf{Z}_3$. Now the x_i's are allowed to vanish at the same time, and hence the boundary potential for $\mathfrak{B}_+$ is no longer positive everywhere. In fact, the D-brane $\mathfrak{B}_+$ descends directly to the fractional D-brane (see Section 3.2), $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\overline{2})$, which is localized at the orbifold point $\mathfrak{p} = \{x_1 = x_2 = x_3 = 0\}$,

$$\pi_-(\mathfrak{B}_+) \quad \cong \quad \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\overline{2}).$$

Moreover, we find that $\pi_-(\mathfrak{B}_1)$ and $\pi_-(\mathfrak{B}_2)$ are not isomorphic in $D(X_-)$.

A complementary example is provided by the complex

$$\mathcal{C}(\mathfrak{B}_-): \quad \mathcal{W}(q+3) \xrightarrow{p} \underline{\mathcal{W}(q)},$$

for some $q \in \mathbf{Z}$. The associated boundary potential is $\{Q_-, Q_-^\dagger\} = |p|^2 \cdot \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{V}_-}$. In the orbifold phase, $r \ll 0$, it is positive everywhere, and hence the image $\pi_-(\mathfrak{B}_-)$ is empty in the infra-red limit. This can also be interpreted as the D-isomorphism

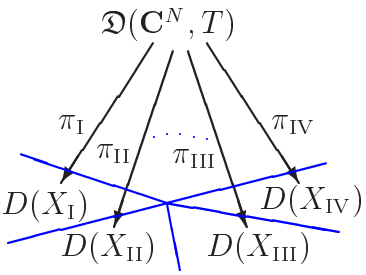
$$\pi_-(\mathcal{W}(q+3)) \quad \cong \quad \pi_-(\mathcal{W}(q)), \tag{8.5}$$

which reflects the breaking of the gauge group $U(1)$ to the discrete subgroup $\mathbf{Z}_3$. On the other hand, at large volume the boundary potential $\{Q_-, Q_-^\dagger\}$ vanishes at the $p = 0$ locus — the exceptional divisor $E \cong \mathbf{CP}^2$, so that we find

$$\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}_-) \cong \mathcal{O}_E(q),$$

where $\mathcal{O}_E(q)$ is the line bundle supported on E equipped with the restriction of the gauge connection of the line bundle $\mathcal{O}(q)$ over X_+. Of course, the D-branes $\pi_+(\mathcal{W}(q+3)) = \mathcal{O}(q+3)$ and $\pi_+(\mathcal{W}(q)) = \mathcal{O}(q)$ are not isomorphic in $D(X_+)$. The "difference" is represented by $\mathcal{O}_E(q)$.

Let us summarize our findings on the low energy behaviour of D-branes deep inside the phases of the linear sigma model. As we have seen explicitly in our examples, there are *phase dependent* low energy relations among D-branes. In a general model with gauge group $T = U(1)^k$, there are a multitude of phases, and we have a pyramid as depicted below. The maps $\pi_{\mathrm{I}}, \pi_{\mathrm{II}}, \ldots$ are projections that mod out the linear sigma model branes by the low energy D-isomorphism relations. And the D-isomorphism relations are governed by the deleted sets $\Delta_{\mathrm{I}}, \Delta_{\mathrm{II}}, \ldots$, which determine the vacuum manifolds $X_{\mathrm{I}}, X_{\mathrm{II}}, \ldots$ and hence the tachyon condensation patterns in the respective phases.



8.2 Crossing Phase Boundaries By Grade (Band) Restriction Rule

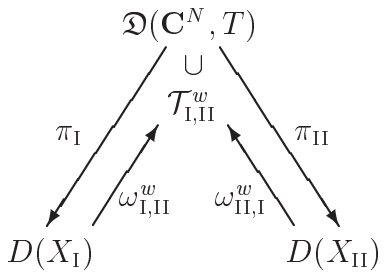
Let us now consider the problem of transporting D-branes back and forth between different phases, along paths that cross the phase boundaries. It would be a hard task if we tried to do this directly within the infra-red conformal field theory. Going away from the large volume limits there are huge perturbative as well as non-perturbative corrections that will completely blur the geometric picture of D-branes, and we do not really have a good or convenient description of the low energy theories near the phase boundaries. Linear sigma models allow us to circumvent this problem: they provide us with a simple and explicit UV-description of the bulk theory over regions of the moduli space including the phase boundaries. The grade restriction rule allows us to extend this advantage to description of D-branes. Together with the tachyon condensation pattern that we just found, it will provide a beautiful solution to the problem of D-brane transport across phase boundaries.

The first step is to lift a given D-brane in the low energy theory to a D-brane in the linear sigma model. Let us denote such a lift of the boundary interactions by ω_r : $D(X_r) \to \mathfrak{D}(\mathbf{C}^N, T)$. By definition the composition $\pi_r \circ \omega_r$ has to map a brane to an isomorphic brane, symbolically, $\pi_r \circ \omega_r \cong \mathrm{id}_{D(X_r)}$. For an arbitrary D-brane in $D(X_r)$, the existence of a lift to $\mathfrak{D}(\mathbf{C}^N, T)$ is guaranteed, because any complex of vector bundles is D-isomorphic to a complex of the form (8.1). (See Section 9 for this point and extension to complexes of coherent sheaves.) In view of the isomorphism relation of D-branes in $D(X_r)$ through D-term deformations and brane-antibrane annihilation, we notice that ω_r is highly ambiguous, i.e., for any $\mathcal{B} \in D(X_r)$ there are infinitely many D-branes $\mathfrak{B} \in \mathfrak{D}(\mathbf{C}^N, T)$ with the property that $\pi_r(\mathfrak{B}) \cong \mathcal{B}$. However, as long as we transport the D-brane along a path in Kähler moduli space that stays within a given phase, the tachyon condensation pattern does not change, and any D-brane $\mathfrak{B}$ such that $\pi_r(\mathfrak{B}) \cong \mathcal{B}$ will do as a lift.

However, when we move to another phase, the tachyon condensation pattern does change. Then, a different lift could result in a different transport. And that is indeed the case! In fact, we already know plenty of examples that clearly exhibits the dependence on the choice of lift. Let us consider Example (A) with $N = 3$. In the positive volume phase $r \gg 0$, we may lift an empty brane in $D(X_+)$ to an empty brane in the linear sigma model or to the brane $\mathfrak{B}_+$ that was defined in (8.3). In the negative volume phase $r \ll 0$, the empty brane of course descends to an empty brane in $D(X_-)$ but the brane $\mathfrak{B}_+$ descends to the fractional brane $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\overline{2})$ which is not empty in the infra-red limit. As another example, the brane $\mathcal{O}(\overline{q}) \in D(X_-)$ may be lifted to $\mathcal{W}(q)$ or $\mathcal{W}(q+3)$ but their images in the positive volume phase are completely different, $\mathcal{O}(q) \ncong \mathcal{O}(q+3) \in D(X_+)$.

We now encounter the problem discussed in Section 3.5: the parallel transport of D-branes does not seem to preserve the D-isomorphism classes. What does this mean? Do the D-isomorphism relations break down somewhere along the way? This is the point where the grade (band) restriction rule comes to the rescue: It is simply that some of the linear sigma model branes cannot be transported to the other phase, in the sense described in Section 7.3. It is *not* the D-isomorphism relation but the transport itself that breaks down.

Suppose that Phase I and Phase II share a phase boundary, and let us fix a window w in the space of FI-theta parameters for paths that connect the two phases. The window w defines the subset $\mathcal{T}^w_{\mathrm{I,II}} \subset \mathfrak{D}(\mathbf{C}^N, T)$ consisting of grade (or band) restricted D-branes, and in fact only the D-branes therein can smoothly get through. Hence, in order to be able to transport a low energy D-brane $\mathcal{B}$ along a path that passes through the window w, we have to make sure that it is lifted to a grade (or band) restricted D-brane $\mathfrak{B}$, i.e., we need a lift $\omega^w_{\mathrm{I,II}} : D(X_{\mathrm{I}}) \to \mathcal{T}^w_{\mathrm{I,II}}$ such that $\pi_{\mathrm{I}} \circ \omega^w_{\mathrm{I,II}} \cong \mathrm{id}_{D(X_{\mathrm{I}})}$. For the transport in the opposite direction, we need the corresponding lift with I and II exchanged. Diagramatically, we can associate the following hat diagram to the phase boundary with window w:



(8.6)

It is not *a priori* clear whether the map $\omega^w_{\mathrm{I,II}}$ to the subset $\mathcal{T}^w_{\mathrm{I,II}}$ exists for every D-brane in $D(X_{\mathrm{I}})$. And even if it exist, it may not be unique. We will mathematically prove that it indeed exists in the next section, but for now we illustrate the main point by examples.

As we will see, for the case $T = U(1)$, where the grade restriction rule applies, the lift is also unique up to decoupled additon of trivial brane-antibrane pairs with complete tachyon condensation. For the higher rank case, $T = U(1)^k$ with $k > 1$, where the band restriction applies, the uniqueness of the lift is lost. However, this is not harmful in that the ambiguity does not matter once we compose the lift with the projections $\pi_{\rm II}$ or $\pi_{\rm I}$. Namely, the composite maps

$$F^w_{\rm I,II} : D(X_{\rm I}) \xrightarrow{\omega^w_{\rm I,II}} \mathcal{T}^w_{\rm I,II} \xrightarrow{\pi_{\rm II}} D(X_{\rm II}),$$
$$F^w_{\rm II,I} : D(X_{\rm II}) \xrightarrow{\omega^w_{\rm II,I}} \mathcal{T}^w_{\rm I,II} \xrightarrow{\pi_{\rm I}} D(X_{\rm I}),$$

induce maps of D-isomorphism classes of branes that do not depend on the choice of lifts. In particular, they are inverses of each other,

$$F^w_{\rm II,I} \circ F^w_{\rm I,II} \cong \mathrm{id}_{D(X_{\rm I})}, \qquad F^w_{\rm I,II} \circ F^w_{\rm II,I} \cong \mathrm{id}_{D(X_{\rm II})}.$$

Let us illustrate the main points using Example (A) with $N = 3$. The singular points on the FI-theta parameter space are $(r, \theta) = (3\log 3, \pi + 2\pi n)$ $(n \in \mathbf{Z})$. Let us choose the window $w = \{-\pi < \theta < \pi\}$ at the phase boundary $r = 3\log 3$. The corresponding grade restriction rule on the Picard lattice $\mathbf{Z}$ is $\mathfrak{C}^w = \{-1, 0, 1\}$ and hence the subset $\mathcal{T}^w$ is generated by

$$\mathcal{W}(-1),\ \mathcal{W}(0),\ \mathcal{W}(1).$$

We start at positive volume, $r \gg 0$, with the holomorphic line bundle $\mathcal{O}(2)$ over X_+. The most naïve lift to the linear sigma model is the D-brane $\mathcal{C}(\mathfrak{B}_2) = \mathcal{W}(2)$; but, as we have seen previously, the D-brane

$$\mathcal{C}(\mathfrak{B}_1): \quad \mathcal{W}(-1) \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \underline{\mathcal{W}(1)}^{\oplus 3}$$

also satisfies $\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}_1) \cong \mathcal{O}(2)$. In fact, there are infinitely many D-branes $\mathfrak{B}$ with $\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}) \cong \mathcal{O}(2)$. However, among those the D-brane $\mathfrak{B}_1$ is special in that it is an object in the grade restricted subset $\mathcal{T}^w$, whereas, for instance, $\mathfrak{B}_2$ is not. We conclude that $\mathfrak{B}_1$ is the right representative to cross the phase boundary through the window w. After arriving at the orbifold phase, $r \ll 0$, we apply the projection π_- to $\mathfrak{B}_1$ and obtain the low energy D-brane in $D(X_-)$:

$$\mathcal{O}(\overline{-1}) \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(\overline{0})^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \underline{\mathcal{O}(\overline{1})}^{\oplus 3}.$$

This is the result of transporting the D-brane $\mathcal{O}(2) \in D(X_+)$ through the window w.

We next start at $r \ll 0$, with the equivariant line bundle $\mathcal{O}(\overline{2})$ over $\mathbf{C}^3$. Again this can be lifted to infinitely many branes $\mathcal{W}(2+3n)$, $n \in \mathbf{Z}$, but only one of them, $\mathcal{W}(-1)$, is

in the grade restriction range. Thus, the transport of $\mathcal{O}(\overline{2}) \in D(X_-)$ through the window w results in $\mathcal{O}(-1) \in D(X_+)$.

As another example, let us consider the fractional brane $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\overline{2}) \in D(X_-)$. We have found in (8.25) that its naïve lift is the brane $\mathfrak{B}_+$ given in (8.3). However, the rightmost entry, $\mathcal{W}(2)$, is not in the grade restriction range. But we can replace $\mathfrak{B}_+$ by

$$\mathcal{W}(-1) \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{pX} \underline{\mathcal{W}(-1)}$$

using the D-isomorphism relation $p : \mathcal{W}(2) \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathcal{W}(-1)$ in the $r \ll 0$ phase. This new D-brane can be transported safely through the window w, and we obtain the D-brane $\mathcal{O}(-1) \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(0)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{pX} \underline{\mathcal{O}(-1)}$ as the large volume image of $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\overline{2})$.

The key step is to find a lift of a low energy D-brane to the grade restricted subset in the phase of the starting point. How can we find such a lift in general? It is always possible to find *some* lift to a complex of Wilson line branes in $\mathfrak{D}(\mathbf{C}^N, T)$, but that may not be grade restricted. The point is that this complex can always be changed into a grade restricted one by binding infra-red empty D-branes to it, so that the D-isomorphism class is preserved. In the $r \gg 0$ phase, one can do so using the D-branes

$$\mathcal{W}(n) \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(n+1)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(n+2)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(n+3) \quad \text{for all } n \in \mathbf{Z}. \tag{8.7}$$

By binding these D-branes to the original complex, we can eliminate the Wilson line branes $\mathcal{W}(q)$ whose charges are too large or too small, and we can repeat this procedure until the resulting complex fits into the grade restriction range. The complex (8.7) has the right length so that one can make sure that the process of decreasing or increasing the charges does not overshoot. In the $r \ll 0$ phase, the same rôle is played by

$$\mathcal{W}(n) \xrightarrow{p} \mathcal{W}(n-3).$$

Let us describe the corresponding empty branes in the general one-parameter model with the fields $X_1, ..., X_l$, carrying positive charges $Q_1, ..., Q_l$, and the fields $Y_1, ..., Y_{l'}$, carrying negative charges $-Q'_1, ..., -Q'_{l'}$. In view of the Calabi-Yau condition (4.15) we have $\sum_{i=1}^{k} Q_i = \mathcal{S} = \sum_{j=1}^{l'} Q'_j$. In the $r \gg 0$ phase, any D-brane $\mathfrak{B}$ can be brought into the grade restriction range by using the Koszul complex

$$\mathcal{K}_+ \ : \quad \mathcal{W}(0) \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}_+ \xrightarrow{X} \wedge^2 \mathcal{W}_+ \xrightarrow{X} \cdots \xrightarrow{X} \wedge^{l-1} \mathcal{W}_+ \xrightarrow{X} \wedge^l \mathcal{W}_+ = \mathcal{W}(\mathcal{S}) \tag{8.8}$$

and its shifts $\mathcal{K}_+(n)$, where $\mathcal{W}_+ := \oplus_{i=1}^{l} \mathcal{W}(Q_i)$. In the $r \ll 0$ phase, this can be done using the Koszul complex

$$\mathcal{K}_- \ : \quad \mathcal{W}(0) \xrightarrow{Y} \mathcal{W}_- \xrightarrow{Y} \wedge^2 \mathcal{W}_- \xrightarrow{Y} \cdots \xrightarrow{Y} \wedge^{l'-1} \mathcal{W}_- \xrightarrow{Y} \wedge^{l'} \mathcal{W}_- = \mathcal{W}(-\mathcal{S}) \tag{8.9}$$

and its shifts $\mathcal{K}_-(n)$, where $\mathcal{W}_- := \oplus_{j=1}^{l'} \mathcal{W}(-Q'_j)$.

In models with higher rank gauge groups, we mentioned that the band restricted lift is not unique but that the non-uniqueness does not matter in the end. Let us illustrate this subtle point using the two-parameter model (C). There are four phases as depicted in Fig. 3. Let us focus on Phases III and IV. We recall the deleted sets there:

$$\Delta_{\rm III} = \{x_6 = 0\} \cup \{p = 0\},$$
$$\Delta_{\rm IV} = \{x_1 = x_2 = 0\} \cup \{p = 0\}.$$

The unbroken gauge group at the III-IV phase boundary is the subgroup $U(1)_2$ which has width $\mathcal{S} = 2$. The asymptotic singular locus in this direction is at $\theta^2 \in 2\pi\mathbf{Z}$. Let us choose the window $-2\pi < \theta^2 < 0$ for which the band restriction rule is

$$q^2 = 0, 1.$$

Every brane in Phase IV can be lifted to a complex of Wilson line branes obeying this band restriction rule. This can be done by reducing or increasing the charge q^2 using the complex

$$\mathcal{K}_+^{\rm III,IV} \ : \ \mathcal{W}(0,0) \xrightarrow{\binom{x_1}{x_2}} \begin{matrix} \mathcal{W}(0,1) \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(0,1) \end{matrix} \xrightarrow{(-x_2,x_1)} \mathcal{W}(0,2)$$

or its shifts $\mathcal{K}_+^{\rm III,IV}(n,m)$. They are D-isomorphic to the empty brane in the low energy theory, since $\{x_1 = x_2 = 0\}$ is a part of the deleted set $\Delta_{\rm IV}$. Similarly, every brane in Phase III can be lifted to a complex of band restricted Wilson line branes using the complex

$$\mathcal{K}_-^{\rm III,IV} \ : \ \mathcal{W}(0,0) \xrightarrow{X_6} \mathcal{W}(1,-2),$$

or its shifts $\mathcal{K}_-^{\rm III,IV}(n,m)$, which are empty in the low energy theory since $\{x_6 = 0\}$ is a part of the deleted set $\Delta_{\rm III}$. However, in both phases the lift is not unique. The reason is that there are additional branes that are empty in the low energy theory, i.e.,

$$\mathcal{K} \ : \ \mathcal{W}(0,0) \xrightarrow{p} \mathcal{W}(-4,0)$$

and its shifts $\mathcal{K}(n,m)$. One can modify the lift using the latter branes without changing the charge q^2. From the structure of the deleted sets, this is obviously the only non-trivial ambiguity of the lifts in both phases. Now, the point is that this ambiguity is common to the two phases. In particular, it does not matter when the D-brane is projected down to the low energy theory even after coming to the other side of the phase boundary. (Of course, when reduced to the low energy theory in a different phase, say Phase I, in which

$\{p = 0\}$ is not a part of the deleted set, modification by $\mathcal{K}$ results in a totally different brane.)

This is the general situation. The key point is the relation proved in Section 4.5:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_{\mathrm{I}} &= \Delta_{+}^{\mathrm{I,II}} \cup (\Delta_{\mathrm{I}} \cap \Delta_{\mathrm{II}}) \\ \Delta_{\mathrm{II}} &= \Delta_{-}^{\mathrm{I,II}} \cup (\Delta_{\mathrm{I}} \cap \Delta_{\mathrm{II}}) \end{aligned} \tag{8.10}$$

One can find a lift in the band restriction range using the Koszul complexes associated with $\Delta_{+}^{\mathrm{I,II}}$ and $\Delta_{-}^{\mathrm{I,II}}$ in Phases I and II respectively. There are genuine ambiguities in the lifts but they are from $\Delta_{\mathrm{I}} \cap \Delta_{\mathrm{II}}$ and are common to both phases. Thus, one can go back and forth between Phases I and II without worrying about the ambiguity.

8.3 Monodromies

Now that we learned a way to transport D-branes across phase boundaries, we next study transport of D-branes along non-trivial closed loops in the Kähler moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$. This yields an operation known as *monodromy*.

Models With Gauge Group $T = U(1)$

The Kähler moduli space of the linear sigma model with a single $U(1)$ gauge group is complex one-dimensional and has three special points: the 'positive volume limit' $r \to \infty$, the 'negative volume limit' $r \to -\infty$, and the singular point $t_{\mathit{eff}} = 0$. We describe the monodromies around each of these points.

Monodromies around the positive and negative volume limits $r \to \pm\infty$ are rather straightforward. They are simple shifts of the theta parameter by $\pm 2\pi$. Since the theta parameter enters into the boundary interaction of the Wilson line brane $\mathcal{W}(q)$ in the combination $\theta + 2\pi q$, shift of θ by $\pm 2\pi$ is equivalent to the shift of q by ± 1 while θ is kept intact. This shows that the monodromy is a shift in the gauge charge;

$$\mathrm{M}_{\theta \to \theta \pm 2\pi}(\mathcal{E}, Q, R) \;=\; (\mathcal{E}(\pm 1), Q, R). \tag{8.11}$$

The monodromy around the singular point is less straightforward and hence is more interesting. We recall that the simgular point is at $\mathrm{e}^t = \prod_i Q_i^{Q_i}$, i.e., at $r = \sum_i Q_i \log |Q_i|$ and $\theta \equiv \pi \mathcal{S} \bmod 2\pi\mathbf{Z}$, where $\mathcal{S} = \sum_{Q_i > 0} Q_i$. Let us consider a loop that starts from a point deep inside the negative volume phase $r \ll 0$, goes once around the singular point *counter clockwise*, and comes back to the starting point. This can be represented by a

path in the (r, θ) space as depicted in Fig 22 (the figure is for the case where $\mathcal{S}$ is odd so that the singularity is at $\theta \in \pi(2\mathbf{Z}+1)$). The path starts at a point in $r \ll 0$ and

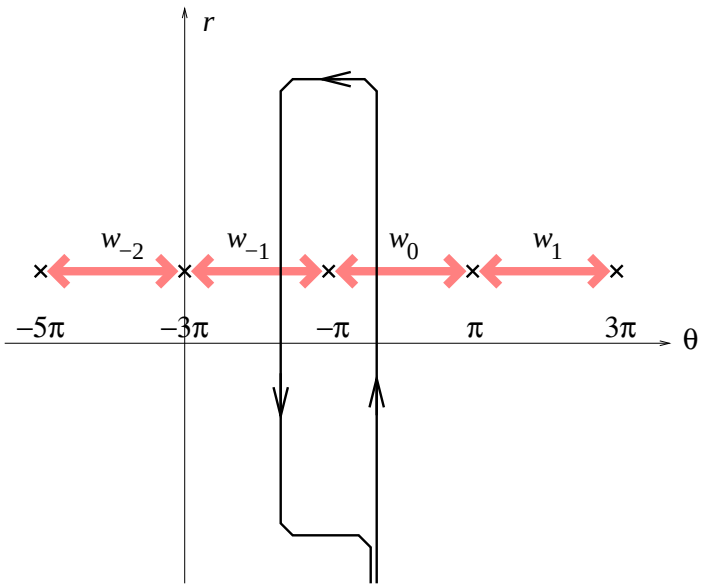


Figure 22: A loop around a singular point in $\mathfrak{M}_K$

goes to $r \gg 0$ through a window w_0, makes a turn and comes back to $r \ll 0$ through the next window w_{-1}. To transport a brane in $D(X_-)$ along this path, we first lift it to a linear sigma model brane that respects the grade restriction rule of the window w_0 and then move it to $r \gg 0$ along the path that goes through w_0. Once inside the positive volume phase, using the D-isomorphism relation in $D(X_+)$, we switch the linear sigma model brane to another one that obeys the grade restriction rule of the window w_{-1}. And then we move it back to the negative volume phase along the path through the window w_{-1}. This gives the result of the monodromy along the loop around the singular point.

Let us illustrate this operation in Example (A) with $N = 3$. In this example, the width $\mathcal{S}$ is 3 and the grade restriction rules for some of the windows in Fig 22 are

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{T}^{w_{-1}} &= \langle \mathcal{W}(0), \mathcal{W}(1), \mathcal{W}(2) \rangle, \\
\mathcal{T}^{w_0} &= \langle \mathcal{W}(-1), \mathcal{W}(0), \mathcal{W}(1) \rangle, \\
\mathcal{T}^{w_1} &= \langle \mathcal{W}(-2), \mathcal{W}(-1), \mathcal{W}(0) \rangle.
\end{aligned}$$

Let us take a D-brane at the orbifold point in the Kähler moduli space, say the $\mathbf{Z}_3$-equivariant line bundle $\mathcal{O}(\overline{2})$ over $\mathbf{C}^3$. The lift to the linear sigma model can be given by $\mathcal{W}(q)$ for any $q \in 3\mathbf{Z}+2$. Since we first go to the positive volume phase through the window w_0, we must choose the one in $\langle \mathcal{W}(-1), \mathcal{W}(0), \mathcal{W}(1) \rangle$, namely, $\mathcal{W}(-1)$. Inside the

$r \gg 0$ phase, we wish to find a different linear sigma model brane that is D-isomorphic to $\mathcal{W}(-1)$ at low energies and lies in the subset $\langle \mathcal{W}(0), \mathcal{W}(1), \mathcal{W}(2) \rangle$ associated with the window w_{-1}. In view of the fact that the brane $\mathfrak{B}_+$ given by (8.3) is D-isomorphic to the empty brane in this phase, we find that the complex

$$\underline{\mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3}} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(2) \tag{8.12}$$

is the one we wanted. That is, this is the representative that can go through the window w_{-1}. Once we are back in the $r \ll 0$ phase, we can project it to the low energy theory. In this way, we find the monodromy image of $\mathcal{O}(\overline{2})$ along this loop (let us call it L)

$$\mathrm{M}_L(\mathcal{O}(\overline{2})) \;=\; \underline{\mathcal{O}(\overline{0})^{\oplus 3}} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(\overline{1})^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(\overline{2}). \tag{8.13}$$

It is as easy as this in any example.

When presented in a slightly different way, the above example leads to a general recipe to determine the monodromy action. The replacement of $\mathcal{W}(-1)$ by the complex (8.12) in the $r \gg 0$ phase can be understood as binding to $\mathcal{W}(-1)$ the empty brane $\mathfrak{B}_+$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \mathcal{W}(-1) & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3} & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3} & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(2) \\ & {\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}}\searrow & \oplus & & & & \\ & & \underline{\mathcal{W}(-1)} & & & & \end{array}$$

Once we are back in the $r \ll 0$ phase, we may bind to this the empty brane $\mathfrak{B}_-$, given by the complex $\mathcal{W}(2) \xrightarrow{p} \mathcal{W}(-1)$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} & & & & & & \mathcal{W}(2) & \xrightarrow{p} & \mathcal{W}(-1) \\ & & & & & & \oplus & {\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}}\searrow & \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(-1) & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3} & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3} & \xrightarrow{X} & & & \mathcal{W}(2) \\ & {\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}}\searrow & \oplus & & & & & & \\ & & \underline{\mathcal{W}(-1)} & & & & & & \end{array}$$

The net result is binding to the original brane $\mathcal{W}(-1)$ the brane $\mathfrak{V}$ given by the complex

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} & & & & & & \mathcal{W}(2) & \xrightarrow{p} & \mathcal{W}(-1) \\ & & & & & & \oplus & {\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}}\searrow & \oplus \\ \underline{\mathcal{W}(-1)} & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3} & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3} & \xrightarrow{X} & & & \mathcal{W}(2) \end{array} \tag{8.14}$$

by the cochain map $\varphi : \mathfrak{V} \to \mathcal{W}(-1)$ that maps the left most $\mathcal{W}(-1)$ identically to $\mathcal{W}(-1)$. Collapsing the trivial brane-antibrane pair $\mathcal{W}(2) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} \mathcal{W}(2)$, according to the procedure from (3.7) to (3.8), the brane $\mathfrak{V}$ could also be presented as

$$\mathfrak{V} \cong \;\; \underline{\mathcal{W}(-1)} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{pX} \mathcal{W}(-1).$$

Note that the map φ is the only cochain map from $\mathfrak{V}$ to $\mathcal{W}(-1)$, and this is true also when projected to $D(X_-)$. Thus, we find that the monodromy image of $\mathcal{O}(\overline{2}) \in D(X_-)$ is simply the bound state with the brane $\pi_-(\mathfrak{V})$ via the unique map $\pi_-(\mathfrak{V}) \to \mathcal{O}(\overline{2})$:

$$\mathrm{M}_L(\mathcal{O}(\overline{2})) \;=\; \mathrm{Cone}\Big(\pi_-(\mathfrak{V}) \to \mathcal{O}(\overline{2})\Big).$$

It is now clear what to do for a general brane $\mathcal{B} \in D(X_-)$. We first lift it to a brane $\mathfrak{B}$ in the grade restricted subset $\langle \mathcal{W}(-1), \mathcal{W}(0), \mathcal{W}(1)\rangle$ and bind a copy of $\mathfrak{V}$ at each appearance of the factor $\mathcal{W}(-1)$ in $\mathfrak{B}$ that fails to obey the new grade restriction rule $\langle \mathcal{W}(0), \mathcal{W}(1), \mathcal{W}(2)\rangle$. The end result is binding as many copies of $\pi_-(\mathfrak{V})$ as the number of $\mathcal{W}(-1)$'s in $\mathfrak{B}$. In fact, for each $\mathcal{W}(-1)$ at R-degree j there is a chiral ring element $\mathcal{H}^j(\pi_-(\mathfrak{V}), \mathcal{B})$, and vice versa. (This will become clear from our consideration in Section 9.) Thus, we find that the monodromy action is given by

$$\mathrm{M}_L(\mathcal{B}) \;=\; \mathrm{Cone}\left(\bigoplus_{j\in\mathbf{Z}} \mathcal{H}^j(\pi_-(\mathfrak{V}), \mathcal{B}) \otimes \pi_-(\mathfrak{V})[-j] \longrightarrow \mathcal{B}\right). \tag{8.15}$$

Let us next consider the monodromy along the same loop but with the opposite orientation. The loop goes around the singular point, now *clockwise*. Let us see what happens to the brane $\mathcal{W}(-1)$ again. Since we first go through the window w_{-1}, binding with $\mathfrak{B}_-$ must be done in advance:

$$\begin{array}{c} \underline{\mathcal{W}(-1)} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(2) \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \searrow^{\mathrm{id}} \\ \xrightarrow{p} \end{array} \mathcal{W}(-1).$$

Once inside $r \gg 0$, we must bind the empty brane $\mathfrak{B}_+$ before coming back to $r \ll 0$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & & & \underline{\mathcal{W}(-1)} & & \\ & & & & \oplus & \searrow^{\mathrm{id}} & \\ & & & & \mathcal{W}(2) & \xrightarrow{p} & \mathcal{W}(-1) \\ & & & & \oplus & \searrow^{\mathrm{id}} & \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(-1) & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3} & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3} & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(2). \end{array}$$

The net result is binding the brane $\mathfrak{V}$ in (8.14) again, but now with an arrow in the opposite direction — from the given brane $\mathcal{W}(-1)$ to $\mathfrak{V}$. The monodromy action on a general brane $\mathcal{B} \in D(X_-)$ is

$$\mathrm{M}_{-L}(\mathcal{B}) \;=\; \mathrm{Cone}\left(\mathcal{B} \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{j\in\mathbf{Z}} \mathcal{H}^j(\mathcal{B}, \pi_-(\mathfrak{V})) \otimes \pi_-(\mathfrak{V}[j]))\right)[-1].$$

It is obviously the inverse of M_L: the compositions $\mathrm{M}_{-L} \circ \mathrm{M}_L$ and $\mathrm{M}_L \circ \mathrm{M}_{-L}$ simply bind an empty brane to a given brane.

In the same way, we can study monodromies along loops with a base point in the $r \gg 0$ phase, such as L_1 as despicted in Fig. 23. The result is again binding the brane $\mathfrak{V}$:

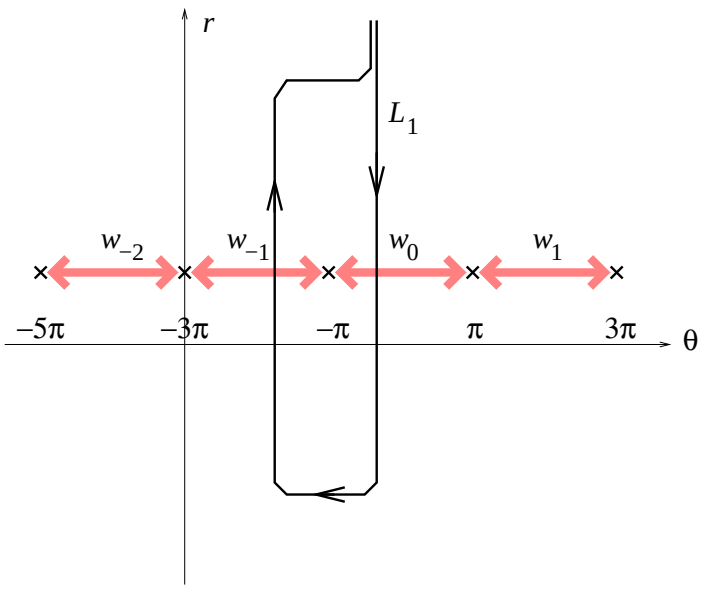


Figure 23: Another loop around the same point

$$\mathrm{M}_{L_1}(\mathcal{B}') \;=\; \mathrm{Cone}\left(\mathcal{B}' \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{j\in\mathbf{Z}} \mathcal{H}^j(\mathcal{B}', \pi_+(\mathfrak{V})) \otimes \pi_+(\mathfrak{V}[j]))\right)[-1],$$
$$\mathrm{M}_{-L_1}(\mathcal{B}') \;=\; \mathrm{Cone}\left(\bigoplus_{j\in\mathbf{Z}} \mathcal{H}^j(\pi_+(\mathfrak{V}), \mathcal{B}') \otimes \pi_+(\mathfrak{V})[-j] \longrightarrow \mathcal{B}'\right).$$

We have seen that the monodromy around the singular point $(r, \theta) = (3\log 3, -\pi)$ is to bind a certain number of copies of the brane $\mathfrak{V}$. In the $r \gg 0$ phase, the brane $\mathfrak{V}$ (with a shift by 3) reduces at low energies to

$$\mathcal{O}(2) \xrightarrow{p} \mathcal{O}(-1) \;\cong\; \mathcal{O}_E(-1),$$

the D-brane wrapped on the exceptional divisor $E \cong \mathbf{CP}^2$ and supporting a non-trivial $U(1)$ gauge connection. In the negative volume phase $r \ll 0$, it reduces to

$$\mathcal{O}(\overline{-1}) \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(\overline{0})^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(\overline{1})^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(\overline{-1}) \;\cong\; \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\overline{2}),$$

which is one of the three fractional branes. Note also that the monodromies around the same singular point are described more naturally in terms of another brane $\widetilde{\mathfrak{V}}$

$$\begin{array}{rl} & \left[\begin{array}{ccccccc} \mathcal{W}(2) & \xrightarrow{p} & \mathcal{W}(-1) & & & & \\ \oplus & \nearrow_{\mathrm{id}} & \oplus & & & & \\ \underline{\mathcal{W}(-1)} & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3} & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3} & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(2) \end{array}\right] \\ \cong & \quad \underline{\mathcal{W}(2)} \xrightarrow{pX} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(2), \end{array}$$

if we would like to present the branes using the grade restricted set $\langle \mathcal{W}(0), \mathcal{W}(1), \mathcal{W}(2)\rangle$ rather than $\langle \mathcal{W}(-1), \mathcal{W}(0), \mathcal{W}(1)\rangle$. This brane is essentially the same as $\mathfrak{V}$, since $\pi_+(\mathfrak{V}) \cong \pi_+(\widetilde{\mathfrak{V}}[-2])$ and $\pi_-(\mathfrak{V}) \cong \pi_-(\widetilde{\mathfrak{V}})$.

It is easy to find the analogue of $\mathfrak{V}$ for any model with $U(1)$ gauge group. Consider the model with fields $X_1, ..., X_l$ and $Y_1, ..., Y_{l'}$ of positive charges $Q_1, ..., Q_l$ and negative charges $-Q'_1, ..., -Q'_{l'}$. The brane $\mathfrak{V}$ relevant for the monodromy around the singular point is obtained by concatenation of the two Koszul-type complexes (8.8)-(8.9):

$$\mathfrak{V} \;=\; \mathrm{Cone}\Big(\mathcal{K}_-(\mathcal{S})[-l'] \longrightarrow \mathcal{K}_+\Big)[-l]$$

by the identity map of the left-most $\mathcal{W}(\mathcal{S})$ of $\mathcal{K}_-(\mathcal{S})$ to the right-most $\mathcal{W}(\mathcal{S})$ of $\mathcal{K}_+$. We may need to make an appropriate shift in the gauge charge, $\mathfrak{V}(n)$, depending on the precise value of the theta parameter. In the positive (*resp.* negative) volume phase, it reduces to a brane wrapped on the locus $Y_1 = \cdots = Y_{l'} = 0$ (*resp.* $X_1 = \cdots = X_l = 0$).

In [71] it was argued from the spacetime point of view that the monodromy around a singular point of the moduli space is governed by binding copies of the D-brane that becomes massless at that point. This approach was recast into the language of derived category in [72, 73] following Kontsevich's suggestion and studied further in [6, 74, 75]. Our result directly confirms a part of this picture: the monodromy around a singular point is the binding of a brane $\mathfrak{V}$. A comparison with Strominger's spacetime picture then tells us that our brane $\mathfrak{V}$ is the one that becomes massless at the singular point. In the past, the brane that becomes massless was identified only in the mirror description — it is the A-brane wrapped on the vanishing cycle. There was not even an attempt to do this for B-branes, except for identification of the Ramond-Ramond charges. This is because the usual methods were based on the non-linear sigma model description, which certainly breaks down near the singularity of the Kähler moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$. In the present work, with the input from the spacetime picture, we have directly identified in the linear sigma model description the B-brane that becomes massless at the singular point. In particular, the D-brane $\mathfrak{V}$ in our Example (A) confirms the results from the mirror computation of the central charge in [76].

Our approach to describe monodromies has a technical advantage over the approach that was previously used in the literature such as [72, 73, 75], which starts from a formula like (8.15). From our point of view this formula is a consequence of a more general construction, i.e., a loop around a singular point must go through two different windows, and hence we must change the linear sigma model representatives according to the grade restriction rule. In this procedure, we do not have to compute the chiral ring spectrum $\mathcal{H}^j(\pi_-(\mathfrak{V}), \mathcal{B})$ nor to construct the cone. That is particularly advantageous in situations where $\mathcal{H}^j(\pi_-(\mathfrak{V}), \mathcal{B})$ is infinite dimensional and the formula like (8.15) does not make sense. We will find such examples in models with higher rank gauge group.

Multi-parameter Models

For models with higher rank gauge groups, $T = U(1)^k$ with $k > 1$, the story is essentially the same, and our approach again provides an efficient way to find monodromies of loops in the Käher moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$.

A shift of theta parameters $\theta^a \to \theta^a + 2\pi n^a$ at a point deep inside a phase does, as in the $U(1)$ case, shifts the gauge charges, $\mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{E}(n^1, ..., n^k)$. The monodromy of a loop around the singular locus $\mathfrak{S}$ in an asymptotic direction can be found as follows. An asymptotic direction corresponds to a phase boundary where all but one $U(1)$ subgroup of the gauge group is completely Higgsed. The loop can be regarded as a loop in the FI-theta parameter space of that single $U(1)$ subgroup. Then, we simply apply what we have done previously in the model with a single $U(1)$ gauge group.

Let us illustrate the monodromy around the singular locus $\mathfrak{S}$ in Example (C). We look at the asymptotic region corresponding to the III-IV phase boundary, where the unbroken gauge group is the subgroup $U(1)_2$ and the singular locus is at $\theta^2 \in 2\pi\mathbf{Z}$ and $r^2 = 2\log 2$. We consider the loop L as depicted in Fig. 24. The band restriction rules at the two relevant windows are:

$$\begin{aligned} w_{-1}: &\quad q^2 = 0, 1, \\ w_0: &\quad q^2 = -1, 0. \end{aligned}$$

Let us take the brane $\mathcal{O}(m, 1)$ in Phase IV. Its lift that obeys the band restriction rule of the window w_{-1} is $\mathcal{W}(m, 1)$. Here m could be replaced by $m \pm 4, m \pm 8$, etc, since $\{p = 0\}$ is a part of the deleted set (this applies also to Phase III). This can be moved safely to Phase III. Once inside that phase we switch to a representative that obeys the band restriction rule of the next window w_0. This is done by binding the complex $\mathcal{K}_-^{\mathrm{III,IV}}(m, 1)$

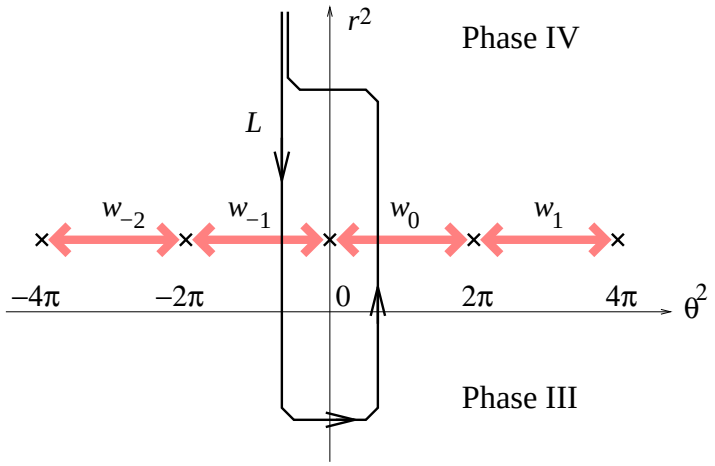


Figure 24: A loop around the singular locus in the two-parameter model (C)

introduced in Section 8.2 to $\mathcal{W}(m,1)$:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{W}(m,1) & \xrightarrow{x_6} & \mathcal{W}(m+1,-1) \\ & {\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}}\searrow & \oplus \\ & & \underline{\mathcal{W}(m,1)} \end{array} \quad . \tag{8.16}$$

Then, one can move $\mathcal{W}(m+1,-1)$ back to Phase IV through w_0. After doing that, we again bring it into the form consisting only of the band restricted Wilson lines $\mathcal{W}(*,0)$ and $\mathcal{W}(*,1)$. This is done by binding

$$\mathcal{K}_+^{\mathrm{III,IV}}(m+1,-1)\ :\quad \mathcal{W}(m+1,-1) \xrightarrow{\binom{x_1}{x_2}} \begin{array}{c} \mathcal{W}(m+1,0) \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(m+1,0) \end{array} \xrightarrow{(-x_2,x_1)} \mathcal{W}(m+1,1)$$

via the identity map to $\mathcal{W}(m+1,-1)$. The outcome is the total binding of

$$\mathfrak{V}_m\ :\quad \underline{\mathcal{W}(m,1)} \xrightarrow{x_6\binom{x_1}{x_2}} \begin{array}{c} \mathcal{W}(m+1,0) \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(m+1,0) \end{array} \xrightarrow{(-x_2,x_1)} \mathcal{W}(m+1,1)$$

to the original brane $\mathcal{W}(m,1)$ via the map $\mathfrak{V}_m \to \mathcal{W}(m,1)$ that sends $\mathcal{W}(m,1)$ in $\mathfrak{V}_m$ to $\mathcal{W}(m,1)$ by the identity. Thus, we found that the monodromy is given by

$$\mathrm{M}_L(\mathcal{O}(m,1)) \ = \ \mathrm{Cone}\Big(\pi_{\mathrm{IV}}(\mathfrak{V}_m) \to \mathcal{O}(m,1)\Big).$$

Note that the isomorphism class of $\pi_{\mathrm{IV}}(\mathfrak{V}_m)$ depends on m; in fact $\pi_{\mathrm{IV}}(\mathfrak{V}_m) \cong \pi_{\mathrm{IV}}(\mathfrak{V}_{m'})$ if and only if $m \equiv m'$ modulo 4. This holds in Phase III as well. Thus, for a general brane $\mathcal{B}$ in Phase IV, the monodromy along the loop L is binding a copy of $\pi_{\mathrm{IV}}(\mathfrak{V}_m)$ with $m = 0, 1, 2$ or 3 for each $\mathcal{W}(n,1)$ in the lift $\mathfrak{B}$ to $\mathcal{T}_{\mathrm{III,IV}}^{w_{-1}}$, where $n = m \bmod 4$.

When we try to write this monodromy action in the form

$$\mathrm{M}_L(\mathcal{B}) \;=\; \mathrm{Cone}\left(\bigoplus_{m=0,1,2,3}\bigoplus_{j\in\mathbf{Z}}\mathcal{H}^j(\pi_{\mathrm{IV}}(\mathfrak{V}_m),\mathcal{B})\otimes\pi_{\mathrm{IV}}(\mathfrak{V}_m)[-j]\longrightarrow\mathcal{B}\right), \qquad (8.17)$$

we run into troubles. This is in view of the fact that in the present situation the D-branes $\mathfrak{V}_m$ are non-compact, so that infinite dimensional spaces of chiral ring elements appear in (8.17). For instance, $\mathcal{H}^0(\pi_{\mathrm{IV}}(\mathfrak{V}_m),\mathcal{O}(m,1))$ is spanned by the gauge invariant monomials $\{1, px_3^4, px_3^3x_4, \ldots\}$ that map $\mathcal{O}(m,1)$ in $\pi_{\mathrm{IV}}(\mathfrak{V}_m)$ to $\mathcal{O}(m,1)$, whereas only the first element 1 played a rôle in (8.16).

This is a quite general feature of multi-parameter models, and the monodromy formula (8.17) is only applicable if the D-branes that induce the monodromy action are compactly supported. As an example the D-branes inducing the monodromy at the I-IV phase boundary of the two-parameter model (C) are of this kind. We want to stress that our method does not rely on computing the spectrum, and thus applies to *any* phase boundaries in multi-parameter models.

8.4 More Examples

8.4.1 Flop Transition Of The Resolved Conifold

Let us consider Example (B), the $U(1)$ gauge theory with four fields X, Y, U, V which carry charges $1, 1, -1, -1$. It provides a local model for a flop transition. The deleted sets of the two phases $r \gg 0$ and $r \ll 0$ are

$$\Delta_+ = \{x = y = 0\}, \qquad \Delta_- = \{u = v = 0\}.$$

For $r \gg 0$ the fields x, y form the base $\mathbf{CP}^1$ and u, v span the fibre, whereas for $r \ll 0$ it is the other way around:

$$X_+ = \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{O}(-1)^{\oplus 2}_{u,v} \\ \downarrow \\ \mathbf{CP}^1_{[x:y]} \end{bmatrix} \quad \overset{\text{flop}}{\longleftrightarrow} \quad X_- = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{CP}^1_{[u:v]} \\ \uparrow \\ \mathcal{O}(-1)^{\oplus 2}_{x,y} \end{bmatrix}$$

In view of the deleted sets, we find that the branes

$$\mathcal{K}_+ \;:\quad \mathcal{W}(0) \xrightarrow{\binom{y}{-x}} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 2} \xrightarrow{(x,y)} \underline{\mathcal{W}(2)}$$

$$\mathcal{K}_- \;:\quad \mathcal{W}(2) \xrightarrow{\binom{v}{-u}} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 2} \xrightarrow{(u,v)} \underline{\mathcal{W}(0)}$$

are empty at low energies in the $r \gg 0$ and $r \ll 0$ phases, respectively. The model has a singular point at $e^{r-i\theta} = 1$.

We would like to transport branes back and forth between the two phases. Let us choose the window $w = \{-2\pi < \theta < 0\}$ at the phase boundary, for which the grade restriction rule is given by

$$\mathcal{T}^w = \langle\, \mathcal{W}(0), \mathcal{W}(1) \,\rangle$$

In what follows, we consider compactly supported D-branes on one side of the flop and find what they turn into on the other side.

*D*2-*Branes*

Phase $r \gg 0$: Let us consider $\mathcal{O}_{E_+}(0) \in D(X_+)$, the D2-brane wrapped on the zero section $E_+ = \{u = v = 0\} \cong \mathbf{CP}^1_{[x:y]} \subset X_+$ and supporting a trivial line bundle. It can be represented by the complex of vector bundles

$$\mathcal{O}(2) \xrightarrow{\binom{v}{-u}} \mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus 2} \xrightarrow{(u,v)} \underline{\mathcal{O}(0)}. \tag{8.18}$$

A lift to the linear sigma model is obtained by replacing each line bundle $\mathcal{O}(q)$ in this complex by the Wilson line brane $\mathcal{W}(q)$ — this gives $\mathcal{K}_-$. In order to transport it to the other phase $r \ll 0$ through the window w, we have to rewrite it as a grade restricted complex, i.e., we have to replace the Wilson line brane $\mathcal{W}(2)$ by something made of $\mathcal{W}(0)$ and $\mathcal{W}(1)$. This can be done using the brane $\mathcal{K}_+$ which is empty at low energies in this phase. Namely, we bind the empty brane $\mathcal{K}_+$, written in a different basis, to our brane $\mathcal{K}_-$ by the cochain map $\mathcal{K}_- \to \mathcal{K}_+$ that sends $\mathcal{W}(2)$ to $\mathcal{W}(2)$ by the identity:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & \mathcal{W}(2) & \xrightarrow{\binom{v}{-u}} & \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 2} & \xrightarrow{(u,v)} & \underline{\mathcal{W}(0)} \\ & & \oplus & \searrow^{\mathrm{id}} & \oplus & & \\ \mathcal{W}(0) & \xrightarrow{\binom{x}{y}} & \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 2} & \xrightarrow{(-y,x)} & \mathcal{W}(2) & & \end{array} \quad . \tag{8.19}$$

Cancelling the trivial pair $\mathcal{W}(2) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} \mathcal{W}(2)$ as in (3.7) and (3.8), we obtain the following grade restricted representative of $\mathcal{O}_{E_+}(0)$:

$$\mathcal{C}(\mathfrak{B}_1) \;:\quad \mathcal{W}(0) \xrightarrow{\binom{x}{y}} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 2} \xrightarrow{\left(\begin{smallmatrix} yv & -xv \\ -yu & xu \end{smallmatrix}\right)} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 2} \xrightarrow{(u,v)} \underline{\mathcal{W}(0)}\ .$$

Another example is provided by the D-brane $\mathcal{O}_{E_+}(-1) \in D(X_+)$, again wrapped on the zero section E_+, but now supporting a non-tivial line bundle. The naïve lift is $\mathcal{K}_-(-1)$,

but this includes the Wilson line brane $\mathcal{W}(-1)$, which is outside the grade restriction rule. This time we glue the empty brane $\mathcal{K}_+(-1)$ by the map $\mathcal{K}_+(-1) \to \mathcal{K}_-(-1)$ and then cancel $\mathcal{W}(-1) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} \mathcal{W}(-1)$. This leads to the following grade restricted representative of $\mathcal{O}_{E_+}(-1)$:

$$\mathcal{C}(\mathfrak{B}_2) : \quad \mathcal{W}(1) \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 2} \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} yv & -uy \\ -vx & xu \end{pmatrix}} \underline{\mathcal{W}(0)}^{\oplus 2} \xrightarrow{(x,y)} \mathcal{W}(1) \ .$$

Phase $r \ll 0$: After crossing the phase boundary the tachyon condensation pattern changed. Now the complexes $\mathcal{K}_-(n)$ are trivial branes-antibrane systems, and they can be eliminated from $\mathfrak{B}_1$ and $\mathfrak{B}_2$. For instance, if we restore the identity map in $\mathfrak{B}_1$ to write it in the form (8.19) and then eliminate the trivial upper line, we see that one ends up with $\pi_-(\mathcal{K}_+[1])$. This is isomorphic to the D2-brane $\mathcal{O}_{E_-}(2)[1] \in D(X_-)$ wrapped on the zero section $E_- = \{x = y = 0\} \cong \mathbf{CP}^1_{[u:v]}$. Repeating these arguments for $\mathfrak{B}_2$ we find the following maps:

$$\mathcal{O}_{E_+}(0) \quad \underset{\omega^w_{+,-}}{\overset{\pi_+}{\leftrightarrows}} \quad \mathfrak{B}_1 \quad \underset{\omega^w_{-,+}}{\overset{\pi_-}{\leftrightarrows}} \quad \mathcal{O}_{E_-}(2)[1] \ ,$$

and

$$\mathcal{O}_{E_+}(-1) \quad \underset{\omega^w_{+,-}}{\overset{\pi_+}{\leftrightarrows}} \quad \mathfrak{B}_2 \quad \underset{\omega^w_{-,+}}{\overset{\pi_-}{\leftrightarrows}} \quad \mathcal{O}_{E_-}(1)[-1] \ .$$

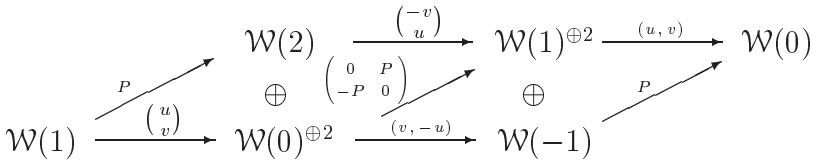
We find that D2-branes wrapped on the zero section E_+ in one phase are mapped to D2-branes wrapped on the zero section E_- in the other phase. Recall that the R-degree for D-branes reduces modulo two to the $\mathbf{Z}_2$-degree that distinguishes branes and antibranes. The shifts, by $[1]$ resp. $[-1]$, of the R-degrees on the right-hand side, therefore, indicate that the branes on X_+ turned into antibranes on X_-.

*D*0-*Branes*

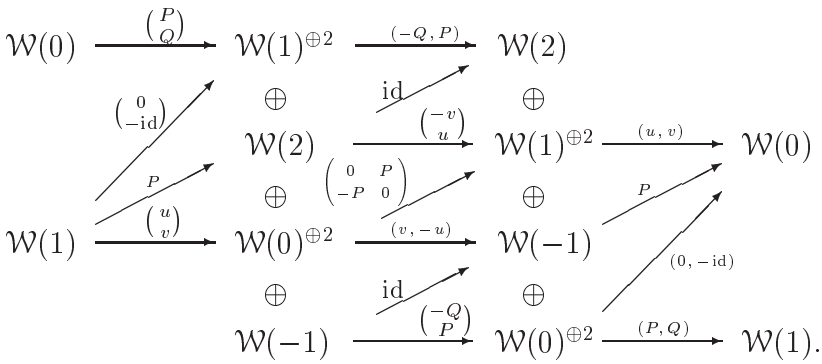
Phase $r \gg 0$: Next, we study a D0-brane at a point on $E_+ \subset X_+$, say at $\mathfrak{p} = \{u = v = P = 0\}$, where $P = \alpha x + \beta y$ and $[\alpha : \beta] \in \mathbf{CP}^1$ parametrizes the location of the D0-brane. A linear sigma model lift of this D0-brane $\mathcal{O}_\mathfrak{p}$ can be realized as the Koszul complex

$$\mathcal{W}(1) \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} P \\ u \\ v \end{pmatrix}} \begin{matrix} \mathcal{W}(2) \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 2} \end{matrix} \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} -v & 0 & P \\ u & -P & 0 \\ 0 & v & -u \end{pmatrix}} \begin{matrix} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 2} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(-1) \end{matrix} \xrightarrow{(u,v,P)} \underline{\mathcal{W}(0)} \ . \tag{8.20}$$

This can be viewed as the D2-brane $\mathcal{O}_{E_+}(0)$ and the anti-D2-brane $\mathcal{O}_{E_+}(-1)[1]$ coupled by a tachyon proportional to $P = \alpha x + \beta y$:



We can glue in the trivial Koszul complexes $\mathcal{K}_+$ and $\mathcal{K}_+(-1)$ in order to cancel the Wilson lines $\mathcal{W}(2)$ and $\mathcal{W}(-1)$ outside the grade restriction range. For this it is best to write the Koszul complexes using a new coordinate system (P,Q), where P is as above and Q is a new linear coordinate, so that P and Q cannot simultaneously vanish on X_+. After the gluing, we have



Note that we need to include non-zero maps $\mathcal{W}(1) \to \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 2}$ and $\mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 2} \to \mathcal{W}(0)$ in order to have a complex. Eliminating the trivial brane-antibrane pairs $\mathcal{W}(q) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} \mathcal{W}(q)$ (there are four of them), we obtain the grade restricted representative

$$\mathcal{C}(\mathfrak{B}_\mathfrak{p}) : \quad \mathcal{W}(0) \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} P \\ uQ \\ vQ \end{pmatrix}} \begin{matrix} \mathcal{W}(1) \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 2} \end{matrix} \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} -vQ & 0 & P \\ uQ & -P & 0 \\ 0 & Qv & -Qu \end{pmatrix}} \begin{matrix} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 2} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(0) \end{matrix} \xrightarrow{(Qu,Qv,P)} \underline{\mathcal{W}(1)} \ .$$

Phase $r \ll 0$: The transport to the other phase through the window w yields a quite exotic D-brane in $D(X_-)$. There is no way to eliminate trivial brane-antibrane pairs, like (8.18), from $\mathfrak{B}_\mathfrak{p}$ by D-term deformations. Moreover, it is not possible to rewrite $\pi_-(\mathfrak{B}_\mathfrak{p})$ as a complex of compactly supported D-branes on E_-, as one might suspect. The best we can tell about $\pi_-(\mathfrak{B}_\mathfrak{p})$ is that as a complex of coherent sheaves its non-trivial cohomology is given by $H^{-1}(\pi_-(\mathfrak{B}_\mathfrak{p})) \cong \mathcal{O}_{E_-}(2)[1]$ as well as $H^0(\pi_-(\mathfrak{B}_\mathfrak{p})) \cong \mathcal{O}_{E_-}(1)$, which is in line with the result for the D2-branes that we found previously. Actually, we have at hand an explicit example of a perverse (point) sheaf. This class of objects was studied in the context of flop transitions and derived categories by Bridgeland in [77]. From the latter point of view our example D-brane $\mathfrak{B}_\mathfrak{p}$ was investigated in [76].

8.4.2 McKay Correspondence

Suppose we consider a linear sigma model which, in a particular phase, reduces at low energies to a free orbifold $X_{\rm orb} \cong \mathbf{C}^n/\Gamma$ with a finite subgroup $\Gamma \subset SL(n, \mathbf{C})$. In the present context of Abelian gauge groups, $T = U(1)^k$, the group Γ arises as the unbroken subgroup of T and as such must be Abelian. In view of the fact that the representation ρ of T on the Chan-Paton space descends to a representation of the subgroup Γ, the low energy D-branes on the orbifold are actually given in terms of complexes of Γ-equivariant vector bundles on $\mathbf{C}^n$:

$$D(X_{\rm orb}) \;\cong\; D_\Gamma(\mathbf{C}^n).$$

The other phases correspond to partial or complete crepant[1] resolutions, $X_{\rm res}$, of the orbifold singularity. Transport of branes along a path from $X_{\rm orb}$ to $X_{\rm res}$ in the Kähler moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$ leads to a map of low energy boundary conditions up to D-term deformations and brane-antibrane annihilation:

$$F : D_\Gamma(\mathbf{C}^n) \quad \longrightarrow \quad D(X_{\rm res}). \tag{8.21}$$

By construction, the chiral sector is preserved under our transports. As remarked earlier, the chiral sector of low energy boundary conditions $D(X_r)$ gives rise to the derived category of coherent sheaves $\mathbf{D}(X_r)$ — the objects are elements in $D(X_r)$ and as the morphisms we only take chiral ring elements. (Note that $\mathbf{D}(X_r)$ has smaller information than $D(X_r)$. For example, it does not depend on $\mathfrak{M}_K$ at all, while $D(X_r)$ does.) As a consequence of our map (8.21), we find a modern version of McKay correspondence:

Given a finite Abelian group $\Gamma \subset SL(n, \mathbf{C})$ and a crepant resolution X_{res} of the quotient $\mathbf{C}^n/\Gamma$, there exists an equivalence of derived categories:

$$\Phi : \mathbf{D}_\Gamma(\mathbf{C}^n) \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathbf{D}(X_{res}). \tag{8.22}$$

For arbitrary n the equivalence (8.22) was shown (as a special case) in [78]. For $n \leq 3$, but Γ also non-Abelian, it was proven in [4]. McKay correspondence was also discussed by physicists in [79, 80].

We illustrate these maps (8.21) in three examples.

[1] The property 'crepant' (opposite to '*dis*crepant'), which says that the canonical line bundle remains trivial, is ensured by the Calabi-Yau condition (4.15).

(A) Resolution of the orbifold $\mathbf{C}^N/\mathbf{Z}_N$

The simplest example of an orbifold resolution is provided by Example (A), the $U(1)$ gauge theory with the fields $P, X_1, \ldots, X_N$ of charge $-N, 1, \ldots, 1$. The low energy theory is the orbifold $X_- \cong \mathbf{C}^N/\mathbf{Z}_N$ in the $r \ll 0$ phase (the orbifold phase), whereas it is the non-linear sigma model on the total space of the line bundle $\mathcal{O}(-N)$ over $\mathbf{CP}^{N-1}$ in the $r \gg 0$ phase (the large volume phase).

We choose the window $w : -N\pi < \theta < -N\pi + 2\pi$ at the phase boundary so that the grade restriction rule is

$$\mathcal{T}^w = \langle\, \mathcal{W}(0), \mathcal{W}(1), \ldots, \mathcal{W}(N-1) \,\rangle.$$

We transport branes from the orbifold phase to the large volume phase along a path that goes through this window. We first consider the equivariant line bundles $\mathcal{O}(\overline{i}) \in D(X_-)$ parametrized by a mod-N integer $\overline{i} \in \mathbf{Z}_N$. As its lift to the linear sigma model, we take $\mathcal{W}(i)$ where i is the integer in the grade restriction range $\{0, 1, ..., N-1\}$ that reduces modulo N to $\overline{i}$. It can be tranported safely to the large volume phase where it descend to the line bundle $\mathcal{O}(i) \in D(X_+)$. Thus, we find the following transportation rule:

$$F^w_{-,+} : \mathcal{O}(\overline{i}) \longmapsto \mathcal{O}(i), \qquad i = 0, 1, \ldots, N-1. \tag{8.23}$$

Next, let us consider the fractional branes, $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\overline{i}) \in D(X_-)$, parametrized again by a mod-N integer $\overline{i} \in \mathbf{Z}_N$. These are D-branes stuck at the $\mathbf{Z}_N$-fixed point $\mathfrak{p} = \{x_1 = \cdots = x_N = 0\}$. A lift to the linear sigma model may be realized as the Koszul complex made of Wilson line branes

$$\mathfrak{B}_{\overline{i}} : \quad \mathcal{W}(i-N) \xrightarrow{X} \cdots \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(i-2)^{\oplus\binom{N}{2}} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(i-1)^{\oplus N} \xrightarrow{X} \underline{\mathcal{W}(i)}. \tag{8.24}$$

However, for any choice of i, at least one of the Wilson line branes in this complex is outside the grade restriction range. Thus, we must find appropriate replacements from the subset $\mathcal{T}^w$. This is straightforward. In the order of $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\bar{0})$,$\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\bar{1})$, $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\bar{2})$,..., $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\overline{N-1})$, the grade restricted lifts are given as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathfrak{B}'_{\bar{0}} : &\quad \mathcal{W}(0) \xrightarrow{X} \cdots \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(N-3)^{\oplus\binom{N}{3}} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(N-2)^{\oplus\binom{N}{2}} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(N-1)^{\oplus N} \xrightarrow{pX} \underline{\mathcal{W}(0)} \\
\mathfrak{B}'_{\bar{1}} : &\quad \mathcal{W}(1) \xrightarrow{X} \cdots \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(N-2)^{\oplus\binom{N}{3}} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(N-1)^{\oplus\binom{N}{2}} \xrightarrow{pX} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus N} \xrightarrow{X} \underline{\mathcal{W}(1)} \\
\mathfrak{B}'_{\bar{2}} : &\quad \mathcal{W}(2) \xrightarrow{X} \cdots \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(N-1)^{\oplus\binom{N}{3}} \xrightarrow{pX} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus\binom{N}{2}} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus N} \xrightarrow{X} \underline{\mathcal{W}(2)} \\
\cdots &\qquad \cdots \qquad \cdots \\
\mathfrak{B}'_{\overline{N-1}} : &\quad \mathcal{W}(N-1) \xrightarrow{pX} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus N} \xrightarrow{X} \cdots \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(N-2)^{\oplus N} \xrightarrow{X} \underline{\mathcal{W}(N-1)}
\end{aligned} \tag{8.25}$$

These branes can be transported safely to the large volume. Once we are in that phase, we can just reduce them to the low energy theory — it is simply to replace $\mathcal{W}(q)$ by $\mathcal{O}(q)$. This is essentially the end of the story. We can, however, simplify the result. The point is that these lifts $\mathfrak{B}'_{\overline{i}}$ can be presented as the bound state of the brane $\mathfrak{B}_{\overline{i}}$ in (8.24) with another, simpler, brane $\mathfrak{B}''_{\overline{i}}$ that is empty in the low enery theory in the phase $r \ll 0$. After being transported to the $r \gg 0$ phase, the part $\mathfrak{B}_{\overline{i}}$ in such a presentation is empty in the infra-red limit since $\{x_1 = \cdots = x_N = 0\}$ is deleted. Thus, we are left with the other part $\mathfrak{B}''_{\overline{i}}$: $\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}'_{\overline{i}}) \cong \pi_+(\mathfrak{B}''_{\overline{i}})$. For example, the last few terms of $\mathfrak{B}'_{\overline{2}}$ can be presented as:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
 & & & & \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus\binom{N}{2}} & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus N} & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(2) \\
 & & & \overset{p}{\nearrow} & \oplus & \overset{p}{\nearrow} & \oplus & \overset{p}{\nearrow} & \\
 & & \mathcal{W}(N)^{\oplus\binom{N}{2}} & \xrightarrow{-X} & \mathcal{W}(N+1)^{\oplus N} & \xrightarrow{-X} & \mathcal{W}(N+2) & & \oplus \\
 & & \oplus & \searrow^{\mathrm{id}} & \oplus & \searrow^{\mathrm{id}} & \oplus & \searrow^{\mathrm{id}} & \\
\cdots & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(N-1)^{\oplus\binom{N}{3}} & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(N)^{\oplus\binom{N}{2}} & \xrightarrow{X} & \mathcal{W}(N+1)^{\oplus N} & \xrightarrow{X} & \underline{\mathcal{W}(N+2)}
\end{array}$$

The bottom line is the brane $\mathfrak{B}_{\overline{2}}$ which is infra-red empty in the phase $r \gg 0$. The above two lines form the brane $\mathfrak{B}''_{\overline{2}}$, which is infra-red empty in the phase $r \ll 0$. To see that this is indeed isomorphic to $\mathfrak{B}'_{\overline{2}}$ (even upstairs in $\mathfrak{D}(\mathbf{C}^{N+1}, U(1))$), eliminate first the leftmost brane-antibrane pair using the standard procedure (from (3.7) to (3.8)). Then the remaining two brane-antibrane pairs simply decouple, thus yielding $\mathfrak{B}'_{\overline{2}}$. It is clear from this example that the attatched brane $\mathfrak{B}''_{\overline{i}}$ for general $\overline{i} \in \mathbf{Z}_N$ is the cone of $\mathfrak{A}_i(N) \xrightarrow{p} \mathfrak{A}_i$, where

$$\mathfrak{A}_i \ : \quad \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus\binom{N}{i}} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus\binom{N}{i-1}} \xrightarrow{X} \cdots \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(i-1)^{\oplus N} \xrightarrow{X} \underline{\mathcal{W}(i)}, \tag{8.26}$$

with $i \in \{0, 1, ..., N-1\}$. In the low energy theory at $r \gg 0$, this brane $\mathfrak{B}''_{\overline{i}}$ becomes the following complex supported at the exceptional divisor $E = \{P = 0\} \cong \mathbf{CP}^{N-1}$:

$$\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}''_{\overline{i}}) \cong \quad \mathcal{O}_E(0)^{\oplus\binom{N}{i}} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}_E(1)^{\oplus\binom{N}{i-1}} \xrightarrow{X} \cdots \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}_E(i-1)^{\oplus N} \xrightarrow{X} \underline{\mathcal{O}_E(i)}$$

This is the simplified version of the large volume image of the fractional brane $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\overline{i})$. Actually, one can further simplify it using the Euler sequence of $\mathbf{CP}^{N-1}$:

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{O} \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus N} \longrightarrow T_{\mathbf{CP}^{N-1}} \longrightarrow 0$$

and its various dual versions, which show that

$$\underline{\mathcal{O}^{\oplus\binom{N}{i}}} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus\binom{N}{i-1}} \xrightarrow{X} \cdots \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(i-1)^{\oplus N} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(i)$$

is quasi-isomorphic to $\Omega^i(i)$ where Ω^i is the sheaf of holomorphic i-forms on $\mathbf{CP}^{N-1}$. Therefore, we find that the image brane $\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}''_{\overline{i}})$ can also be written as $\Omega^i_E(i)[i]$. To

summarize, we find

$$F^w_{-,+} : \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\overline{\imath}) \longmapsto \Omega^i_E(i)[i], \qquad i = 0, 1, \ldots, N-1. \tag{8.27}$$

This is the form that was conjectured to be the large volume image of the fractional brane $\mathcal{O}_p(\overline{\imath})$ in the literature [31, 79], based on R-R charge, mirror symmetry and mathematical construction of the equivalence [4, 81]. We have finally proved that conjecture from the purely worldsheet point of view. Actually, we have proved a precise version: we now know that the above correspondence is with respect to the path through the particular window w. If we had chosen a different homotopy class of paths, we would have a different correspondence.

(C) A two parameter model

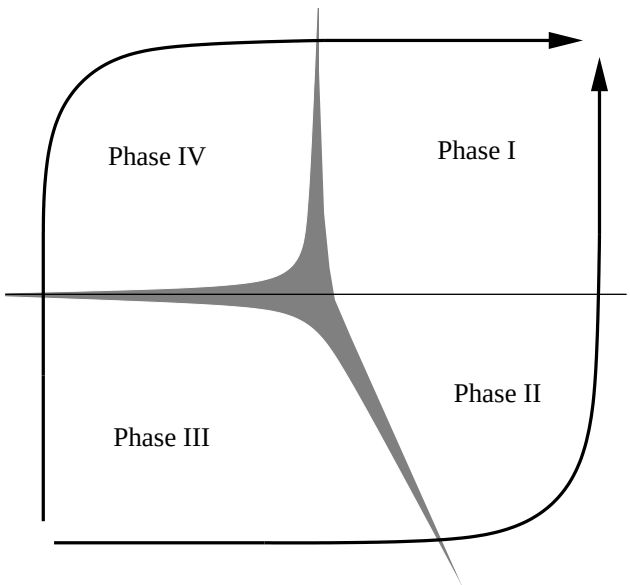


Figure 25: Two classes of route from Phase III to Phase I

As the next example of orbifold resolution, we consider the two parameter model (C) which has four phases, including an orbifold phase (Phase III) and a large volume phase of a smooth Calabi-Yau manifold (Phase I). We transport the branes from the orbifold phase to the large volume phase. The two phases do not share a phase boundary, so that we consider routes through Phase II or Phase IV, crossing two phase boundaries — as depicted in Fig. 25. In either case, there is an infinite number of homotopy classes coming

from the choice of a window at each phase boundary. The unbroken subgroups T_u and the widths $\mathcal{S}$ at the phase boundaries are

	I-II	II-III	III-IV	IV-I
T_u	$\{(1,g)\}$	$\{(g^2,g)\}$	$\{(1,g)\}$	$\{(g,1)\}$
$\mathcal{S}$	2	8	2	4

At the I-II boundary and the III-IV boundary, we choose the window $w' : -2\pi < \theta^2 < 0$. At the IV-I boundary we choose $w'' : -4\pi < \theta^1 < -2\pi$. At the II-III boundary, we consider two windows

$$\begin{aligned} w_0 &: \ -10\pi < 2\theta^1 + \theta^2 < -8\pi, \\ w_1 &: \ -8\pi < 2\theta^1 + \theta^2 < -6\pi. \end{aligned}$$

For these windows we find the following band restriction rules

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{C}^{w'}_{\mathrm{I,II}} = \mathfrak{C}^{w'}_{\mathrm{III,IV}} &= \{q^2 = 0, 1\}, \\ \mathfrak{C}^{w''}_{\mathrm{IV,I}} &= \{q^1 = 0, 1, 2, 3\}, \\ \mathfrak{C}^{w_0}_{\mathrm{II,III}} &= \{2q^1 + q^2 = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8\} \\ \mathfrak{C}^{w_1}_{\mathrm{II,III}} &= \{2q^1 + q^2 = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}. \end{aligned}$$

As a first exercise, we take the $\mathbf{Z}_8$-equivariant line bundle $\mathcal{O}(\bar{0})$ in the orbifold phase. It can be lifted to the Wilson-line brane $\mathcal{W}(a,b)$ where a and b are any pair of integers such that $2a + b = 0$ modulo 8. Let us consider transporting it to Phase III through the window w_0. The band restriction rule dictates us to choose a, b such that $2a + b = 8$. Other than that it is arbitrary. Before transporting it to Phase I through w', we should represent such $\mathcal{W}(a,b)$ as a complex of Wilson line branes $\mathcal{W}(q^1, q^2)$ with $q^2 = 0, 1$, using the D-isomorphism relations in Phase II. This can be done simply by requiring $b = 0$ or 1, without using any non-trivial D-isomorphism. In view of the relation $2a + b = 8$ it must be that $b = 0$. This uniquely fixes $(a,b) = (4,0)$. In this way we obtain the transportation rule

$$F^{w'}_{\mathrm{II,I}} \circ F^{w_0}_{\mathrm{III,II}} : \mathcal{O}(\bar{0}) \longmapsto \mathcal{O}(4,0).$$

If instead we choose the window w_1 at the III-II boundary, we must have $2a + b = 0$ in the first step and therefore the transportation is

$$F^{w'}_{\mathrm{II,I}} \circ F^{w_1}_{\mathrm{III,II}} : \mathcal{O}(\bar{0}) \longmapsto \mathcal{O}(0,0).$$

Let us next consider the route through Phase IV. To cross the III-IV boundary through window w', we need to band restrict to $b = 0$ or 1. In the present case where $2a + b = 0$

mod 8, b must be 0. Before transporting the brane to Phase I through w'', we should represent it as a complex of Wilson line branes $\mathcal{W}(q^1, q^2)$ with $q^1 = 0, 1, 2, 3$, using the D-isomorphism relations in Phase IV. Again this is done without any effort by simply setting $a = 0$ in $\mathcal{W}(a, 0)$. This gives

$$F^{w''}_{\mathrm{IV,I}} \circ F^{w'}_{\mathrm{III,IV}} : \mathcal{O}(\bar{0}) \longmapsto \mathcal{O}(0, 0).$$

Notice that $F^{w'}_{\mathrm{II,I}} \circ F^{w_1}_{\mathrm{III,II}}$ and $F^{w''}_{\mathrm{IV,I}} \circ F^{w'}_{\mathrm{III,IV}}$ give the same result but $F^{w'}_{\mathrm{II,I}} \circ F^{w_0}_{\mathrm{III,II}}$ gives a different one. In fact, this holds for any brane, as can be seen as follows.

In the present model, we actually have a *grade* restriction rule. We notice that the intersections of the relevant bands are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{C}^{w_0}_{\mathrm{III,II}} \cap \mathfrak{C}^{w'}_{\mathrm{II,I}} &= \{(0,1),(1,0),(1,1),(2,0),(2,1),(3,0),(3,1),(4,0)\}, \\ \mathfrak{C}^{w_1}_{\mathrm{III,II}} \cap \mathfrak{C}^{w'}_{\mathrm{II,I}} = \mathfrak{C}^{w'}_{\mathrm{III,IV}} \cap \mathfrak{C}^{w''}_{\mathrm{IV,I}} &= \{(0,0),(0,1),(1,0),(1,1),(2,0),(2,1),(3,0),(3,1)\}. \end{aligned}$$

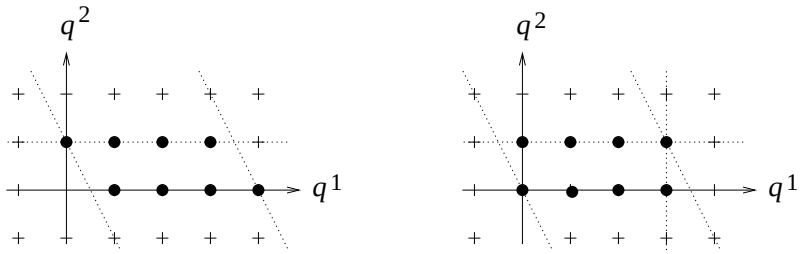


Figure 26: The grade restriction rule for the route III$\overset{w_0}{\to}$II$\overset{w'}{\to}$I (Left), III$\overset{w_1}{\to}$II$\overset{w'}{\to}$I (Right), III$\overset{w'}{\to}$IV$\overset{w''}{\to}$I (Right)

The key point is that, in any phase, any brane can be written as a complex of Wilson line branes with (q^1, q^2) from either one of the two sets, by using D-isomorphisms in that phase. For example, in Phase III where the deleted set is $\Delta_{\mathrm{III}} = \{p = 0\} \cup \{x_6 = 0\}$, one can use the D-isomorphisms

$$\mathcal{W}(q^1, q^2) \xrightarrow{p} \mathcal{W}(q^1 - 4, q^2), \qquad \mathcal{W}(q^1, q^2) \xrightarrow{x_6} \mathcal{W}(q^1 + 1, q^2 - 2),$$

to bring any (q^1, q^2) into the finite set. Once that is done, the brane can be transported safely along the respective route. Since the finite sets of charges $\{(q^1, q^2)\}$ are equal for the routes III$\overset{w_1}{\to}$II$\overset{w'}{\to}$I and III$\overset{w'}{\to}$IV$\overset{w''}{\to}$I, the transports result in the same brane. The set is different for the route III$\overset{w_0}{\to}$II$\overset{w'}{\to}$I and hence the map of branes is different.

The fact that the two routes, III$\overset{w_1}{\to}$II$\overset{w'}{\to}$I and III$\overset{w'}{\to}$IV$\overset{w''}{\to}$I, give rise to the same map of branes may imply that these routes are homopotic to each other. Indeed they are! To see

this let us look at the windows w_1, w' and w'' for these routes. Fig. 27 shows the overlap of these windows. Comparing with Fig. 4, we find that the overlap precisely matches

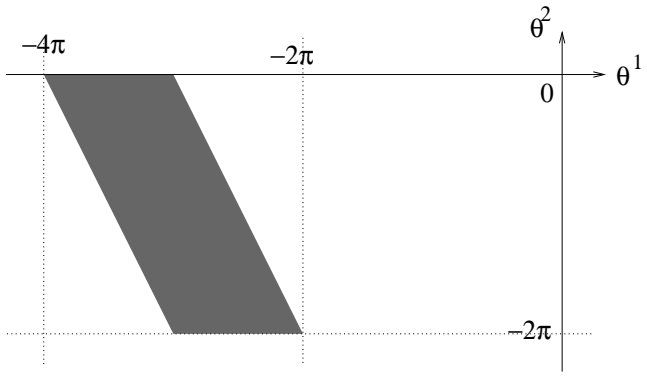


Figure 27: Overlap of the windows w_1, w' and w''

with the complement of the Alga of the singular locus $\mathfrak{S}$. Note that any point of the alga complement determines a global section of the entire plane $\mathbf{R}^2_{\rm FI}$ of FI parameters (r^1, r^2) to the Kähler moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K = (\mathbf{C}^\times)^2 \setminus \mathfrak{S}$. Such a section defines a homotopy of the two routes under consideration. On the other hand, the overlap of the windows w_0, w' and w'' is contained inside the Alga of $\mathfrak{S}$. This means that the attempted homotopy of the routes III$\stackrel{w_0}{\to}$II$\stackrel{w'}{\to}$I and III$\stackrel{w'}{\to}$IV$\stackrel{w''}{\to}$I will intersect with the singular locus $\mathfrak{S}$ and cannot really define a homotopy.

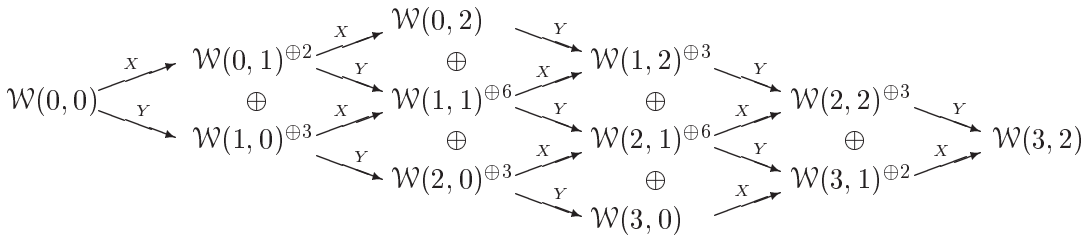
These observations have some significance on D-brane transport along paths through the central region of the moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$, as will be discussed in Section 8.5.

Transport Of The Fractional Branes

Let us transport the fractional branes $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\bar{\imath})$ of the orbifold $\mathbf{C}^5/\mathbf{Z}_8$ along the route III$\stackrel{w_1}{\to}$II$\stackrel{w'}{\to}$I. As remarked above, we can use the grade restriction rule $q^1 = 0, 1, 2, 3$, $q^2 = 0, 1$ for this path. Recall that the fractional brane $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\bar{0})$ is given by

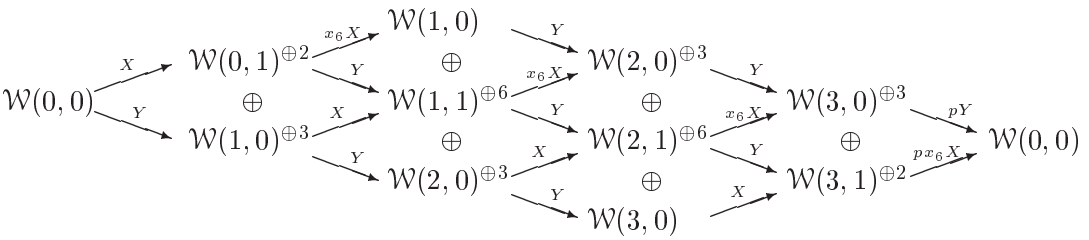
$$\mathcal{O}(\bar{0}) \stackrel{X}{\longrightarrow} \mathcal{R} \stackrel{X}{\longrightarrow} \wedge^2\mathcal{R} \stackrel{X}{\longrightarrow} \wedge^3\mathcal{R} \stackrel{X}{\longrightarrow} \wedge^4\mathcal{R} \stackrel{X}{\longrightarrow} \mathcal{O}(\bar{0})$$

where $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{O}(\bar{1})^{\oplus 2} \oplus \mathcal{O}(\bar{2})^{\oplus 3}$ is the defining representation. The other ones $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\bar{\imath})$ are the tensor product of this complex with $\mathcal{O}(\bar{\imath})$. As a lift of $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\bar{0})$ to the linear sigma model, we may take $\mathfrak{B}_{\bar{0}}$ given by



where we use "X" for x_1, x_2 and "Y" for x_3, x_4, x_5. The lifts of other branes $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\overline{i})$ can be obtained by tensoring with $\mathcal{W}(n,0)$ if $i = 2n$ and with $\mathcal{W}(n,1)$ if $i = 2n+1$, with $n = 0, 1, 2, 3$. We denote such lifts by $\mathfrak{B}_{\overline{i}}$.

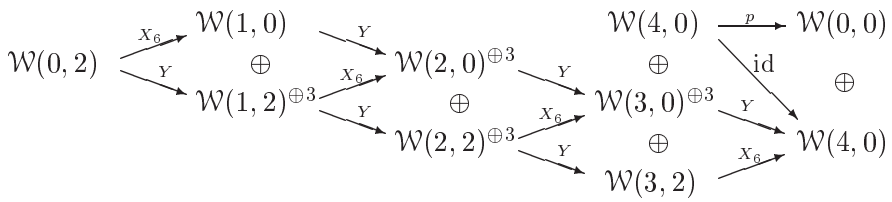
Before transporting it to Phase I, we have to grade restrict the branes. That can be done simply by multiplying appropriate powers of p and x_6 to the arrows. We denote this grade restricted version of $\mathfrak{B}_{\overline{i}}$ by $\mathfrak{B}'_{\overline{i}}$. For example, for the brane $\mathfrak{B}_{\overline{0}}$ we replace the upper-right entries $\mathcal{W}(0,2)$, $\mathcal{W}(1,2)$, $\mathcal{W}(2,2)$ by $\mathcal{W}(1,0)$, $\mathcal{W}(2,0)$, $\mathcal{W}(3,0)$ and replace the X's that go into them by $x_6 X$. Also, we replace the rightmost entry $\mathcal{W}(3,2)$ by $\mathcal{W}(0,0)$ and substitute the arrows Y, X going into it by pY, px_6X. Thus, $\mathfrak{B}'_{\overline{0}}$ is given by



Once that is done and the D-brane is transported into Phase I, we simply go to the low energy theory, replacing $\mathcal{W}(q^1, q^2)$ by $\mathcal{O}(q^1, q^2)$. That's all.

However, just as in Example (A), we may simplify the image D-branes in the large volume phase. The strategy is the same: We present the grade restricted lift $\mathfrak{B}'_{\overline{i}}$ as a bound state of $\mathfrak{B}_{\overline{i}}$ and another brane $\mathfrak{B}''_{\overline{i}}$ that is infra-red empty in Phase III. Once transported into Phase I, then, this time the part $\mathfrak{B}_{\overline{i}}$ is infra-red empty and we are left with $\pi_{\mathrm{I}}(\mathfrak{B}''_{\overline{i}})$. For example, $\mathfrak{B}'_{\overline{0}}$ described in the previous paragraph can be presented as the bound state of $\mathfrak{B}_{\overline{0}}$ and

$\mathfrak{B}''_{\overline{0}}$:



by the map $\mathfrak{B}''_{\overline{0}} \to \mathfrak{B}_{\overline{0}}$ that sends the bottom line of $\mathfrak{B}''_{\overline{0}}$ with entries $\mathcal{W}(*,2)$ to the upper-right line of $\mathfrak{B}_{\overline{0}}$ by the identity maps. Note that $\mathfrak{B}''_{\overline{0}}$ is infra-red empty in Phase III since it consists of x_6-Koszul and p-Koszul complexes. This is why we can replace $\mathfrak{B}'_{\overline{0}}$ with the above bound state (which we denote by $\widetilde{\mathfrak{B}}'_{\overline{0}}$). On the other hand, $\mathfrak{B}_{\overline{0}}$ is infra-red empty

in Phase I with $\Delta_I = \{X = 0\} \cup \{Y = x_6 = 0\}$ since it consists of X-Koszul complexes. Thus we find $\pi_I(\widetilde{\mathfrak{B}}'_{\bar{0}}) \cong \pi_I(\mathfrak{B}''_{\bar{0}})$. Note that $\mathfrak{B}''_{\bar{0}}$ also includes a (Y, x_6)-Koszul complex as a part. Dropping them, we are left with

$$\mathcal{O}(4,0) \xrightarrow{p} \mathcal{O}(0,0).$$

This is quasi-isomorphic to the sheaf $\mathcal{O}_E(0,0)$ supported at the exceptional divisor $E = \{p = 0\}$. In this way we find that the large volume image of the fractional brane $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\bar{0})$ is the D-brane wrapped on the divisor E with a trivial line bundle. Repeating the same procedure we find simple representatives of the large volume images of all the fractional branes $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\overline{\imath})$:

$$\mathrm{Cone}\left(\mathcal{A}_i(4,0) \xrightarrow{p} \mathcal{A}_i(0,0)\right)$$

where $\mathcal{A}_i$ are the complexes of vector bundles given below.

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{A}_0 &= \mathcal{O}(0,0), \\
\mathcal{A}_1 &= \mathcal{O}(0,0)^{\oplus 2} \xrightarrow{X} \underline{\mathcal{O}(0,1)}, \\
\mathcal{A}_2 &= \mathcal{O}(0,0) \xrightarrow{\binom{0}{X}} \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(0,0)^{\oplus 3}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(0,1)^{\oplus 2}\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{(Y,\, x_6 X)} \underline{\mathcal{O}(1,0)}, \\
\mathcal{A}_3 &= \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(0,0)^{\oplus 6}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(0,1)\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{\left(\begin{smallmatrix} X & 0 \\ Y & x_6 X \end{smallmatrix}\right)} \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(0,1)^{\oplus 3}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(1,0)^{\oplus 2}\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{(Y,\, X)} \underline{\mathcal{O}(1,1)}, \\
\mathcal{A}_4 &= \mathcal{O}(0,0)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{\binom{0}{X}{Y}} \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(0,0)^{\oplus 3}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(0,1)^{\oplus 6}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(1,0)\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{\left(\begin{smallmatrix} Y & x_6 X & 0 \\ 0 & Y & X \end{smallmatrix}\right)} \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(1,0)^{\oplus 3}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(1,1)^{\oplus 2}\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{(Y,\, x_6 X)} \underline{\mathcal{O}(2,0)}, \\
\mathcal{A}_5 &= \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(0,0)^{\oplus 6}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(0,1)^{\oplus 3}\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{\left(\begin{smallmatrix} X & 0 \\ Y & x_6 X \\ 0 & Y \end{smallmatrix}\right)} \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(0,1)^{\oplus 3}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(1,0)^{\oplus 6}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(1,1)\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{\left(\begin{smallmatrix} Y & X & 0 \\ 0 & Y & x_6 X \end{smallmatrix}\right)} \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(1,1)^{\oplus 3}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(2,0)^{\oplus 2}\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{(Y,\, X)} \underline{\mathcal{O}(2,1)}, \\
\mathcal{A}_6 &= \mathcal{O}(0,0)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{\binom{0}{X}{Y}} \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(0,0)\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(0,1)^{\oplus 6}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(1,0)^{\oplus 3}\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{\left(\begin{smallmatrix} Y & x_6 X & 0 \\ 0 & Y & X \\ 0 & 0 & Y \end{smallmatrix}\right)} \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(1,0)^{\oplus 3}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(1,1)^{\oplus 6}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(2,0)\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{\left(\begin{smallmatrix} Y & x_6 X & 0 \\ 0 & Y & X \end{smallmatrix}\right)} \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(2,0)^{\oplus 3}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(2,1)^{\oplus 2}\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{(Y,\, x_6 X)} \underline{\mathcal{O}(3,0)}, \\
\mathcal{A}_7 &= \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(0,0)^{\oplus 2}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(0,1)^{\oplus 3}\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{\left(\begin{smallmatrix} X & 0 \\ Y & x_6 X \\ 0 & Y \end{smallmatrix}\right)} \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(0,1)\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(1,0)^{\oplus 6}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(1,1)^{\oplus 3}\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{\left(\begin{smallmatrix} Y & X & 0 \\ 0 & Y & X \\ 0 & 0 & Y \end{smallmatrix}\right)} \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(1,1)^{\oplus 3}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(2,0)^{\oplus 6}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(2,1)\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{\left(\begin{smallmatrix} Y & X & 0 \\ 0 & Y & x_6 X \end{smallmatrix}\right)} \begin{matrix}\mathcal{O}(2,1)^{\oplus 3}\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(3,0)^{\oplus 2}\end{matrix} \xrightarrow{(Y,\, X)} \underline{\mathcal{O}(3,1)}.
\end{aligned} \tag{8.28}$$

In particular, the images are complexes of sheaves $(\mathcal{A}_i)_E$ supported at the divisor E (the pushforward of the complex $\mathcal{A}_i|_E$ over E by the embedding map $E \hookrightarrow X$).

The complexes $\mathcal{A}_i$ for high values of i can be simplified using the X- and the (Y, x_6)-Koszul complexes. In particular, there is a duality relation

$$\mathcal{A}_i \cong \mathcal{A}_{7-i}^T(-1,1)[4],$$

where $\mathcal{A}^T$ is the transpose of the complex $\mathcal{A}$ in which the dual of the R-degree zero component is defined to have R-degree zero. The Chern characters of $\mathcal{A}_i|_E$ are

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{ch}(\mathcal{A}_0)|_E &= 1, \\
\mathrm{ch}(\mathcal{A}_1)|_E &= -1 + L, \\
\mathrm{ch}(\mathcal{A}_2)|_E &= -3 + H - 2L + \frac{1}{2}H^2 + \frac{1}{6}H^3 + \frac{1}{12}v_E, \\
\mathrm{ch}(\mathcal{A}_3)|_E &= 3 - H - 2L - \frac{1}{2}H^2 + HL - \frac{1}{6}H^3 + \frac{1}{2}H^2L + \frac{1}{12}v_E, \\
\mathrm{ch}(\mathcal{A}_4)|_E &= \left(3 + H + 2L - \frac{1}{2}H^2 + HL + \frac{1}{6}H^3 - \frac{1}{2}H^2L + \frac{1}{12}v_E\right) \mathrm{e}^{-H+L}, \\
\mathrm{ch}(\mathcal{A}_5)|_E &= \left(-3 - H + 2L + \frac{1}{2}H^2 - \frac{1}{6}H^3 + \frac{1}{12}v_E\right) \mathrm{e}^{-H+L}, \\
\mathrm{ch}(\mathcal{A}_6)|_E &= (-1 - L)\, \mathrm{e}^{-H+L}, \\
\mathrm{ch}(\mathcal{A}_7)|_E &= \mathrm{e}^{-H+L}.
\end{aligned} \tag{8.29}$$

Here H and L are the first Chern classes of $\mathcal{O}(1,0)$ and $\mathcal{O}(0,1)$ and v_E is a volume form of the toric variety E. They obey homology relations $L^2 = 0$, $H^4 = 2H^3L = 2v_E$, and $\int_E v_E = 1$.

(D) Resolutions Of A_{N-1} Singularity

As the final example, we consider resolutions of the A_{N-1} singularity, which provide historically the first example of McKay correspondence. We are particularly interested in connecting the orbifold phase $(11\cdots1)$ and the fully resolved phase $(00\cdots0)$ via some other phases corresponding to partial resolutions. See Section 4.4 for the labelling of phases and remarks on the phase boundaries. We consider a route that goes through the particular sequence of phases:

$$(00\cdots000) \longleftrightarrow (00\cdots001) \longleftrightarrow (00\cdots011) \longleftrightarrow \cdots \longleftrightarrow (01\cdots11) \longleftrightarrow (11\cdots11)$$

We see that there are N phases and $(N-1)$ phase boundaries. The first phase boundary corresponds to blowing down (up) the right most divisor $C_{N-1} = \{x_2 = 0\}$. Applying the general rule, we see that the phase boundary in $\mathbf{R}^{N-1}_{\rm FI}$ is a domain in the hyperplane spanned by the charge vectors of all x_j's but x_1, x_2, x_3. The unbroken subgroup is therefore $T^u_1 = U(1)_1$. At the i-th phase boundary, change occurs at $C_{N-i} = \{x_{i+1} = 0\}$ and the hyperplane is spanned by all x_j's but x_1, x_{i+1}, x_{i+2}. The unbroken subgroup is

$$T^u_i = \{(g, g^2, g^3, \ldots, g^i, 1, 1, \ldots, 1) \,|\, g \in U(1)\,\},$$

which has width $\mathcal{S}_i = (i+1)$. Thus, the band restriction rule at the i-th phase boudary is

$$-\frac{i+1}{2} < \frac{\theta^1 + 2\theta^2 + \cdots + i\theta^i}{2\pi} + q^1 + 2q^2 + \cdots + iq^i < \frac{i+1}{2}.$$

There is a non-empty region of the space of theta parameters such that the following set of charges are band restricted at all the $(N-1)$ phase boundaries.

$$\mathfrak{C} = \{\, 0,\, e_1,\, e_2,\, \ldots,\, e_{N-1} \,\} \tag{8.30}$$

(e_i is the charge vector q where all $q^j = 0$ but $q^i = 1$.) For example check the value $\theta^i = -\pi/i$ $(i = 1, ..., (N-1))$. At each of the N phases on the route, any brane is D-isomorphic to a complex of Wilson line branes with charges in this finite set $\mathfrak{C}$. For example, at the orbifold phase, all the equivariant line bundles $\mathcal{O}(\overline{i})$ can be realized as the low energy images of $\mathcal{W}(e_i)$, where it is understood that $e_0 = 0$. Thus, we can use this set to define the grade restriction rule for the transport of D-branes along this route, say from the orbifold phase to the fully resolved phase.

Let us see the large volume images of the fractional branes $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\overline{i})$:

$$\mathcal{O}(\overline{i}) \xrightarrow{\binom{x_1}{x_{N+1}}} \begin{array}{c} \mathcal{O}(\overline{i+1}) \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(\overline{i-1}) \end{array} \xrightarrow{(-x_{N+1}, x_1)} \mathcal{O}(\overline{i})$$

Its lift such that all the charges are from the set (8.30) is

$$\mathcal{W}(e_i) \xrightarrow{\binom{a}{b}} \begin{array}{c} \mathcal{W}(e_{i+1}) \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(e_{i-1}) \end{array} \xrightarrow{(-c,d)} \mathcal{W}(e_i),$$

where

$$a = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_{i+1}, \quad c = x_{i+2} \cdots x_{N+1},$$
$$b = x_{i+1} \cdots x_{N+1}, \quad d = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_i.$$

For the $i = 0$ case, we set $e_{-1} := e_{N-1}$ so that $b = x_{N+1}$ and $d = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_N$ while $a = x_1$ and $c = x_2 \cdots x_{N+1}$ remains valid. The large volume image is obtained simply by replacing $\mathcal{W}(q)$ by $\mathcal{O}(q)$. As before, we can simplify this image by taking out and eliminating infra-red empty complexes. For the $i = 0$ case, we take out and eliminate a Koszul complex for a pair of variables (x_1, x_{N+1}) which cannot vanish in the large volume regime. This shows that the large volume image of the fractional brane $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}$ for the trivial representation is

$$\mathcal{O}(e_1 + e_{N-1}) \xrightarrow{x_2 x_3 \cdots x_N} \underline{\mathcal{O}(0)}. \tag{8.31}$$

This is the structure sheaf of the entire exceptional divisor $E = C_1 + \cdots + C_{N-1}$. For $i > 0$, we take out three Koszul complexes associated with three pairs of variables, $(x_1 \cdots x_i, x_{i+3} \cdots x_{N+1})$, $(x_1 \cdots x_i, x_{i+2})$ and $(x_{i+1}, x_{i+3} \cdots x_{N+1})$, which cannot vanish in the large volume phase since the sets $\{x_j = x_l = 0\}$ with $|j - l| > 2$ are deleted. In this way, we find the following large volume image of the fractional brane $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\overline{i})$ for the i-th representation

$$\mathcal{O}(e_i + e_{i+1} - e_{i+2}) \xrightarrow{x_{i+1}} \mathcal{O}(e_{i-1} - e_i + 2e_{i+1} - e_{i+2}) \to \underline{0}. \tag{8.32}$$

This is a sheaf supported at the component $C_{N-i} = \{x_{i+1} = 0\}$ of the exceptional divisor, shifted by 1 to the left. Thus, we very explicitly recontructed the original McKay correspondence — one-to-one correspondence between the non-trivial irreducible representations of $\mathbf{Z}_N$ and the irreducible components of the exceptional divisor of the resolution of the A_{N-1} singularity.

8.5 Center Of Multiparameter Moduli Space

In models with higher rank gauge groups, $k > 1$, we have so far discussed D-brane transport across phase boundaries only in the asymptotic regions where all but one $U(1)$ subgroup is completely broken. However, it is of course an important problem to construct a parallel family of boundary interactions over the central region of the moduli space where multiple phase boundaries meet. Although we do not attempt to find a general solution in this paper, we have something to say about this problem.

We made an interesting observation in the two parameter model (C): There is a finite set of Wilson line branes which obeys the band restriction rule at all the phase boundaries, with the following properties;

(i) In each phase the set is maximal generating, that is, there is no low energy D-isomorphism relation among the Wilson line branes in the set and any brane is

D-isomorphic to a complex of sums of them.

(ii) The overlap $\mathfrak{Z}$ of windows for which the set obeys the band restriction rule precisely matches with a copy of the complement of the Alga of the singular locus $\mathfrak{S}$, that is, the values of the theta parameters that are missed by $\mathfrak{S}$.

The property (ii) means that the region $\mathbf{R}^k_{\rm FI} \times \mathfrak{Z}$ in the FI-theta parameter space does not meet the singular locus. Due to the flatness of our connection, the outcome of D-brane transport from one phase to another, along any path inside this region, is the same as the result of transport along paths that stay in the asymptotic region. This tempts us to ask: do the Wilson line branes in this set define smooth families of boundary interactions over the entire region $\mathbf{R}^k_{\rm FI} \times \mathfrak{Z}$? Can we use it to construct the parallel family of an arbitrary brane over this central region? In fact, existence of such a finite set of Wilson lines is not limited to the example (C) but holds in many multiparameter models. Thus, let us discuss this question in a general context of $U(1)^k$ gauge theory with matter fields Φ_i with charge Q_i^a $(a = 1, ..., k,\ i = 1, ..., N)$.

Let us look at the effective boundary potential on the Coulomb branch. Introducing $M_i(\sigma) := \sum_{a=1}^k Q_i^a \sigma_a$, it is written as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} V_{eff}^{\rm bdry} &= \frac{1}{2\pi}\sum_{a=1}^k r^a {\rm Im}(\sigma_a) - \sum_{a=1}^k \left(\frac{\theta^a}{2\pi} + q^a\right) {\rm Re}(\sigma_a) \\ &\quad + \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{1}{2\pi} {\rm Im} M_i(\sigma) \Big(\log |M_i(\sigma)| - 1 \Big) \\ &\quad + \sum_{i=1}^N \left\{ \frac{1}{4} |{\rm Re} M_i(\sigma)| + \frac{1}{2\pi} |{\rm Re} M_i(\sigma)| \arctan\left(\frac{{\rm Im} M_i(\sigma)}{|{\rm Re} M_i(\sigma)|} \right) \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

This is not valid on the complex hyperplanes $M_i(\sigma) = 0$ where the i-th field becomes massless, and there is also a singularity at the real hyperplanes ${\rm Re} M_i(\sigma) = 0, {\rm Im} M_i(\sigma) > 0$ where the i-th field has a normalizable zero mode localized at the boundary. We shall call the latter the singular hyperplanes. We would like to find a Lagrangian submanifold that asymptotes to Lagrangian planes on which the boundary potential is bounded below. Also, we would like the Lagrangian planes to avoid meeting with the singular hyperplanes as we vary the FI and theta parameters. Can we find such a family of Lagrangians? This problem is technically complicated. So let us simplify the problem by choosing a particular Lagrangian submanifold

$$ {\rm Im}(\sigma_a) = 0, \quad \forall a. \tag{8.33}$$

Is the boundary potential bounded below on this submanifold ? Note that it has no danger of meeting the singular hyperplanes. On this Lagrangian plane, the effective boundary potential is given by

$$V_{\mathit{eff}}^{\mathrm{bdry}} = -\sum_{a=1}^{k} \left(\frac{\theta^a}{2\pi} + q^a \right) \sigma_a + \sum_{i=1}^{N} \frac{1}{4} |M_i(\sigma)|. \tag{8.34}$$

This is a piecewise linear function which has corners at the hyperplanes $M_i(\sigma) = 0$. It is bounded below if and only if it is bounded below at each one dimensional intersection of $(k-1)$ hyperplanes $M_{i_1}(\sigma) = \cdots = M_{i_{k-1}}(\sigma) = 0$. Note that such a one-dimensional intersection is the direction of the $U(1)$ subgroup which is unbroken by the values of $\Phi_{i_1}, \ldots, \Phi_{i_{k-1}}$, namely the unbroken $U(1)$ at the phase boundary spanned by the charge vectors of these fields. And the boundary potential (8.34) restricted on that line is the same as the boundary potential for the theory of that $U(1)$ gauge group only. Therefore, the boundary potential (8.34) is bounded below for some values of the theta parameters if and only if the band restriction rule is satisfied at all the phase boundaries for those values of the theta parameters. Under such a circumstance, we have a smooth family of Wilson line branes $\mathcal{W}(q^1, \ldots, q^k)$ over the entire space of FI-parameters $\mathbf{R}^k_{\mathrm{FI}}$.

This is exactly the situation we had in Example (C). Moreover, we have a *set* of such Wilson line branes with the property (i). Thus, indeed we can construct the parallel family of an arbitrary brane over the central region of the moduli space, using this set just like the grade restricted set in one-parameter models.

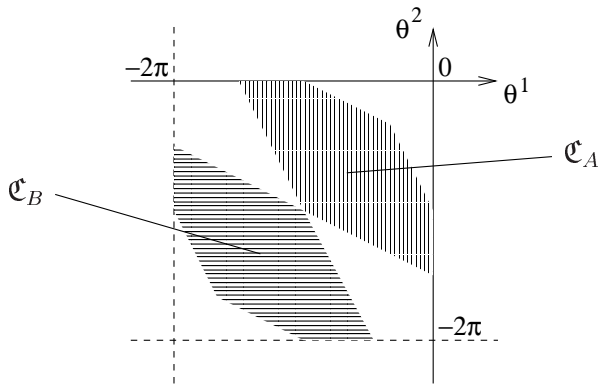


Figure 28: Overlap of the windows for the two sets

As mentioned above, there are many other models with such a finite set of Wilson line branes. To see just one, let us take the two parameter model in Example (D) — the A_2 singularity and its resolutions. In this model, there are two sets of different kinds. One is $\mathfrak{C}_A = \{(0,0), (1,0), (0,1)\}$ and the other is $\mathfrak{C}_B = \{(1,0), (0,1), (1,1)\}$. In Figure 28 we

show the overlaps of the windows at all the phase boundaries for which the sets obey the band restriction rule. We see that they are non-empty, and moreover coincides with a copy of the complement of the Alga of the singular locus $\mathfrak{S}$ which is shown in Figure 6 (right). In fact, within two parameter models, it is difficult to come up with a model which does *not* have such a finite set. This makes us wonder if this is a general phenomenon. Is there always a finite set with the property (i) and (ii)? Can we always define D-brane transport across the center of the moduli space, with the simple boundary condition (8.33)?

The first counter example was shown to us by Mikael Passare. It is a $U(1)^2$ theory with the following matter content:

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} & X_1 & X_2 & X_3 & X_4 \\ U(1)_1 & 0 & 1 & 2 & -3 \\ U(1)_2 & 1 & 0 & -4 & 3 \end{array} \tag{8.35}$$

It is straightforward to check that there is no finite set of Wilson line branes which satisfies both of the properties (i) and (ii), and that the Alga indeed has no complement. This model is actually a truncated version of a model with more parameters — the five parameter model of the A_5 singularity: the $U(1)^5$ gauge theory with seven fields $X_1, \ldots, X_7$ as shown in (4.21). If we are in a phase where $\{x_2 = 0\}$, $\{x_5 = 0\}$ and $\{x_6 = 0\}$ are among the deleted set, then we obtain the same theory as (8.35) by eliminating the three variables X_2, X_5 and X_6. By a direct computation, one can show that a set with the properties (i) and (ii) does not exist in the full $U(1)^5$ gauge theory either. This example shows that we cannot always define D-brane transport across the center of the moduli space with a finite set of Wilson line branes, at least with the simple boundary condition (8.33). In such a model, a more general boundary condition is needed.

However, as an interesting observation, we would like to point out that there is a finite set of Wilson line branes with just the property (i) in all the examples we considered so far. For example, in the model of the A_{N-1} singularity, the set $\mathfrak{C}$ given in (8.30) is maximal generating in all the phases.

We emphasize that the problem we have discussed in this subsection has nothing to do with finding a correspondence between D-branes at different phases — We had established a completely general contruction of D-brane transport between arbitrary pair of phases, using paths which stay in the asymptotic region. The main point of the present discussion was how to cover the central region of the moduli space. We found that there is a simple way to do so, provided that there is a finite set of Wilson line branes with the properties (i) and (ii). Such a set exists in many examples, but not always.

9 Some Mathematical Background

Before taking the next step into models with superpotentials, we would now like to pause to explain some mathematical background that will shed light on the previous discussions and facilitate the subsequent ones. We shall be exploring the relation of holomorphic line bundles, or more generally coherent sheaves, to modules and a simple construction of D-brane categories which follows. We use the linear sigma model as our guide throughout. The discussion in this section is a mixture of review material, some new approaches to existing results and also some original material.

Consider the manifold $Y = \mathbf{C}^n$ with coordinates $x_1, \ldots, x_n$. The main object of our discussion will be the ring of polynomial functions on Y, written as

$$\mathcal{R} = \mathbf{C}[x_1, \ldots x_n] \,. \tag{9.1}$$

Many geometric properties of the space Y have a natural algebraic description in terms of the ring $\mathcal{R}$.

Points of Y are in one-to-one correspondence with *maximal, prime ideals* of $\mathcal{R}$. For example, the point $\mathfrak{p} : \{x_1 = a_1, \ldots, x_n = a_n\}$ corresponds to the set of polynomials $\mathcal{I}_\mathfrak{p} \subset R$ which vanish at $\mathfrak{p}$. This set of polynomials is an *ideal* of $\mathcal{R}$ since it is closed under addition and also under multiplication by arbitrary polynomials in $\mathcal{R}$. (It is *prime* since multiplying two polynomials from outside the set stays outside and *maximal* since it is not a subset of any bigger prime ideal — just as a point is indecomposable and minimal among complex (algebraic) subspaces.)

We are interested in D-branes or sheaves on Y. The simplest example is the space filling brane given by the structure sheaf $\mathcal{O}$. On an open set of Y, the local sections of $\mathcal{O}$ are given by holomorphic functions with no poles inside the set. (More precisely, in the current algebraic context we should restrict to rational functions (ratios of polynomials) with no poles in the open set.)

The global sections of this sheaf (or any other sheaf on Y) form a module over $\mathcal{R}$. This simply says that we can add global sections and multiply them by polynomials. In the special case of the structure sheaf, $\mathcal{O}$, the global sections are rational functions on the whole of Y, i.e., they are just polynomials. Thus the structure sheaf $\mathcal{O}$ corresponds to the module $\mathcal{R}$ itself, which is the simplest example of a module over $\mathcal{R}$.

Ideals of $\mathcal{R}$ provide a richer class of $\mathcal{R}$-modules. In particular the maximal, prime ideals $\mathcal{I}_\mathfrak{p}$, discussed above, give rise to $\mathcal{R}$-modules $\mathcal{I}_\mathfrak{p}$ for each point of Y. We can also consider the cokernel of the map which embeds $\mathcal{I}_\mathfrak{p}$ in $\mathcal{R}$ to form a further class of modules

$\mathcal{R}/\mathcal{I}_{\mathfrak{p}}$. These correspond to the structure sheaves of points (D0-branes) of Y as can be confirmed by comparing the action of $\mathcal{R}$ on global sections of the sheaves. (Polynomials in the ideal $\mathcal{I}_{\mathfrak{p}}$ annhilitate the module $\mathcal{R}/\mathcal{I}_{\mathfrak{p}}$ just as polynomials vanishing at p act as multiplication by zero on the D0-brane at $\mathfrak{p}$.)

There is more to say here — such as how the local sections of a sheaf can be recovered from the corresponding module (by *localizing* the module on the ring of polynomial functions which have no zeros on the relevant open set) — but we refer elsewhere for details [82].

We have touched on an important point above which is that given a map between modules, we can always form its cokernel and kernel which are themselves modules. This property means that the set of $\mathcal{R}$-modules forms an *abelian category.* The same is true (by definition) for coherent sheaves on Y.

The key result for our purposes is the following: i) the set of coherent sheaves on Y is in one-to-one correspondence with the set of $\mathcal{R}$-modules and ii) the set of maps between a pair of sheaves is identical to the set of maps between the corresponding modules. More precisely *the category of coherent sheaves on Y and the category of $\mathcal{R}$-modules are equivalent as abelian categories.*

We shall elaborate more on this below but roughly the statement says that on a simple enough space such as Y, we can learn everything about sheaves by studying global sections. This is an enormous simplification!

The lesson of the linear sigma model approach, in this context, is that we can go a long way by working with simple spaces. The remaining ingredient which we need in order to go further is gauge symmetry.

9.1 $\mathbf{C}^\times$ Action On $\mathbf{C}^n$ — Grading Of The Coordinate Ring

In this section we will be describing a construction, due to Serre [83], of sheaves on $\mathbf{CP}^{n-1}$ in terms of graded $\mathcal{R}$-modules. Consider the $\mathbf{C}^\times$ action on Y

$$x_i \to \lambda x_i, \quad i = 1, \ldots, n. \tag{9.2}$$

This induces a $\mathbf{Z}$-grading on the ring $\mathcal{R}$ such that the grading (degree) of a ring element is given by its representation under $\mathbf{C}^\times$. Thus the degree zero elements are complex numbers, the degree one elements are homogeneous linear polynomials in the x_i and so on.

To mod out by $\mathbf{C}^\times$, we simply restrict to graded $\mathcal{R}$-modules and consider only maps of degree zero between modules. (A graded module of a graded ring is simply a module with a grading such that multiplication by $\mathcal{R}$ respects grading in the obvious way.)

To find the graded $\mathcal{R}$-module M corresponding to a particular sheaf $\mathcal{M}$ we start as before: the degree zero elements of M are given by the global sections of $\mathcal{M}$. However, this information alone will no longer be enough to reconstruct $\mathcal{M}$ as a sheaf. To see this, consider the structure sheaf $\mathcal{O}$ on $\mathbf{CP}^{n-1}$, whose global sections are $\mathbf{C}$-valued constants. On a local patch, there are further gauge invariant sections which are rational functions of degree zero, realised as a ratio of homogenous polynomials of degree q. In order to retrieve these extra local sections it is clear that we will need to keep also 'global sections of degree q' when we construct the module M. More precisely, these are the global sections of $\mathcal{M}$ tensored with $\mathcal{O}(q)$. These provide the degree q elements of the associated module M.

In this way it is clear that the structure sheaf $\mathcal{O}$ on $\mathbf{CP}^{n-1}$ is once again associated with the module $\mathcal{R}$, considered as a graded module over the graded ring $\mathcal{R}$. Other sheaves can be identified with graded modules in the same way.

We have given a simple description of coherent sheaves on $Y/\mathbf{C}^\times$, as graded $\mathcal{R}$-modules. The remaining detail to take care of is the deletion of the origin, $\Delta = \{x_1 = \ldots = x_n = 0\}$, so that we move to $\mathbf{CP}^{n-1} \cong (Y - \Delta)/\mathbf{C}^\times$. We would like to think of two sheaves as being the same on $\mathbf{CP}^{n-1}$ if they disagree only at the origin of Y. Thus, we would like to mod out by sheaves with support at the origin of Y.

Let us examine the structure sheaf of the origin in a little more detail. This corresponds to the graded module given by just the degree zero part of $\mathcal{R}$. As a vector space this module is isomorphic to $\mathbf{C}$ and this is how we shall refer to it. The $\mathcal{R}$-module $\mathbf{C}$ is annihilated by $\mathcal{R}^+$, the set of all positive degree elements of $\mathcal{R}$ (the set of all polynomials that vanish at the origin.)

There are various other modules which are annihilated by $\mathcal{R}^+$, or more subtlely, by higher powers of $\mathcal{R}^+$. In the former class, we can consider the module $\mathbf{C}$ shifted in degree so that it lives in degree q. This module is usually labelled $\mathbf{C}(-q)$ since it corresponds to the structure sheaf of the origin tensored with $\mathcal{O}(-q)$. In the latter class, we could consider for example the module given by all the degree zero and degree one elements of $\mathcal{R}$. We might label this module as $\mathcal{R}_{\leq 1}$, consisting of polynomials of degree ≤ 1. Clearly this module is not annihilated directly by $\mathcal{R}^+$ but is annihilated by $(\mathcal{R}^+)^2$ and thus should also correspond to a sheaf which vanishes away from the origin (otherwise we should be able to construct arbitrary degree polynomials in $\mathcal{R}^+$ which do not annihilate the sheaf.)

In general, it should be clear that graded $\mathcal{R}$-modules which are localized at the origin correspond to modules whose grading is bounded above. These modules (and only these) will be annihilated by sufficiently high powers of $\mathcal{R}^+$. These form the subcategory of (graded) *torsion* modules and it is these that we should mod out by in order to recover sheaves on $\mathbf{CP}^{n-1}$. Modding out by torsion modules simply means that we consider two graded modules as being the same if they agree for sufficiently high degree.

We are now ready to state Serre's classic result: *the category of coherent sheaves on $\mathbf{CP}^{n-1}$ is isomorphic as an abelian category to the category of graded $\mathcal{R}$-modules modulo torsion modules.*

9.2 Generalization To Toric Manifolds

The generalization to toric manifolds is straightfoward. Following the route suggested by the linear sigma model, we construct toric manifolds as quotients of $Y - \Delta_r$ by $(\mathbf{C}^\times)^k$, where Δ_r is some deleted set. The $(\mathbf{C}^\times)^k$ action on Y gives rise to k different gradings on $\mathcal{R}$ and we consider modules which are graded with respect to all k gradings. (In particular, maps between modules should be degree zero with respect to each grading.)

Dealing with the deleted sets in the different phases appears more complicated but in fact turns out to be just as simple as for $\mathbf{CP}^{n-1}$. First, note that in general we want to consider $\mathbf{Z}$-gradings on $\mathcal{R}$ rather than just $\mathbf{N}$-gradings as before — in other words, some of our coordinate fields, $x_1, \ldots, x_n$, may have negative charges with respect to any subgroup $\mathbf{C}^\times \subset (\mathbf{C}^\times)^k$. Associated with a single $\mathbf{C}^\times$ gauge group, we may consider both $(+)$-torsion and $(-)$-torsion modules, i.e., modules with bounded above or bounded below grading, respectively.

In each low energy phase of the linear sigma model we shall be deleting the set of points Δ_r where either all positively or all negatively charged fields under particular $\mathbf{C}^\times$'s are set to zero. (Recall the description of the deleted set Δ_r given in Section 4.4.) In terms of modules this amounts to moding out by either $(+)$-torsion or $(-)$-torsion modules under the corresponding gradings. These are the modules whose supports lie in the deleted set Δ_r.

At this point we have reached a very simple unified description of sheaves in the various phases of a linear sigma model. To summarise: *the category of coherent sheaves in each phase is equivalent, as an abelian category, to the category of multi-graded $\mathcal{R}$-modules modulo a particular set of torsion subcategories associated to Δ_r.*

This generalization of Serre's construction was originally given by Cox [84] in the case where the quotient $X_r = (Y - \Delta_r)/(\mathbf{C}^\times)^k$ is smooth. When it has (orbifold) singularities, the above description is simply wrong if we regard X_r as an algebraic variety, as shown in [84] with an explicit example. As discussed in Section 4.2, we do not really have a convenient description of the low energy theory unless X_r is a smooth manifold or a global orbifold, and there is no physical reason to believe that we should take coherent sheaves of X_r as an algebraic variety as the data for D-branes. Rather, we understand the theory as the low energy limit of our super-renormalizable gauge theory. As such, we should take $(\mathbf{C}^\times)^k$-equivariant coherent sheaves over $Y - \Delta_r$ as the D-brane data, and we are indeed doing so in the above discussion. Mathematically, the category of such objects is known to be equivalent to the category of coherent sheaves on the so-called quotient stack $[(Y - \Delta_r)/(\mathbf{C}^\times)^k]$ [70]. (This last reference also gives a description of sheaves as graded modules mod torsions.) Thus, in the above statement, "coherent sheaves" should be understood as those on the quotient stack.

In the next subsection we will introduce complexes and a description of the derived category which turns out to be very simple in this setting. This will lead us to a straightforward argument that the derived categories of the different phases are in fact equivalent in the Calabi-Yau case.

9.3 Complexes

So far we have been discussing branes corresponding to individual sheaves and their description in terms of modules. We now wish to discuss more general brane configurations consisting of complexes of sheaves. In fact, since we already have an equivalence between sheaves and modules we might as well carry out the discussion in terms of complexes of modules.

We start once again with the case of $Y = \mathbf{C}^n$ where things are particularly simple. We will see that by representing arbitrary complexes in terms of 'free resolutions' there is no need to introduce any of the complications of the derived category and in particular no need for nontrivial quasi-isomorphisms. All branes on Y can be represented as complexes of free modules and in this representation, the morphisms (chiral ring elements) between branes are just ordinary $\mathbf{Q}$-cohomology classes where $\mathbf{Q}$ represents the operator induced from differentials of the complexes.

A *free* $\mathcal{R}$-module, $\mathcal{R}^{\oplus a}$ is a direct sum of a copies of $\mathcal{R}$. Every $\mathcal{R}$-module M has a surjection from a free module $\mathcal{R}^{\oplus a}$ onto itself for some a. To produce such a surjection

we simply choose a generating set for the module and map the unit of a different copy of $\mathcal{R}$ onto each generator, much as we would do for a vector space. The difference from the case of vector spaces is that there will in general be relations between the generators. We can express these relations by writing the kernel K of the surjection to form a short exact sequence:

$$0 \to K \to \mathcal{R}^{\oplus a} \to M \to 0. \tag{9.3}$$

(Note that to avoid clutter we do not write explicit names of maps on arrows unless needed for clarity.) We can now start again and take a surjection from a free module $\mathcal{R}^{a_1}$ onto K, with kernel K_1

$$0 \to K_1 \to \mathcal{R}^{\oplus a_1} \to K \to 0. \tag{9.4}$$

If we combine the surjection from $\mathcal{R}^{a_1}$ onto K and the injection from K into $\mathcal{R}^{\oplus a}$ into a single step then we form a single exact sequence as the reader should verify

$$0 \to K_1 \to \mathcal{R}^{\oplus a_1} \to \mathcal{R}^{\oplus a} \to M \to 0. \tag{9.5}$$

Continuing in this way, taking surjections from free modules onto the successive kernels we finally achieve a free resolution of M (the fact that this process terminates in a finite number of steps is a result of Hilbert's syzygy theorem)

$$0 \to \mathcal{R}^{\oplus a_j} \to \mathcal{R}^{\oplus a_{j-1}} \to \ldots \to \mathcal{R}^{\oplus a_1} \to \mathcal{R}^{\oplus a} \to M \to 0. \tag{9.6}$$

Stepping ahead a little, we should think of this as giving a representation of M as a complex of free modules in the derived category of $\mathcal{R}$-modules. We would now like to do the same for an arbitrary complex of $\mathcal{R}$-modules

$$0 \to M_0 \to M_1 \to \ldots \to M_k \to 0. \tag{9.7}$$

We present the argument for a complex of lengh two $0 \to M \to N \to 0$ but the generalization should be clear. We know that for M and N individually we can construct free resolutions

$$0 \to P^{-j} \to P^{-j+1} \to \ldots \to P^{-1} \to P^0 \to M \to 0, \tag{9.8}$$

$$0 \to Q^{-j} \to Q^{-j+1} \to \ldots \to Q^{-1} \to Q^0 \to N \to 0. \tag{9.9}$$

We have changed notation so that the P's and Q's are all free modules of the form $\mathcal{R}^{\oplus s}$ for various values of s. We have also assumed that the two resolutions are of the same length (otherwise we can always pad the shorter one with zeroes at the beginning).

So to begin with, let us 'turn off' the map between M and N, allowing us (trivially) to build the following exact sequence in which all the maps are taken from (9.8) and (9.9)

above

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc} & 0 & \to & Q^{-j} & \to & & Q^{-1} & \to & Q^0 & \to & N \\ 0 \to & \oplus & & \oplus & & \dots & \oplus & & \oplus & & \oplus \to 0. \\ & P^{-j} & \to & P^{-j+1} & \to & & P^0 & \to & M & \to & 0 \end{array} \tag{9.10}$$

Next we would like to turn the map from M to N back on. We will need to simultaneously turn on some maps from the P's to the Q's in (9.10) so that we still get a complex (i.e., so that the differential still squares to zero.)

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc} & 0 & \to & Q^{-j} & \to & & Q^{-1} & \to & Q^0 & \to & N \\ 0 \to & \oplus & \nearrow & \oplus & \nearrow & \dots & \oplus & \nearrow & \oplus & \nearrow & \oplus \to 0. \\ & P^{-j} & \to & P^{-j+1} & \to & & P^0 & \to & M & \to & 0 \end{array} \tag{9.11}$$

To see that extra maps from P to Q will be necessary just inspect the rightmost part of the diagram and notice that the two-step map from P^0 to N through M will not be zero in general. To correct this we introduce a compensating map from P^0 to N through Q^0.

As we now explain, the property of P^0 which allows us to construct this compensating map, is that it is a free module. Suppose for simplicity that P^0 is equal to $\mathcal{R}$. To completely specify a map from $\mathcal{R}$ to another module it is sufficient to specify the image of the generating element $1_{\mathcal{R}}$ of $\mathcal{R}$.

Consider the map $P^0 = \mathcal{R} \to N$ and suppose $1_{\mathcal{R}} \to n \in N$. Since Q^0 maps surjectively onto N, we must have some $q \in Q^0$ such that $q \to n$. Then if we map $1_{\mathcal{R}} \to -q$ as our map from P^0 to Q^0, we can cancel the unwanted contribution. The generalization to construct (9.11) is straightforward using the fact that all P^i are free.

Once again, there is an interpretation of the free resolution (9.11) in the framework of the derived category. As previously noted, the resolutions of M and N individually correspond to representations of these modules in the derived category by complexes of free modules $P^{\cdot}$ and $Q^{\cdot}$. Similarly, we should think of the combined complex with $P^{\cdot}$ 'bound' to $Q^{\cdot}$ by the additional maps introduced in (9.11) as being an equivalent representation of the object $0 \to M \to N \to 0$ in the derived category.

We have now described something quite interesting: *every object in the derived category of $\mathcal{R}$-modules can be represented as a complex of free modules.* This is a nice result on its own since it means that to describe arbitrary D-branes on $\mathbf{C}^n$ it is sufficient to use complexes built only out of copies of the structure sheaf $\mathcal{O}$.

To go further, we would like to describe the space of chiral ring elements. In fact, this is where we really benefit from writing things in terms of free modules. Working with complexes of free modules, there are no non-trivial quasi-isomorphisms to worry about

and all morphisms between complexes are just ordinary $\mathbf{Q}$-cohomology classes. We shall now sketch a proof of this statement.

First we show that there are no non-trivial exact sequences built out of free modules only, or more precisely that any such exact sequence is a direct sum of trivial exact sequences of the form

$$0 \to \mathcal{R} \to \mathcal{R} \to 0 \tag{9.12}$$

where the map in the diagram above is the identity. To see this it is once again sufficient to look at the generators $1_{\mathcal{R}}$. Suppose we have an exact sequence of free modules and, for simplicity, suppose that the 'rightmost' non-zero module is a single copy of $\mathcal{R}$. Since this is the rightmost module in an exact sequence, the map onto it must be a surjection and in particular the generator $1_{\mathcal{R}}$ must have a preimage. This preimage can only be the generator $1_{\mathcal{R}'}$ of the corresponding preimage module and this assures that the map is in fact (a $\mathbf{C}$-valued multiple of) the identity as in (9.12). The generalization when the rightmost module is $\mathcal{R}^a$ is straighforward.

Given this property, it then follows by standard arguments[1] that all morphisms in the derived category between complexes of free modules are represented by ordinary cochain maps modulo homotopies (i.e., $\mathbf{Q}$-cohomology classes.)

This result concludes our rather lengthy review of the derived category of $\mathbf{C}^n$! We have seen that this derived category is in fact a very simple beast, being equivalent to the category of complexes of free $\mathcal{R}$-modules with morphisms given by ordinary $\mathbf{Q}$-cohomology classes. We would now like to extend some of these results to the graded case and use them to describe branes in more interesting spaces than $\mathbf{C}^n$. We will find that some of the nice properties of free modules are lost when we mod out by torsion. The resolution to these problems is intimately related to the grade restriction phenomenon which we have already encountered in the physical setting.

9.4 Graded Case

Some parts of the analysis of the previous section generalize immediately to the graded case, in which we treat $\mathcal{R}$ as a graded ring and allow only degree zero maps between graded modules. It remains true that given a graded module M, there exists a surjection from a free module onto M. However, in this case the set of free modules is richer since we need to take into account the grading. We label by $\mathcal{R}(q)$ the free module which is isomorphic to $\mathcal{R}$ except that the unit $1_{\mathcal{R}}$ is in degree $-q$. In the case of $\mathbf{CP}^{n-1}$ this corresponds to

[1] See for example Lemma 1.6 in [85].

the sheaf $\mathcal{O}(q)$. A general free module is a direct sum of one-dimensional modules of this type. (In the multi-graded case we have one-dimensional modules $R(q_1, q_2, ..., q_k)$ labelled according to the degree of $1_{\mathcal{R}}$ for all k gradings.)

Whilst switching to graded modules presents no new difficulties, modding out by torsion modules does introduce complications. The prime difficulty arises because there now exist non-trivial exact sequences of free modules. This will invalidate our argument that morphisms between complexes are ordinary $\mathbf{Q}$-cohomology classes. Furthermore, the non-trivial exact sequences which appear will depend on which phase we are in, so that an equivalence between phases might appear unlikely. As we shall see, grade restriction provides a route around the problem. Before we demonstrate the solution, we should first take a closer look at the problem.

As an example, we set $n = 4$ and consider the ring $\mathcal{R} = \mathbf{C}[x_1, x_2, x_3, p]$ with degrees $(1, 1, 1, -3)$. (We have chosen an example in which the charges sum to zero for later convenience, but for the current discussion this is not important.) We consider the phase in which we mod out by modules with bounded above grading. Thus we are deleting the set $\{x_1 = x_2 = x_3 = 0\}$ and considering branes on $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{CP}^2}(-3)$.

In order to find a non-trivial exact sequence of free modules after modding out by torsion modules, we can proceed as follows. First, take a sheaf which is supported on the deleted set (a $(+)$-torsion module) which will be identified with zero after modding out. The simplest example is the structure sheaf of the deleted set, which corresponds to the module $\mathbf{C}[p]$ (i.e., the module consisting of polynomials of p only). This module is annihilated by ring elements containing any of the positively charged fields x_i. We may also consider a version of this module shifted in degree, $\mathbf{C}[p](q)$. For the moment let us choose $q = 3$.

The idea is to take a free resolution of this module as we have described earlier. When we then mod out by torsion, the original module gets deleted and we are left with an exact sequence of free modules. Here is the (minimal) free resolution:

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{R}(0) \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix}} \mathcal{R}(1)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -x_3 & x_2 \\ x_3 & 0 & -x_1 \\ -x_2 & x_1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}} \mathcal{R}(2)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{(x_1, x_2, x_3)} \mathcal{R}(3) \longrightarrow \mathbf{C}[p](3) \longrightarrow 0, \quad (9.13)$$

which turns into an exact sequence of free modules after modding out by torsion

$$0 \to \mathcal{R}(0) \to \mathcal{R}(1)^{\oplus 3} \to \mathcal{R}(2)^{\oplus 3} \to \mathcal{R}(3) \to 0 \quad (9.14)$$

In the other phase of the model we mod out by $(-)$-torsion modules, i.e., those with bounded below grading. This corresponds to deleting the set $\{p = 0\}$ and studying branes

on $\mathbf{C}^3/\mathbf{Z}_3$. In this case, the structure sheaf of the deleted set is represented by the module $\mathbf{C}[x_1, x_2, x_3]$, which has free resolution

$$0 \to \mathcal{R}(3) \xrightarrow{p} \mathcal{R}(0) \to \mathbf{C}[x_1, x_2, x_3] \to 0 \tag{9.15}$$

leading to the exact sequence of free modules (after modding out by $(-)$-torsion):

$$0 \to \mathcal{R}(3) \to \mathcal{R}(0) \to 0. \tag{9.16}$$

We have found different 'relations' between free modules in the two phases which would be expected to lead to different derived categories. We shall return to this problem in the next section but first conclude this discussion with a couple of positive remarks.

Objects in the derived category modulo torsion modules can be represented as ordinary complexes of graded $\mathcal{R}$-modules. In other words we can pick a representative of each torsion equivalence class, which is an ordinary complex of modules (by 'cutting off' the modules in the sequence below a sufficiently high degree.)

Furthermore, the isomorphisms which we previously used to represent complexes of arbitrary modules as complexes of free modules, are still available to us. We should think of the process of modding out as just adding some new isomorphisms, in which case we have not changed the set of underlying objects or lost any of the original morphisms. Thus, the conclusion that objects of the derived category can be represented as complexes of free modules remains true. This is a remarkable statement and so we repeat it: *any object in any of the low energy phases of the linear sigma model can be represented as a complex of free $\mathcal{R}$-modules.*

Thus the boundary conditions we constructed earlier are the most general that we need to consider in order to describe a general brane configuration. All of the discussion so far applies equally well to the multi-graded $U(1)^k$ case.

Next we would like to learn more about the morphisms in the different phases in order to study equivalences between phases. In the $U(1)$ case we will surprisingly find a complete description of the set of morphisms in terms of an ordinary $\mathbf{Q}$-cohomology of maps between complexes of (a restricted set of) free modules, whilst in the $U(1)^k$ case we will not be able to be so explicit. In either case, the analysis will be sufficient to prove equivalence of the derived category of the different phases under the Calabi-Yau condition. The new ingredient that we shall need is grade restriction.

9.5 Grade Restriction

We start by examining the origins of grade restriction in the model of the previous subsection. The essential cause of our problems is that we have kept too many free modules of the form $\mathcal{R}(q)$. In order to describe general elements of the derived category in a 'nice' way we need to employ a reduced set of free modules.

The basic problem shows up in terms of relations (exact sequences) between free modules. We have seen examples of this, in (9.14), relevant to the $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{CP}^2}(-3)$ phase and in (9.16), relevant to the $\mathbf{C}^3/\mathbf{Z}_3$ phase.

The existence of these relations is not only an inconvenience, but is also an obstacle to proving equivalence between phases. This is because, as illustrated in the two examples above, the available relations depend on the choice of phase.

This is where the grade restriction comes to the rescue. In both of the cases described above we have a relation between $\mathcal{R}(3)$ and a complex of modules from the set $\{\mathcal{R}(0), \mathcal{R}(1), \mathcal{R}(2)\}$. If we restrict to the set of free modules $\{\mathcal{R}(0), \mathcal{R}(1), \mathcal{R}(2)\}$ then we claim i) to have no notrivial relations (in the shape of exact sequences) between this restricted set of free modules and ii) to have just enough modules to generate the most general object in the derived category. These statements are supposed to hold in either phase.

It is easy to convince oneself of statement i) - essentially that (9.14) and (9.16) are the 'minimal' relations possible in either phase. A proof can be provided, for example, by the explicit computation of Ext groups on projective space in arbitrary dimension.

So we focus on statement ii). The claim is that an arbitrary element of the derived category in either phase can be represented as a complex of free modules from the set $\{\mathcal{R}(0), \mathcal{R}(1), \mathcal{R}(2)\}$. (In general if the sum of positive charges of the coordinate fields x_i is $\mathcal{S}_+$ we restrict to the set $\{\mathcal{R}(0), \mathcal{R}(1), \ldots \mathcal{R}(\mathcal{S}_+ - 1)\}$.)

We have already seen that any object in the derived category can be represented as a complex of free modules $\mathcal{R}(q)$ if q is allowed to take arbitrary values. So roughly, we need to show that any free module can be expressed in terms of the restricted set $\{\mathcal{R}(0), \mathcal{R}(1), \mathcal{R}(2)\}$.

The idea behind this is quite simple. Suppose we are in the $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{CP}^2}(-3)$ phase. We may use relation (9.14) to write $\mathcal{R}(3)$ in terms of the restricted set. Recall that in the derived category this exact sequence should be thought of as an equivalence between $\mathcal{R}(3)$ and

the complex

$$0 \to \mathcal{R}(0) \to \mathcal{R}(1)^{\oplus 3} \to \mathcal{R}(2)^{\oplus 3} \to 0 \tag{9.17}$$

Next we consider $\mathcal{R}(4)$. We may use (9.14) shifted in degree in order to write $\mathcal{R}(4)$ in terms of $\{\mathcal{R}(1), \mathcal{R}(2), \mathcal{R}(3)\}$

$$0 \to \mathcal{R}(1) \to \mathcal{R}(2)^{\oplus 3} \to \mathcal{R}(3)^{\oplus 3} \to 0 \tag{9.18}$$

To write $\mathcal{R}(4)$ in terms of the grade restricted set, we may then replace each of the $\mathcal{R}(3)$'s by modules from the restricted set, as above.

To do this explicitly we want to 'bind' (9.18) to three copies of (9.14) and then 'annihilate' pairs of $\mathcal{R}(3)$'s. We show how to bind to the first copy of (9.14).

Consider the identity map from one of the $\mathcal{R}(3)$'s in (9.18) to $\mathcal{R}(3)$ in (9.14). We claim that this map can be extended to a map between complexes. (Note that we are talking here about an honest cochain map between complexes of modules rather than some more general morphism in the derived category in which case the statement would be trivial.)

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccccc} & & 0 & \to & \mathcal{R}(0) & \to & \mathcal{R}(1)^{\oplus 3} & \to & \mathcal{R}(2)^{\oplus 3} & \to & \mathcal{R}(3) & & \\ 0 \to & \oplus & \nearrow & & \oplus & \nearrow & \oplus & \nearrow & \oplus & \nearrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} & \oplus & \to 0 \\ & & 0 & \to & \mathcal{R}(1) & \to & \mathcal{R}(2)^{\oplus 3} & \to & \mathcal{R}(3)^{\oplus 3} & \to & 0 & & \end{array} \tag{9.19}$$

Every map in this diagram is an honest map between modules and the whole argument can be carried out even prior to modding out by torsion. However, in that case, the complex (9.14) represents a non-zero module and so the object (9.19) produced after binding would not be equivalent to (9.18). Once we mod out, the operation becomes an equivalence since we are binding to an object with support on the deleted set.

To construct the cochain map used above, we use a small extension of the argument we gave earlier in the construction of equation (9.11). That construction allowed us to build a map from a complex of free modules to an exact sequence of modules. In the current situation, we want to build a map from a complex of free modules (9.18), but in this case the complex we are mapping to fails to be exact in the rightmost position (as a complex of modules prior to modding out.) However, the failure of exactness is only in the lowest degree and does not cause a problem since the maps to $\mathcal{R}(3)$ in (9.18) are all at least linear in the positively charged fields. We leave it to the reader to check the details.

The 'annihilation' step is to remove the trivial pair $0 \to \mathcal{R}(3) \to \mathcal{R}(3) \to 0$ from

(9.19), to leave an equivalent complex in which we have reduced the number of $\mathcal{R}(3)$'s

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc} & & 0 & \to & \mathcal{R}(0) & \to & \mathcal{R}(1)^{\oplus 3} & \to & \mathcal{R}(2)^{\oplus 3} & \to & 0 \\ 0 \to & \oplus & \nearrow & & \oplus & \nearrow & \oplus & \nearrow & \oplus & \nearrow & \oplus \to 0 \\ & & 0 & \to & \mathcal{R}(1) & \to & \mathcal{R}(2)^{\oplus 3} & \to & \mathcal{R}(3)^{\oplus 2} & \to & 0 \end{array} \tag{9.20}$$

By repeating twice more for the remaining $\mathcal{R}(3)$'s we finally write $\mathcal{R}(4)$ as a complex of modules from the grade restricted set.

It should be clear how to extend this argument for $\mathcal{R}(q)$, $q > 4$ by induction. More generally, given any object in the derived category, represented as a complex of free modules, we can remove step-by-step all of the modules $\mathcal{R}(q)$ with $q \geq 3$ by repeating this construction many times. (At each step we remove the remaining free module of highest degree which is positioned furthest to the right in the complex so that all maps to this module are at least linear in the positively charged fields and we can argue as above.)

For $\mathcal{R}(q)$ with $q < 0$ there is a similar argument using the sequence (9.14) shifted in degree by -1 and read from left to right as a relation between $\mathcal{R}(-1)$ and the restricted set. Once again, by shifting degrees and iterating, we may extend this argument to the general case of $q < 0$. The binding process in this case involves maps *from* shifted versions of (9.14) *to* the complex that we are grade restricting. To construct the relevant maps we can use a trick of 'dualizing' to put ourselves in the situation above, applying the binding procedure above and then dualizing back. Dualizing in this context means replacing all free modules $\mathcal{R}(q)$ by $\mathcal{R}(-q)$ and reversing the direction of all maps.

This completes the proof that all objects in the derived category in the $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{CP}^2}(-3)$ phase can be written as complexes of grade restricted modules. The same argument holds in the $\mathbf{C}^3/\mathbf{Z}_3$ phase although in this case it is rather more straightforward to see since according to (9.16), every pair $R(q)$ and $R(q+3)$ are isomorphic and so we can always replace q with q mod 3. Also, although we treated a specific example, the same arguments work just as well for the general $U(1)$ linear sigma model. We are now ready to state our general result:

Suppose we have a $U(1)$ linear sigma model with positively charged fields x_i and negatively charged fields y_j, such that the sum of charges of the x_i is $\mathbb{S}_+$ and the sum of charges of the y_j is $\mathbb{S}_-$. Let $\mathcal{R} = \mathbf{C}[x_i; y_j]$ be the associated graded polynomial ring.

The model has two low energy phases. In the first phase, which corresponds to deleting the locus $\{x_i = 0, \forall\, i\}$ the branes are given by the derived category of graded $\mathcal{R}$-modules modulo those with bounded above grading. Every object of this category can be represented as a complex of free modules from the grade restricted set $\{\mathcal{R}(0), \mathcal{R}(1), \ldots, \mathcal{R}(\mathbb{S}_+ - 1)\}$.

*Furthermore, morphisms in this representation are ordinary cochain maps modulo homotopies (**Q**-cohomology classes) and there are no non-trivial quasi-isomorphisms.*

Similar statements hold for the second phase and the general brane in this phase can be written as a complex of free modules from the grade restricted set $\{\mathcal{R}(0), \mathcal{R}(1), \ldots, \mathcal{R}(\mathbb{S}_- - 1)\}$. *In the Calabi-Yau case,* $\mathbb{S}_- = \mathbb{S}_+$, *this gives an explicit equivalence between the derived categories of the two phases.*

Parts of this result have appeared previously in the literature. For the case of $\mathbf{CP}^{n-1}$, the description of an arbitrary brane as a complex of $\{\mathcal{R}(0), \mathcal{R}(1), \ldots, \mathcal{R}(n-1)\}$ follows from Beilinson's work [86]. The equivalence for $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{CP}^2}(-3)$ and $\mathbf{C}^3/\mathbf{Z}_3$ is a special case of the McKay correspondence by Bridgeland-King-Reid [4], as already mentioned in Section 8.4. Bondal-Orlov [87] and Bridgeland [77] studied cases where all fields have degree ± 1 and proved equivalence between phases under the Calabi-Yau condition.

A. King pointed out to the authors that the result as stated above appeared previously in a work by Van den Bergh, see [88] Section 8. Thus, we cannot claim it as our own original result, even though we were not aware of that work at the point we obtained it. Nonetheless, our approach to the problem, based on the physics of linear sigma model, naturally leads to a number of important generalizations. One of them is generalization to multi-graded cases, which we discuss next. Another is extension to systems with superpotential, which we will discuss in Section 10, where we obtain equivalences of the derived category of a Calabi-Yau manifold and different type of triangulated categories, such as the category of matrix factorizations. All these equivalences are unified under the same principle — the grade restriction rule.

9.6 Multi-Graded Case

We would like to describe the effect of crossing phase boundaries in the general $U(1)^k$ linear sigma model. Since only a single $U(1)$ is unbroken at each boundary, we already have all the necessary tools at our disposal.

We write the general one-dimensional free module as $\mathcal{R}(q^1, \ldots, q^k)$ to display the grading under each $U(1)$. We focus on the first $U(1)$ and suppose that the sum of positive (*resp.* negative) charges of the variables under this $U(1)$ is $\mathbb{S}_+$ (*resp.* $\mathbb{S}_-$) as before.

Suppose that we are in a phase in which we need to mod out by the $(+)$-torsion modules (those whose grading is bounded above under this $U(1)$). According to our previous discussion, we can describe an arbitrary brane in this phase as a complex of free

modules $\mathcal{R}(q^1, \ldots, q^k)$, where q^1 can be restricted to lie in the range $\{0, 1, \ldots, \mathbb{S}_+ - 1\}$. We treat phases in which the D-term for this $U(1)$ takes the opposite sign in a similar way — restricting q^1 to lie between 0 and $(\mathbb{S}_- - 1)$.

Since we still have to mod out by torsion modules for the remaining $U(1)$'s, we expect to have relations (in the form of exact sequences) between the set of free modules for which only q^1 has been grade restricted, i.e., relations within the band restricted set. Thus, we can no longer claim to have a simple description of the derived category in which morphisms are ordinary $\mathbf{Q}$-cohomology classes (homotopy classes of cochain maps). However, for the purposes of describing equivalences between neighbouring phases this is not necessary. This is because when we move between adjacent phases, we only switch the sign of a single D-term and so switch from $(+)$-torsion to $(-)$-torsion for a single $U(1)$. The remaining $U(1)$'s are not affected, and hence modding out by remaining torsion modules is the *same* procedure for both phases. This is manifest in the relation (4.22) between the deleted sets.

Thus it becomes clear how we are to compare branes in different phases. Each time we wish to cross a phase boundary we grade restrict with respect to the associated $U(1)$. We may then pass freely into the next phase. If the sum of positive and negative charges of the variables are equal for the $U(1)$ in question, there will be no new relations between branes after crossing the boundary and we will have an equivalence of categories. *If the Calabi-Yau condition (4.15) holds so that the sum of charges is zero, then it follows, by crossing a boundary at a time, that the derived categories in all low energy phases are equivalent.*

We emphasize again that, unlike in the single graded case, this proof of equivalence does not imply nor rely on a simple description of derived categories in terms of a finite set of rank one free modules. In fact, there is a toric variety which does not admit such a set (the counter example [89] to King's conjecture [90]). However, as mentioned in Section 8.5, there *is* such a finite set in all the Calabi-Yau examples we considered so far.

A different construction of derived equivalences in the general multi-graded case had been given by Kawamata in [78].

9.7 Generalizations

Although we shall not develop these here, there are various directions in which one could generalize the preceding analysis. One possibility is to allow a non-Abelian group action G on $Y = \mathbf{C}^n$ and thus decompose $\mathcal{R}$ into representations of G. This line of

development has been initiated by Kapranov [85, 91] who generalizes the Belinson result for sheaves on $\mathbf{CP}^n$ to Grassmanians. Clearly, these developments will be relevant for describing branes in non-Abelian linear sigma models.

Another direction is to consider more general choices of the ring $\mathcal{R}$. Much of the basic theory can be developed even in the case of non-commutative rings [92] and it would be fascinating to develop a physical interpretation of this work. However, we leave these directions to future research and return now to our main focus which is the study of D-branes in Abelian linear sigma models.

10 Compact Models

In this section, we consider the problem of D-brane transport in systems that arise from linear sigma models with superpotential. Applying the grade restriction rule, we find a rule of D-brane transport along paths on the Kähler moduli space. This leads, for example, to one-to-one correspondences between D-isomorphism classes of D-branes in Landau-Ginzburg orbifolds and those in geometric regimes. The basic idea of transport itself is identical to the one in the non-compact models of Section 8. Besides having matrix factorizations instead of complexes, the main new feature is that, depending on the phase, some of the bulk fields may acquire masses from superpotential F-terms and therefore must be integrated out.

10.1 The D-Brane Transport

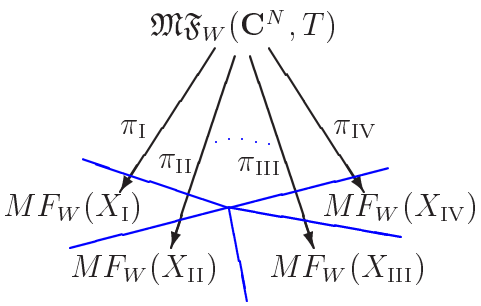
To start with, let us briefly recall the rôle of the superpotential in the bulk theory. The classical vacuum configuration in the Higgs branch is govened by the D-term and F-term contributions to the potential (4.8). Away from phase boundaries, the D-term potential confines dynamics to a toric, non-compact Calabi-Yau variety X_r. The F-term potential determined by the superpotential W restricts the vacuum further to a complex subvariety $M_r \subset X_r$. Depending on the phase, a part of the transverse modes of M_r in X_r may acquire mass from the superpotential F-terms. In the case where all transverse modes are massless, the low energy theory is a Landau-Ginzburg model with superpotential W over the non-compact toric variety X_r. In the other extreme where all transverse modes are massive, we obtain a non-linear sigma model on the vacuum manifold M_r. The nature of low energy theory depends very much on the phase and the pattern is in general very complex.

However, one could always choose to use the description as a LG model on the non-compact toric variety X_r. This description is most natural if the energy scale, $e\sqrt{r}$, set by the D-terms is much higher than the one, m_W, set by the F-terms, and we consider an intermediate scale, $e\sqrt{r} \gg \mu \gg m_W$.

Like in the non-compact situation we are taking the large gauge coupling limit, so that we can integrate out the gauge multiplet algebraically (cf. (4.12) and (4.14)). The matrix factorization $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$ in the linear sigma model then becomes a matrix factorization of W over the toric variety X_r. Let us denote the set of matrix factorizations of W over X_r by $MF_W(X_r)$, and refer to the set of matrix factorizations in the linear sigma model as $\mathfrak{MF}_W(\mathbf{C}^N, T)$. Two D-branes in $\mathfrak{MF}_W(\mathbf{C}^N, T)$ that are related by D-isomorphisms will flow to the same D-brane in the infra-red limit, so that we define $MF_W(X_r)$ as the set of matrix factorizations of the linear sigma model up to D-isomorphisms. Let us introduce the corresponding projection:

$$\pi_r : \mathfrak{MF}_W(\mathbf{C}^N, T) \to MF_W(X_r).$$

Similarly to Section 8.1 we have a pyramid of maps:



(10.1)

Let us illustrate these projections in Example (A) with $N = 3$. We pick the superpotential $W = p \cdot G(x)$ with the cubic fermat polynomial $G(x) = x_1^3 + x_2^3 + x_3^3$. In the $r \to -\infty$ limit, this gives the LG-model with superpotential $G(x)$ over the orbifold $X_- \cong \mathbf{C}^3/\mathbf{Z}_3$, namely, a LG orbifold. At $r \gg 0$ and at the intermediate energy scale μ we have a LG-model with potential $W = pG(x)$ over X_+, the total space of the line bundle $\mathcal{O}(-3) \to \mathbf{CP}^2$. This superpotential gives masses to the fibre coordinate p and to the transverse mode of x's to the hypersuface $G(x) = 0$, but we choose to keep both of them. At lower energies $\mu \ll m_F$, it is more appropriate to integrate them out, and we have the sigma model on the elliptic curve, $\{p{=}G{=}0\} \subset X_+$.)

In order to describe D-isomorphism realtions in the two phases, we first consider matrix factorizations that are infra-red empty, i.e., the ones for which the boundary potential $\{Q, Q^\dagger\}$ is strictly positive over X_r. They can be constructed from the Koszul

complexes for the deleted sets, and will play the analogous rôle as the latter played in the non-compact models. Recall that our R-charge assignment is $R_\lambda(p, x_1, x_2, x_3) = (\lambda^2 p, x_1, x_2, x_3)$.

In the $r \ll 0$ phase, the deleted set is $\Delta_- = \{p = 0\}$. Let us consider the brane $\mathfrak{B}_-$ given by

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & G(x) \\ p & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \rho(g) = \begin{pmatrix} g^2 & 0 \\ 0 & g^{-1} \end{pmatrix}, \quad R(\lambda) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda^{-1} \end{pmatrix}.$$

For simplicity, we use the following notation to encode this data:

$$\mathfrak{B}_- : \quad \left(\mathcal{W}(2)_{_0} \underset{G}{\overset{p}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{W}(-1)_{_{-1}} \right) \tag{10.2}$$

The subscript of each Wilson line brane labels the R-charge. This brane has strictly positive potential $\{Q, Q^\dagger\} = (|p|^2 + |G|^2) \cdot \mathrm{id}_2$ over X_- where p is non-zero, and therefore is infra-red empty. Note that this matrix factorization is obtained from the complex $\mathcal{W}(2) \xrightarrow{p} \mathcal{W}(-1)$, which defined an empty brane in the non-compact model with $W = 0$, by adding the arrow in the opposite direction, $\mathcal{W}(2) \xleftarrow[G]{} \mathcal{W}(-1)$.

Let us next consider the $r \gg 0$ phase where the deleted set is $\Delta_+ = \{x_1 = x_2 = x_3 = 0\}$. Just as above, we consider adding some arrows to a complex corresponding to an empty brane in the non-compact model, such as $\mathcal{W}(-1) \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{W}(2)$, which can be realized as $X = \sum_{i=1}^3 x_i \overline{\eta}_i$ on the Clifford module. If we add the arrows $pX^2 = \sum_{i=1}^3 p x_i^2 \eta_i$ in the opposite direction, we find a matrix factorization $Q = X + pX^2$ of $W = \sum_{i=1}^3 p x_i^3$. With an appropriate choice of R-charge, say -2 on the Clifford vacuum $|0\rangle$, we have a graded matrix factorization. Presented in the similar way as (10.2), it is

$$\mathfrak{B}_+ : \quad \left(\begin{array}{c} \mathcal{W}(-1)_{_{-2}} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(1)_{_0}^{\oplus 3} \end{array} \underset{f_+}{\overset{g_+}{\rightleftarrows}} \begin{array}{c} \mathcal{W}(0)_{_{-1}}^{\oplus 3} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(2)_{_1} \end{array} \right), \tag{10.3}$$

with

$$g_+ = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 & 0 & p x_3^2 & -p x_2^2 \\ x_2 & -p x_3^2 & 0 & p x_1^2 \\ x_3 & p x_2^2 & -p x_1^2 & 0 \\ 0 & x_1 & x_2 & x_3 \end{pmatrix}, \quad f_+ = \begin{pmatrix} p x_1^2 & p x_2^2 & p x_3^2 & 0 \\ 0 & -x_3 & x_2 & p x_1^2 \\ x_3 & 0 & -x_1 & p x_2^2 \\ -x_2 & x_1 & 0 & p x_3^2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The boundary potential is strictly positive on X_+, $\{Q, Q^\dagger\} = \sum_{i=1}^3 (|x_i|^2 + |p x_i^2|^2) > 0$, and the brane is indeed infra-red empty in the $r \gg 0$ phase.

Let us bind these two branes using a map from $\mathfrak{B}_-$ to $\mathfrak{B}_+$:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & & \mathcal{W}(2)_0 \arrow[r, shift left, "-p"] \arrow[dr, "X^2"'] & \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-1} \arrow[l, shift left, "-G"] \arrow[dl, "\mathrm{id}"] \\
 & & \oplus & \oplus \\
\mathcal{W}(-1)_{-2} \arrow[r, shift left, "X"] & \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3}_{-1} \arrow[l, shift left, "pX^2"] \arrow[r, shift left, "X"] & \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3}_{0} \arrow[l, shift left, "pX^2"] \arrow[r, shift left, "X"] & \mathcal{W}(2)_1 \arrow[l, shift left, "pX^2"]
\end{tikzcd} \tag{10.4}$$

Following the procedure from (3.7) to (3.8), which applies also to matrix factorizations, we can erase the trivial pair $\mathcal{W}(2) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} \mathcal{W}(2)$. The result is

$$\mathcal{W}(-1)_{-2} \underset{pX^2}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3}_{-1} \underset{pX^2}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3}_{0} \underset{X^2}{\overset{pX}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-1},$$

or more explicitly

$$\mathfrak{B}_0 : \left(\begin{array}{c} \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-2} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3}_{0} \end{array} \underset{f_0}{\overset{g_0}{\rightleftarrows}} \begin{array}{c} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3}_{-1} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-1} \end{array} \right),$$

with

$$g_0 = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 & 0 & px_3^2 & -px_2^2 \\ x_2 & -px_3^2 & 0 & px_1^2 \\ x_3 & px_2^2 & -px_1^2 & 0 \\ 0 & px_1 & px_2 & px_3 \end{pmatrix}, \quad f_0 = \begin{pmatrix} px_1^2 & px_2^2 & px_3^2 & 0 \\ 0 & -x_3 & x_2 & x_1^2 \\ x_3 & 0 & -x_1 & x_2^2 \\ -x_2 & x_1 & 0 & x_3^2 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{10.5}$$

In the $r \ll 0$ phase where the brane $\mathfrak{B}_-$ is empty, this process results in the low energy D-isomorphism

$$\pi_-\big(\mathfrak{B}_+\big) \;\cong\; \pi_-\big(\mathfrak{B}_0\big), \tag{10.6}$$

which trades the Wilson line component $\mathcal{W}(2)_1$ for $\mathcal{W}(-1)_{-1}$. The shift in the R-charge is due to the fact that the varibale p carries R-charge 2 and that (f_0, g_0) is obtained from (f_+, g_+) by relocating p. In general, given a matrix factorization in the Landau-Ginzburg phase, we can always eliminate the Wilson line component with largest charge $\mathcal{W}(q_{max})$ in favour of $\mathcal{W}(q_{max}-3)$, as well as the smallest charge component $\mathcal{W}(q_{min})$ by $\mathcal{W}(q_{min}+3)$. This reflects the broken gauge symmetry in the Landau-Ginzburg orbifold model, and tells us that we can simply set $p = 1$ in order to obtain $\mathbf{Z}_3$-graded matrix factorizations. In the next subsection. we will see how this works in a general model.

In the $r \gg 0$ phase where the brane $\mathfrak{B}_+$ is infra-red empty, the above process results in the D-isomorphism

$$\pi_+\big(\mathfrak{B}_-\big) \;\cong\; \pi_+\big(\mathfrak{B}_0\big). \tag{10.7}$$

The Wilson line component $\mathcal{W}(2)$ in $\mathfrak{B}_-$ is traded for others $\mathcal{W}(q)$ with $q = -1, 0, 1$. Just as in this case, we can always lower (and increase) the gauge charges q, by binding with $\mathfrak{B}_+$ or with its shifts in gauge and R-charges. Each binding process changes the charge by at most 3.

Grade Restriciton Rule

We now transport D-branes across phase boundaries. Let us consider two adjacent phases, say Phase I and Phase II, and fix a window w at the phase boundary. The grade restriciton rule (or more generally the band restriction rule) of Section 7 tells us that we cannot transport arbitrary matrix factorizations along a path that goes through w. Only those branes whose Wilson line components $\mathcal{W}(q^1, \ldots, q^k)$ are contained in the band restriction rule can be transported, i.e., $(q^1, \ldots, q^k)$ must be in the band $\mathfrak{C}^w_{\mathrm{I,II}} \subset \mathbf{Z}^k$. We denote the set of matrix factorizations in the band by $MF_W(\mathcal{T}^w_{\mathrm{I,II}})$. Just like (8.6) in the non-compact case, we can associate to a given window w, a hat diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \mathfrak{MF}_W(\mathbf{C}^N, T) & & \\ & & \cup & & \\ & & \mathfrak{MF}_W(\mathcal{T}^w_{\mathrm{I,II}}) & & \\ & \swarrow^{\pi_{\mathrm{I}}} \quad \uparrow_{\omega^w_{\mathrm{I,II}}} & & \uparrow_{\omega^w_{\mathrm{II,I}}} \quad \searrow^{\pi_{\mathrm{II}}} & \\ MF_W(X_{\mathrm{I}}) & & & & MF_W(X_{\mathrm{II}}) \end{array} \tag{10.8}$$

The lifts and projections compose to the maps

$$\begin{aligned} F^w_{\mathrm{I,II}} &= \pi_{\mathrm{II}} \circ \omega^w_{\mathrm{I,II}} : MF_W(X_{\mathrm{I}}) \longrightarrow MF_W(X_{\mathrm{II}}), \\ F^w_{\mathrm{II,I}} &= \pi_{\mathrm{I}} \circ \omega^w_{\mathrm{II,I}} : MF_W(X_{\mathrm{II}}) \longrightarrow MF_W(X_{\mathrm{I}}), \end{aligned}$$

which are inverse to each other, $F^w_{\mathrm{II,I}} \circ F^w_{\mathrm{I,II}} \cong \mathrm{id}_{MF_W(X_{\mathrm{I}})}$ and $F^w_{\mathrm{I,II}} \circ F^w_{\mathrm{II,I}} \cong \mathrm{id}_{MF_W(X_{\mathrm{II}})}$. They induce a one-to-one correspondence between D-isomorphisms classes in $MF_W(X_{\mathrm{I}})$ and $MF_W(X_{\mathrm{II}})$. The key step in the hat diagram (10.8) is the lift from the low energy matrix factorizations in a given phase, say $MF_W(X_{\mathrm{I}})$, to the grade restricted subset $\mathfrak{MF}_W(\mathcal{T}^w_{\mathrm{I,II}})$. A random lift $\mathfrak{B} = (\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$ of a matrix factorization in $MF_W(X_{\mathrm{I}})$ to the linear sigma model does not comply with the band restriction rule. We can, however, bind trivial D-branes to $\mathfrak{B}$ in orde to eliminate Wilson line components $\mathcal{W}(q)$ outside the band, without changing the D-isomorphism class in $MF_W(X_{\mathrm{I}})$.

In the example at hand, the trivial branes at small volume, $r \ll 0$, are the matrix

factorizations

$$\left(\mathcal{W}(q+3)_{j+1} \underset{G}{\overset{p}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{W}(q)_j\right)$$

for any $q \in \mathbf{Z}$ and $j \in \mathbf{Z}$. In the large volume phase, $r \gg 0$, the trivial branes are

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{W}(q)_{j-1} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(q+2)^{\oplus 3}_{j+1} \end{pmatrix} \underset{f_+}{\overset{g_+}{\rightleftarrows}} \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{W}(q+1)^{\oplus 3}_{j} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(q+3)_{j+2} \end{pmatrix}$$

for any $q \in \mathbf{Z}$ and $j \in \mathbf{Z}$. Note that both D-branes have just the right width in the range of gauge charges in order to enable the restriction to $\mathfrak{C}^w$ for some window w at the phase boundary. The binding process (10.4) is an example where the Wilson line component $\mathcal{W}(2)$ is eliminated in order to fit the matrix factorization into the grade restriction rule $\mathfrak{C}^w = \{-1, 0, 1\}$ associated to the window $w = \{-\pi < \theta < \pi\}$. Indeed, the matrix factorization $\mathfrak{B}_0$ is an object in $\mathfrak{MF}_W(\mathcal{T}^w)$, and as a result of relations (10.6) and (10.7) we find:

$$F^w_{+,-} : \pi_+\left(\mathcal{W}(2)_0 \underset{G}{\overset{p}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-1}\right) \longmapsto \pi_-\begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-2} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 3}_0 \end{pmatrix} \underset{f_+}{\overset{g_+}{\rightleftarrows}} \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 3}_{-1} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(2)_1 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (10.9)$$

Just as in this example, in any model, the trivial matrix factorizations to be used for grade or band restriction processes are obtained from the trivial complexes in the non-compact version. For the general model with $U(1)$ gauge group (using the notation in Section 8.2), they are obtained from the X-Koszul and Y-Koszul complexes by adding arrows in the oppostite directions

$$\mathcal{K}^{\mathrm{mf}}_+ = \left(\mathcal{W}(0) \underset{a}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{W}_+ \underset{a}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} \wedge^2 \mathcal{W}_+ \underset{a}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} \cdots \underset{a}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} \wedge^l \mathcal{W}_+\right), \quad (10.10)$$

$$\mathcal{K}^{\mathrm{mf}}_- = \left(\mathcal{W}(0) \underset{b}{\overset{Y}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{W}_- \underset{b}{\overset{Y}{\rightleftarrows}} \wedge^2 \mathcal{W}_- \underset{b}{\overset{Y}{\rightleftarrows}} \cdots \underset{b}{\overset{Y}{\rightleftarrows}} \wedge^{l'} \mathcal{W}_-\right). \quad (10.11)$$

Here $a = (a_1, ..., a_l)$ and $b = (b_1, ..., b_{l'})$ are such that

$$W = \sum_{i=1}^{l} x_i a_i(x, y) = \sum_{j=1}^{l'} y_j b_j(x, y).$$

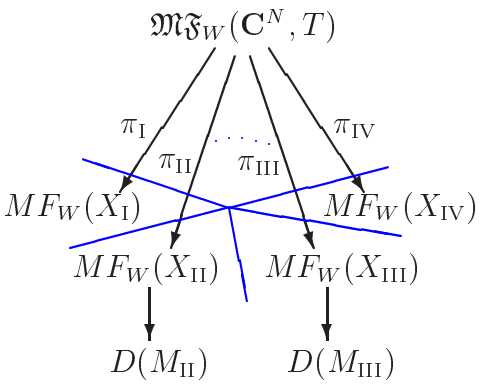
Since W is gauge invariant, such a_i's and b_j's always exist if W is assumed to be reduced with respect to the non-trivially charged fields (i.e. $W = 0$ for $x = y = 0$). We have neglected to put the R-charge information in (10.10) and (10.11).

For a model with higher rank gauge group, $T = U(1)^k$ with $k > 1$, at each phase boundary we can construct similar matrix factorizations of the part of W which is reduced with respect to the relevant fields at that phase boundary. Then, we can take the tensor product with any matrix factorization for the remaining part of W to make a trivial D-brane. As in the non-compact version, there are amibuities in the grade restricted lifts $\omega^w_{\mathrm{I,II}}$ and $\omega^w_{\mathrm{II,I}}$, but they are due to common deleted sets of the two pahses and hence do not matter in the end.

Integrating Out Heavy Fields

We have achieved our goal also in models with superpotential — we have a complete rule of D-brane transport across phase boundaries. However, the "low energy" theories in the above discussion are non-linear LG models on toric verieties X_r, which are in general different from the typical description, such as nonilinear sigma models without potential or LG models on linear space. In order to have a useful transportation rule, we need to fill this gap.

The main gap exists in large volume phases where all the modes transverse to M_r in X_r acquire masses from the F-term superpotential W. For scales below the F-term mass, we can integrate out these massive modes and we obtain the non-linear sigma model on M_r. Matrix factorizations must turn into complexes of holomorphic vector bundles over M_r. The pyramid (10.1) is then enhanced by maps $MF_W(X_r) \to D(M_r)$ in such phases, which associate to each matrix factorization at the intermediate scale a geometric D-brane on the subvariety M_r:



We will find what the maps $MF_W(X_r) \longrightarrow D(M_r)$ are, and see that they induce a one-to-one correspondence between geometric D-branes in $D(M_r)$ and matrix factorizations in $MF_W(X_r)$. Unlike in the bulk theory, where integrating out the massive fields essentially

corresponds to setting them equal to zero, the presence of a boundary enriches the story significantly.

A gap also exists at Landau-Ginzburg orbifold points where the usual low energy description is in terms of LG models on linear spaces. This has nothing to do with F-terms but has to do with D-terms. At a LG orbifold point, some of the linear sigma model fields simply decouple by acquiring infinite mass from the Higgs mechanism, and we are left with the LG model for the rest of the fields. Thus, it is more convenient to use the description that includes only those massless linear fields, rather than to work with the set of all fields and implement the D-isomorphism relation, such as (10.6), all the time.

Before attacking the main problem to find the maps $MF_W(X) \longrightarrow D(M)$ in large volume phases, we first fill this gap at LG orbifold points.

10.2 Landau-Ginzburg Orbifold Point

We need to establish the equivalence of the two descriptions at a Landau-Ginzburg point, one with the full set of fields subject to the D-term relation and the other with the reduced set of fields without any relation. This problem also exists in the model without superpotential $W = 0$, at a free orbifold point, and could have been discussed in Section 8. The treatment we will provide below can be easily adapted for that case as well, and we will leave that to the reader.

We first discuss the problem in a specific class of examples — Example (A). Once that is done, the generalization is straightforward and will be described only briefly.

10.2.1 The $U(1)$ Theory

Eaxmple (A) is a $U(1)$ gauge theory with $(N+1)$ fields $P, X_1, \ldots, X_N$ of charge $-N, 1, \ldots, 1$. The superpotential is $W = PG(X)$ where $G(X)$ is a degree N polynomial of $X_1, \ldots, X_N$. The limit $r \to -\infty$ is the Landau-Ginzburg orbifold point where p has a vacuum expectation value that breaks the gauge group $U(1)$ to the subgroup $\mathbf{Z}_N$ of N-th roots of unity. The P and the gauge multiplets decouple together by acquiring infinite Higgs mass.

Elimination Of P

Elimination of P is straightforward — simply set it equal to its expectation value which can be chosen to be 1. Of course, since the field p carries R-charge 2, we must change the gauge for the R-symmetry transformation. It is done as follows.

Let $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$ be a D-brane in the linear sigma model. We set

$$\begin{aligned} &\overline{Q}(x) := Q(1, x), \\ &\overline{\rho}(\omega) := \rho(\omega), \qquad \text{with} \quad \omega^N = 1, \\ &\overline{R}(\lambda) := R(\lambda)\rho(\lambda^{-2/N}). \end{aligned} \tag{10.12}$$

$\overline{Q}(x)$ is of course a matrix factorization of $W = G(x)$. It is invariant under the orbifold group action, $\overline{\rho}(\omega)\overline{Q}(\omega \cdot x)\overline{\rho}(\omega)^{-1} = \overline{Q}(x)$, and has R-charge 1,

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{R}(\lambda)\overline{Q}(\lambda^{2/N}x)\overline{R}(\lambda)^{-1} &= R(\lambda)\rho(\lambda^{2/N})^{-1}Q(1, \lambda^{2/N}x)\rho(\lambda^{2/N})R(\lambda)^{-1} \\ &= R(\lambda)Q(\lambda^2, x)R(\lambda)^{-1} \\ &= \lambda Q(1, x) \;=\; \lambda\overline{Q}(x). \end{aligned}$$

The operators $\overline{\rho}(\omega)$ and $R(\,\mathrm{e}^{i\alpha})$ of course commute and satisfy

$$\overline{R}(\,\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})\overline{\rho}(\,\mathrm{e}^{2\pi i/N}) = R(\,\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})\rho(\,\mathrm{e}^{-2\pi i/N})\rho(\,\mathrm{e}^{2\pi i/N}) = \sigma_{\mathcal{V}},$$

Thus, we obtained a D-brane $(\mathcal{V}, \overline{Q}, \overline{\rho}, \overline{R})$ in the LG orbifold.

Inclusion Of P

Let us next find the map in the opposite direction — from a D-brane in the LG orbifold to a D-brane in $MF_W(X_{\rm orb})$. Actually, we will be able to find a map directly into the grade restricted subset $\mathfrak{MF}_W(\mathcal{T}^w)$ in the linear sigma model, for any window w at the phase boundary. This will be particularly useful for D-brane transport from the LG point to the large volume regime. We recall that the set $\mathfrak{C}^w$ of admissible charges for a window w is a set of N consequetive integers. In particular, it has the property

$$q, q' \in \mathfrak{C}^w \Longrightarrow |q - q'| \leq N - 1. \tag{10.13}$$

Let $(\mathcal{V}, \overline{Q}, \overline{\rho}, \overline{R})$ be a D-brane in the LG orbifold. One can choose a basis in which $\overline{R}(\lambda)$ and $\overline{\rho}(\omega)$ are simultaneously diagionalized, with eigenvalues $\lambda^{\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}}}$ and $\omega^{\overline{q}_{\mathbf{i}}}$ respectively. Here we use the indices $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, ... to label the Chan-Paton basis vectors. $\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}}$ is a rational

number and $\overline{q}_{\mathbf{i}}$ is a mod N integer. Since $\overline{R}(\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})\overline{\rho}(\mathrm{e}^{2\pi i/N}) = \sigma_{\mathcal{V}}$, we find that $\mathrm{e}^{\pi i\overline{R}_i}\,\mathrm{e}^{2\pi i\overline{q}_i/N}$ is 1 or -1 depending on whether the basis element is even ($\sigma_{\mathbf{i}} = +1$) or odd ($\sigma_{\mathbf{i}} = -1$). Namely, $\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}} + 2\overline{q}_{\mathbf{i}}/N$ is an even or odd integer depending on $\sigma_{\mathbf{i}} = +1$ or $\sigma_{\mathbf{i}} = -1$. In fact, for such an $\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}}$ the equation

$$\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}} = R_{\mathbf{i}} - \frac{2q_{\mathbf{i}}}{N}, \tag{10.14}$$

is uniquely solved by integers $(R_{\mathbf{i}}, q_{\mathbf{i}})$ from the range

$$\begin{aligned} &q_{\mathbf{i}} \in \mathfrak{C}^w, \\ &R_{\mathbf{i}} \in \begin{cases} 2\mathbf{Z} & \sigma_{\mathbf{i}} = +1 \\ 2\mathbf{Z}+1 & \sigma_{\mathbf{i}} = -1. \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

Let us now put

$$\rho(g) := \begin{pmatrix} g^{q_1} & & 0 \\ & \ddots & \\ 0 & & g^{q_{2\ell}} \end{pmatrix}, \qquad R(\lambda) := \begin{pmatrix} \lambda^{R_1} & & 0 \\ & \ddots & \\ 0 & & \lambda^{R_{2\ell}} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{10.15}$$

Then we have $\overline{R}(\lambda) = R(\lambda)\rho(\lambda^{-2/N})$ and $q_{\mathbf{i}} = \overline{q}_{\mathbf{i}} \bmod N$, that is, $\rho(\omega) = \overline{\rho}(\omega)$ for an N-th root of unity ω. Hence, by the orbifold invariance of $\overline{Q}(x)$ we have

$$\rho(\omega)^{-1}\overline{Q}(\omega x)\rho(\omega) = \overline{Q}(x), \qquad \text{if } \omega^N = 1.$$

This means that $\rho(z)^{-1}\overline{Q}(zx)\rho(z)$ depends on z only though z^N. Since $\overline{Q}(zx)$ is a polynomial of zx_i's and since conjugation by $\rho(z)$ can change the power of z only at most by $z^{\pm(N-1)}$ (see (10.13)), we find that $\rho(z)^{-1}\overline{Q}(zx)\rho(z)$ has no negative powers of z^N, that is, it is a polynomial in z^N,

$$\rho(z)^{-1}\overline{Q}(zx)\rho(z) = \overline{Q}_0(x) + z^N\overline{Q}_1(x) + z^{2N}\overline{Q}_2(x) + \cdots.$$

$\overline{Q}_i(x)$ is the component of $\overline{Q}(x)$ such that $\rho(z)^{-1}\overline{Q}_i(zx)\rho(z) = z^{i\,N}\overline{Q}_i(x)$. Now we define $Q(p,x)$ by replacing z^N by p:

$$Q(p,x) := \overline{Q}_0(x) + p\overline{Q}_1(x) + p^2\overline{Q}_2(x) + \cdots. \tag{10.16}$$

Let us perform some checks on this $Q(p,x)$. Using the gauge transformation property of $\overline{Q}_i(x)$, we see that the equation $\overline{Q}(x)^2 = G(x)\cdot \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{V}}$ decomposes into the following set of equations

$$\begin{aligned} &\overline{Q}_0(x)^2 = 0, \\ &\overline{Q}_0(x)\overline{Q}_1(x) + \overline{Q}_1(x)\overline{Q}_0(x) = G(x)\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{V}}, \\ &\overline{Q}_0(x)\overline{Q}_2(x) + \overline{Q}_1(x)^2 + \overline{Q}_2(x)\overline{Q}_0(x) = 0, \\ &\cdots\cdots \end{aligned}$$

These are compiled into a single equation

$$Q(p,x)^2 = pG(x)\cdot \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{V}},$$

which says that $Q(p,x)$ is indeed a matrix factorization of $pG(x)$. Gauge invariance and R-symmetry simply follow from the definition,

$$\begin{aligned}
&\rho(g)^{-1}Q(g^{-N}p,gx)\rho(g)\\
&\quad = \overline{Q}_0(x) + (g^{-N}p)(g^N\overline{Q}_1(x)) + (g^{-N}p)^2(g^{2N}\overline{Q}_2(x)) + \cdots\\
&\quad = Q(p,x),\\
&R(\lambda)Q(\lambda^2 p,x)R(\lambda)^{-1}\\
&\quad = \overline{R}(\lambda)\rho(\lambda^{2/N})Q(\lambda^2 p,x)\rho(\lambda^{2/N})^{-1}\overline{R}(\lambda)^{-1}\\
&\quad = \overline{R}(\lambda)Q(p,\lambda^{2/N}x)\overline{R}(\lambda)^{-1} = \lambda Q(p,x).
\end{aligned}$$

To summarize, $(\mathcal{V},Q,\rho,R)$ given by (10.15) and (10.16) has all the properties to define a D-brane in the linear sigma model. We have constructed a map that sends D-branes in the LG orbifold to grade restricted D-branes in the linear sigma model. It is clear that this is the inverse of the map $(\mathcal{V},Q,\rho,R)\mapsto(\mathcal{V},\overline{Q},\overline{\rho},\overline{R})$ which was obtained by setting $p=1$ and modifiying the R-symmetry by an appropriate gauge transformation.

Example

If we apply the map $(\mathcal{V},Q,\rho,R)\mapsto(\mathcal{V},\overline{Q},\overline{\rho},\overline{R})$ to the D-branes $\mathfrak{B}_-$, $\mathfrak{B}_+$ and $\mathfrak{B}_0$ that were introduced in (10.2), (10.3) and (10.5), we find

$$\mathfrak{B}_- \longmapsto \left(\mathcal{O}(\overline{2})_{-\frac{4}{3}} \underset{G}{\overset{\mathrm{id}}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{O}(\overline{2})_{-\frac{1}{3}}\right),$$

$$\mathfrak{B}_+,\mathfrak{B}_0 \longmapsto \left(\begin{array}{cc} \mathcal{O}(\overline{2})_{-\frac{4}{3}} & \overset{g}{\rightleftarrows} \\ \underset{\mathcal{O}(\overline{1})^{\oplus 3}_{-\frac{2}{3}}}{\oplus} & \underset{f}{} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \mathcal{O}(\overline{0})^{\oplus 3}_{-1} \\ \underset{\mathcal{O}(\overline{2})_{-\frac{1}{3}}}{\oplus} \end{array}\right),$$

where (f,g) are obtained from (f_+,g_+) or (f_0,g_0) by setting $p=1$. The subscripts are the Chan-Paton R-charges $\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}}$ in the low energy theory. We indeed find the empty brane $(1,G)$ as the image of $\mathfrak{B}_-$. Also, $\mathfrak{B}_+$ and $\mathfrak{B}_0$ are mapped to the same D-brane. (The image is equal to the Recknagel-Schomerus brane $\mathcal{B}_{(0,0,0),2,1}$ in the notation of Section 2.4.1.) If we apply the inverse map to the two LG branes obtained above, with the grade restriction

rule $\mathfrak{C}^w = \{-1, 0, 1\}$, we find respectively

$$\left(\mathcal{W}(-1)_{-2} \underset{pG}{\overset{\mathrm{id}}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-1} \right), \quad \left(\begin{array}{c} \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-2} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(1)_{0}^{\oplus 3} \end{array} \underset{f_0}{\overset{g_0}{\rightleftarrows}} \begin{array}{c} \mathcal{W}(0)_{-1}^{\oplus 3} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-1} \end{array} \right).$$

The latter is $\mathfrak{B}_0$.

10.2.2 General Case

In a general linear sigma model, a Landau-Ginzburg orbifold phase occurs when the gauge group $U(1)^k$ is broken to a finite subgroup Γ by non-zero values of k fields, say $Y_1, \ldots, Y_k$, and the D-term equation can be solved for arbitrary values of the remaining fields, $X_1, \ldots, X_{N-k}$. The deleted set is then

$$\Delta = \bigcup_{i=1}^{k} \{y_i = 0\}. \tag{10.17}$$

There is a fractional change of basis of the gauge group that brings the charges into the following form

$$\widetilde{Q}^a_{Y_i} = -\delta^a_i, \qquad \widetilde{Q}^a_{X_j} \geq 0.$$

In such a basis, the orbifold phase is $r^a < 0$. Indeed, the D-term equation can be solved at $r^a < 0$ for arbitrary x_j's by setting $|y_i|^2 = \sum_j \widetilde{Q}^i_{X_j} |x_j|^2 - r^i > 0$. In what follows, we use the original integral basis, with $Q^a_j \in \mathbf{Z}$. The only thing we need to know is that the $k \times k$ matrix $Q^a_{Y_i}$ is invertible over rational numbers and that $\widetilde{Q}^b_{X_j} := -[(Q_Y)^{-1} Q_X]^b_j$ are non-negative.

The low energy theory is the LG orbifold with variables $X = (X_1, ..., X_{N-k})$ and superpotential

$$W(X) = W(X_1, \ldots, X_{N-k}, 1, ..., 1).$$

The orbifold group Γ consists of elements $g = (g_1, ..., g_k)$ of $U(1)^k$ obeying

$$\prod_{a=1}^{k} g_a^{Q^a_{Y_i}} = 1, \quad \forall i = 1, \ldots, k.$$

Recall from (5.27) that the R-charges R_{X_j}, R_{Y_i} of the fields X_j, Y_i are even integers. The R-symmetry action on Y_j's can be trivialized by dressing with the gauge transformation $g_s(\lambda) = (\lambda^{s_1}, \ldots, \lambda^{s_k})$ where $(s_1, \ldots, s_k)$ is the unique rational solution to the system of $\mathbf{Q}$-linear equations

$$\sum_{a=1}^{k} s_a Q^a_{Y_i} + R_{Y_i} = 0, \quad \forall i = 1, \ldots, k.$$

The R-charges of X_i in the low energy LG model are thus

$$\overline{R}_{X_j} = R_{X_j} + \sum_{a=1}^{k} s_a Q^a_{X_j}.$$

The element $g_s(\,\mathrm{e}^{\pi i}) = (\,\mathrm{e}^{\pi i s_1}, \ldots, \mathrm{e}^{\pi i s_k})$ acts trivially on y_i's, $\prod_a \mathrm{e}^{\pi i s_a Q^q_{Y_j}} = \mathrm{e}^{-\pi i R_{Y_j}} = 1$, and acts on x_i's by the phase $\prod_a \mathrm{e}^{\pi i s_a Q^a_{X_j}} = \mathrm{e}^{\pi i R_{X_j}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\pi i \sum_a s_a Q^a_{X_j}} = \mathrm{e}^{\pi i \overline{R}_{X_j}}$, where we used the fact that the R_{Y_i}'s and the R_{X_j}'s are even integers. Namely, it belongs to the orbifold group Γ and acts on the Landau-Ginzburg fields x_j in the same way as the R-symmetry at $\lambda = \mathrm{e}^{\pi i}$. Therefore, we can identify $g_s(\,\mathrm{e}^{\pi i}) = (\,\mathrm{e}^{\pi i s_1}, \ldots, \mathrm{e}^{\pi i s_k})$ as the element $\omega_{-1} \in \Gamma$ that was defined in Section 2.4.1.

Elimination Of Y_i's

Given a brane $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$ in the theory with full set of variables, we set

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{Q}(x) &:= Q(x_1, ..., x_{n-k}, 1, ..., 1) \\ \overline{\rho}(\omega) &:= \rho(\omega), \qquad \text{with } \omega \in \Gamma, \\ \overline{R}(\lambda) &:= R(\lambda)\rho(g_s(\lambda))^{-1}. \end{aligned} \tag{10.18}$$

This $(\mathcal{V}, \overline{Q}, \overline{\rho}, \overline{R})$ defines a D-brane in the LG orbifold.

Inclusion Of Y_i's

Let $(\mathcal{V}, \overline{Q}, \overline{\rho}, \overline{R})$ be a D-brane in the LG orbifold. We denote the eigenvalues of $\overline{R}(\lambda)$ and $\overline{\rho}(\omega)$ as $\lambda^{\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}}}$ and $\prod_a \omega_a^{\overline{q}^a_{\mathbf{i}}}$. It follows from $\overline{R}(\,\mathrm{e}^{\pi i})\overline{\rho}(\omega_{-1}) = \sigma_{\mathcal{V}}$ that $\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}} + \sum_{a=1}^{k} s_a \overline{q}^a_{\mathbf{i}}$ is an even (odd) integer if $\mathbf{i}$ labels an even (odd) Chan-Paton vector. Analogously to the $T = U(1)$ case, we would like to find an even (odd) integer $R_{\mathbf{i}}$ and a set of integers $q^a_{\mathbf{i}} \equiv \overline{q}^a_{\mathbf{i}}$ satisfying the equation

$$\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}} = R_{\mathbf{i}} - \sum_{a=1}^{k} s_a q^a_{\mathbf{i}}.$$

There is a unique solution if we require $q^a_{\mathbf{i}}$ to be in a bounded range such that $\widetilde{q}^a_{\mathbf{i}} := -[Q_Y^{-1} q]^a_{\mathbf{i}}$ is in an open interval of width 1. Since the deleted set is the union of the hypersurfaces $y_j = 0$, (10.17), this bound precisely matches with a fundamental domain of the Chan-Paton charges with respect to the D-isomorphism relations of the Wilson line branes.

Once the solution $(q_{\mathbf{i}}^a, R_{\mathbf{i}})$ is found for each $\mathbf{i}$, we define $\rho(g)$ and $R(\lambda)$ as in the $T = U(1)$ case. It follows from the orbifold invariance of $\overline{Q}(x)$ that $\rho(g)^{-1}\overline{Q}(gx)\rho(g)$ depends on $g = (g_1, \ldots, g_k)$ only through

$$h_j := \prod_{a=1}^{k} g_a^{-Q_{Y_j}^a}, \quad i = 1, \ldots, k.$$

It is in fact a polynomial of $h_1, \ldots, h_k$, due to the bound on $q_{\mathbf{i}}^a$, as one can see in the fractional basis of $U(1)^k$ mentioned at the beginning. In particular, one can write $\overline{Q}(x) = \sum_{\vec{n}} \overline{Q}_{\vec{n}}(x)$ such that $\rho(g)^{-1}\overline{Q}_{\vec{n}}(gx)\rho(g) = h^{\vec{n}} \cdot \overline{Q}_{\vec{n}}(x)$ where $\vec{n}$ is a k-tuple of non-negative integers $n_1, ..., n_k$, and $h^{\vec{n}}$ is a short-hand notation for the product $h_1^{n_1} \cdots h_k^{n_k}$. Setting

$$Q(x, y) = \sum_{\vec{n}} y_1^{n_1} \cdots y_k^{n_k} \overline{Q}_{\vec{n}}(x),$$

we obtain a D-brane data $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$ in the linear sigma model. We have constructed the inverse to the map $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R) \mapsto (\mathcal{V}, \overline{Q}, \overline{\rho}, \overline{R})$ in (10.18).

10.3 Geometric Phase

We now attack the problem of integrating out the bulk fields that acquire mass from the superpotential F-term. In fact, we had already considered the same problem in the context of a simple Landau-Ginzburg model in Section 3.4, where we integrated out two variables, U and V, which enter into the term UV of superpotential. We shall refer to our result of Section 3.4, $(\mathcal{V}, Q) \mapsto (\widehat{\mathcal{V}}, \widehat{Q})$ given in (3.35) and (3.36), as the *Knörrer map*. Our current situation can be regarded as a massive LG model fibred over the subvariety $M \subset X$, with a non-degenerate quadratic superpotential as a function of the transverse coordinates. Thus, we may simply apply the Knörrer map fibrewise in this setup.

In the first part of this subsection, we directly apply the Knörrer map and obtain the map of matrix factorizations in $MF_W(X)$ to geometric D-branes in $D(M)$. In the second part, we reformulate the Knörrer map and find the inverse map, from geometric D-branes in $D(M)$ to matrix factorizations in $MF_W(X)$.

10.3.1 $MF_W(X) \to D(M)$

We first consider Example (A) with the superpotential

$$W = PG(X_1, \ldots, X_N). \tag{10.19}$$

The geometric phase is $r \gg 0$, and the description at the intermediate scale is the LG model with this superpotential over the total space $X = X_+$ of the holomorphic line numdle $\mathcal{O}(-N) \to \mathbf{CP}^{N-1}$. The superpotential is critical at the submanifold $\{P = G = 0\} \subset X$, which is a degree N hypersurface M of the projective space $\mathbf{CP}^{N-1}$. We may say that we have a LG model with superpotential $W = PG$ fibred over the hypersurface M. Thus, we can simply apply the Knörrer map fibrewise. We obviously have two options, one with the identification $U = P$ and $V = G$ and the other with $U = G$ and $V = P$. The two must give rise to the same answer provided we do everything correctly. In this first part, we take the former option. The latter option turns out to be useful to find the inverse map and will be considered in the second part.

Let $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$ be a linear sigma model brane representing an element of $MF_W(X)$. Following the Knörrer map we put

$$\widehat{\mathcal{V}} = \mathcal{V} \oplus p\mathcal{V} \oplus p^2\mathcal{V} \oplus p^3\mathcal{V} \oplus \cdots, \tag{10.20}$$

$$\widehat{Q} = Q|_{G(x)=0}. \tag{10.21}$$

$\widehat{Q}$ is regarded as acting on the infinite dimensional space $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}$. The gauge and the R-symmetry actions $\widehat{\rho}$, $\widehat{R}$ on the new Chan-Paton space $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}$ are naturally determined by the respective charges of p, up to an overall shift ambiguity. This ambiguity is fixed by setting

$$\widehat{\rho} = \rho \quad \text{on } \mathcal{V} \subset \widehat{\mathcal{V}}, \tag{10.22}$$

$$\widehat{R} = R \quad \text{on } \mathcal{V} \subset \widehat{\mathcal{V}}. \tag{10.23}$$

As we have discussed in Section 3.4, we need to make a choice of the overall R-charge assignment, and (10.23) is just one choice. As for the gauge group action, on the other hand, there is no such ambiguity. We will see that (10.22) is the correct identification, as long as the B-field on M is given in terms of the theta parameter by

$$B = \theta + N\pi. \tag{10.24}$$

$(\widehat{\mathcal{V}}, \widehat{Q}, \widehat{\rho}, \widehat{R})$ is the data of the D-brane in the low energy sigma model. The Chan-Paton space $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}$ with representations $(\widehat{\rho}, \widehat{R})$ corresponds to a graded vector bundle $\widehat{\mathcal{E}}$ over M; a one-dimensional subspace of $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}$ of gauge charge q and R-charge j corresponds to a rank one subbundle of $\widehat{\mathcal{E}}$ at degree j which is isomorphic to the line bundle $\mathcal{O}(q)$ on M. $\widehat{Q}$ acts on $\widehat{\mathcal{E}}$ as a degree 1 bundle map. Since we are on the hypersurface $\{G(x) = 0\}$ it squares to zero

$$\widehat{Q}^2 = 0.$$

Thus, we have a complex of vector bundles. Since p has R-charge $2 > 0$, the subspace $p^m\mathcal{V} \subset \widehat{\mathcal{V}}$ for larger m corresponds to a subbundle with larger R-degree. Therefore, if the original Chan-Paton space $\mathcal{V}$ was finite dimensional, the degree j subbundle $\mathcal{E}^j$ has finite rank for each j, and the complex $(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}, \widehat{Q})$ is bounded from the left, but unbounded to the right;

$$0 \to \mathcal{E}^{j_{\rm m}} \xrightarrow{d_{j_{\rm m}}} \mathcal{E}^{j_{\rm m}+1} \to \cdots \to \mathcal{E}^{j} \xrightarrow{d_j} \mathcal{E}^{j+1} \to \cdots . \tag{10.25}$$

Here $j_{\rm m}$ is the minimum of the R-charges of $\mathcal{V}$. Although it is an unbounded complex, it is exact at large enough R-degrees. This follows from the corresponding property of the Knörrer map, see Section 3.4. Indeed, the infra-red empty blocks of the matrix $\widehat{Q}$ shown in (3.37) are on subspaces of large R-charges if we assign R-charge 2 to the variable u. There is also an alternative, algebraic proof of the exactness at large degrees, which will be given momentarily. In either way, we know that it is quasi-isomorphic to a bounded complex of coherent sheaves, such as

$$0 \to \mathcal{E}^{j_{\rm m}} \xrightarrow{d_{j_{\rm m}}} \mathcal{E}^{j_{\rm m}+1} \to \cdots \to \mathcal{E}^{l} \xrightarrow{d_l} \operatorname{Ker} d_{l+1} \to 0,$$

for some large l.

Let us illustrate the procedure using the brane $\mathfrak{B}_-$ in the $N = 3$ case, which was introduced in (10.2). The original Chan-Paton space $\mathcal{V}$ is two-dimensional, and let us denote the basis vectors by $\mathbf{e}_{2,0}$, $\mathbf{e}_{-1,-1}$. The basis elements $p^m\mathbf{e}_{2,0}$, $p^m\mathbf{e}_{-1,-1}$ of the new Chan-Paton space $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}$ have (gauge,R)-charges $(2{+}3m, 2m)$, $(-1{+}3m, -1{+}2m)$ respectively and thus correspond to the line bundles $\mathcal{O}(2+3m)_{2m}$, $\mathcal{O}(-1+3m)_{-1+2m}$ over the elliptic curve M. $\widehat{Q}$ maps the basis elements as follows

$$p^m\mathbf{e}_{2,0} \mapsto p^{m+1}\mathbf{e}_{-1,-1}, \quad p^m\mathbf{e}_{-1,-1} \mapsto 0.$$

Thus, we find the complex

$$0 \to \mathcal{O}(-1)_{-1} \xrightarrow{0} \mathcal{O}(2)_0 \xrightarrow{\rm id} \mathcal{O}(2)_1 \xrightarrow{0} \mathcal{O}(5)_2 \xrightarrow{\rm id} \mathcal{O}(5)_3 \xrightarrow{0} \cdots$$

We find infinite copies of trivial brane-antibrane pairs. Eliminating them all, we are left with the finite complex $0 \to \mathcal{O}(-1)_{-1} \to 0$. Hence, the Knörrer map yields

$$\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}_-) \longmapsto \mathcal{O}(-1)[1].$$

Let us consider another example, the brane $\mathfrak{B}_+$ given in (10.3). As above, for each Wilson line brane $\mathcal{W}(q)_i$ we have an infinite series of line bundles $\mathcal{O}(q+3m)_{i+2m}$ on the elliptic curve. We first write the entries in (10.3), from left to right with respect to the R-charge,

draw the arrows from the p-independent part of (f_+, g_+), and replace the notation "$\mathcal{W}$" by "$\mathcal{O}$":

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathcal{O}(-1)_{-2} & \xrightarrow{x} & \mathcal{O}(0)^{\oplus 3}_{-1} & & \\ & & & \searrow^{x} & \\ & & & & \mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus 3}_{0} \xrightarrow{x} \mathcal{O}(2)_{1} \end{array}$$

We next write its copies, shifted to the right by two and tensored by $\mathcal{O}(3)$, and draw the arrows including the p-dependent part of (f_+, g_+):

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccccc} \mathcal{O}(-1)_{-2} & \xrightarrow{x} & \mathcal{O}(0)^{\oplus 3}_{-1} & \xrightarrow{x^2} & \mathcal{O}(2)_{0} & \xrightarrow{x} & \mathcal{O}(3)^{\oplus 3}_{1} & \xrightarrow{x^2} & \mathcal{O}(5)_{2} & \xrightarrow{x} & \mathcal{O}(6)^{\oplus 3}_{3} & \xrightarrow{x^2} & \\ & \searrow^{x} & \oplus & \nearrow_{x^2} & \oplus & \searrow^{x} & \oplus & \nearrow_{x^2} & \oplus & \searrow^{x} & \cdots & & \\ & & \mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus 3}_{0} & \xrightarrow{x} & \mathcal{O}(2)_{1} & \xrightarrow{x^2} & \mathcal{O}(4)^{\oplus 3}_{2} & \xrightarrow{x} & \mathcal{O}(5)_{3} & \xrightarrow{x^2} & & & \end{array}$$

This is the complex $(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}_+, \widehat{Q}_+)$. It is exact. The exactness can be proven algebraically, but one may also prove it by computing the potential $\{\widehat{Q}_+, \widehat{Q}_+^\dagger\}$ and showing that it is positive everywhere: The potential is $|x|^2 + |x|^4 = \sum_i (|x_i|^2 + |x_i|^4)$ except at the first few terms, $\mathcal{O}(-1)_{-2}$, $\mathcal{O}(0)^{\oplus 3}_{-1}$, and $\mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus 3}_{0}$, where it is $|x|^2$, $|x|^2\delta_{i,j} + \bar{x}_i^2 x_j^2$, and $(|x|^2 + |x|^4)\delta_{i,j} - x_i^2 \bar{x}_j^2$ respectively. All the eigenvalues are bounded from below by $|x|^2$ and are positive as long as $(x_1, x_2, x_3) \neq (0, 0, 0)$. Therefore, the brane determined by $(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}_+, \widehat{Q}_+)$ is infra-red empty, which is indeed expected from $\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}_+) \cong 0$.

If we apply this procedure to the brane $\mathfrak{B}_0$ given in (10.5), we immediately find the complex $(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}_0, \widehat{Q}_0)$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccccc} \mathcal{O}(-1)_{-2} & \xrightarrow{x} & \mathcal{O}(0)^{\oplus 3}_{-1} & \xrightarrow{x^2} & \mathcal{O}(2)_{0} & \xrightarrow{x} & \mathcal{O}(3)^{\oplus 3}_{1} & \xrightarrow{x^2} & \mathcal{O}(5)_{2} & \xrightarrow{x} & \mathcal{O}(6)^{\oplus 3}_{3} & \xrightarrow{x^2} & \\ & & \oplus & \searrow^{x} & \oplus & \nearrow_{x^2} & \oplus & \searrow^{x} & \oplus & \nearrow_{x^2} & \oplus & \searrow^{x} & \cdots \\ & & \mathcal{O}(-1)_{-1} & \xrightarrow{x^2} & \mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus 3}_{0} & \xrightarrow{x} & \mathcal{O}(2)_{1} & \xrightarrow{x^2} & \mathcal{O}(4)^{\oplus 3}_{2} & \xrightarrow{x} & \mathcal{O}(5)_{3} & \xrightarrow{x^2} & \end{array}$$

Notice that it is almost the same as $(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}_+, \widehat{Q}_+)$ except for the term $\mathcal{O}(-1)_{-1}$ with a map to $\mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus 3}_{0}$. Namely, it is the cone of this map:

$$(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}_0, \widehat{Q}_0) = \mathrm{Cone}\Big(\mathcal{O}(-1) \xrightarrow{x^2} (\widehat{\mathcal{E}}_+, \widehat{Q}_+)\Big).$$

Since $(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}_+, \widehat{Q}_+)$ is empty, we see that our brane $(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}_0, \widehat{Q}_0)$ is D-isomorphic to just $\mathcal{O}(-1)[1]$ which is the same as the result for $\mathfrak{B}_-$. This is exactly what is expected from (10.7).

Theta Shift

We now show that the Chan-Paton gauge charges of the low energy D-brane are given by (10.22) with theta parameter shift (10.24). To this end, we put the derivation of the

Knörrer map in Section 3.4 into the context of a $U(1)$ gauge theory. Thus, we assume that the variables $X_1, ..., X_n, U, V$ carry some $U(1)$ gauge charges so that the superpotential $W = W_L(X) + UV$ is gauge invariant. We suppose that U and V have charges Q_u and $-Q_u$ respectively. Then, the boundary variables η and $\overline{\eta}$ of the brane (3.32) must carry gauge charges $-Q_u$ and $+Q_u$ respectively. Accordingly, the Chan-Paton vectors from the (U, V) sector have the following gauge charges:

vector	$\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}\|0\rangle$
q	$\frac{Q_u}{2}$	$-\frac{Q_u}{2}$

(10.26)

Now suppose we have some brane $\mathcal{A}^L$ in the low energy theory and consider the brane (3.33) in the high energy theory. If we integrate out the (U, V, η)-system, we get back exactly the original brane $\mathcal{A}^L$ since the ground state of the (U, V, η)-system has zero effective energy and zero effective charge, see Section 6.10. Let us look into the form of Chan-Paton vectors in this context. If $\mathbf{e}_i$ are Chan-Paton vectors of the original low energy brane $\mathcal{A}^L$, then the Chan-Paton vectors of the high energy brane (3.33) are of the form $\mathbf{e}_i \otimes |0\rangle, \mathbf{e}_i \otimes \overline{\eta}|0\rangle$. If $\mathbf{e}_i$'s have gauge charge q_i, then the latter have gauge charges $q_i + \frac{Q_u}{2}, q_i - \frac{Q_u}{2}$. These are the Chan-Paton charges that we see before integrating out U and V. The Knörrer map is the procedure that takes out $\mathbf{e}_i \otimes |0\rangle$. However, what we want as the Chan-Paton vectors in the low energy theory are just $\mathbf{e}_i$, but not $\mathbf{e}_i \otimes |0\rangle$. Thus, to find the correct charge of the low energy Chan-Paton vectors we need to subtract the charge of $|0\rangle$ from the high energy Chan-Paton vectors. This yields the rule

$$q_i^L = q_i^H - \frac{Q_u}{2}.$$

Since the theta parameter contributes to the boundary charge in the form $q + \frac{\theta}{2\pi}$, one can relocate this shift to a shift of the theta parameter

$$\theta^L = \theta^H - Q_u \pi,$$

now without shifting the q_i's. In the current set up where $U = P$ and hence $Q_u = -N$, this rule leads to (10.22) with (10.24).

A shift of the theta angle due to integration of massive fields was first found in the context of closed string topological A-model by Morrison and Plesser [58]. There, only the shift modulo 2π matters and indeed their result is consistent with ours: $\mathrm{e}^{i\Delta\theta} = (-1)^N$. In the present context of (physical or topological) open string theoy with B-type boundary conditions, a shift by an integer multiple of 2π also matters. The above result shows the precise shift, including the integral part.

Left Semi-Infinite Complexes

That the semi-infinite complex (10.25) is exact at large enough degrees can also be proven purely algebraically. The essential point is a well known fact in the theory of matrix factorizations (Eisenbud [11], Proposition 5.1): *Let*

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & f(x) \\ g(x) & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

be a matrix factorization of some polynomial $W(x) = W(x_1, ..., x_n)$*, of size* $2\ell \times 2\ell$*. This induces an infinite, 2-periodic complex of modules over the ring* $B = \mathbf{C}[x_1, ..., x_n]/W(x)$

$$\cdots \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} B^{\oplus \ell} \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} B^{\oplus \ell} \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} B^{\oplus \ell} \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} \cdots \ . \tag{10.27}$$

Then this complex is exact. This is proven as follows. Suppose some homomorphism $\bar{\kappa} : B^{\oplus k} \to B^{\oplus \ell}$, induced by an $\ell \times k$ polynomial matrix κ, obeys the equation $\bar{f} \circ \bar{\kappa} = 0$. This means that the matrix $f \circ \kappa$ is divisible by W, that is, there is a $\ell \times k$ matrix γ such that $f \circ \kappa = W\gamma$. Then we have $W\kappa = g \circ f \circ \kappa = Wg \circ \gamma$, which means $\kappa = g \circ \gamma$. In particular $\bar{\kappa} = \bar{g} \circ \bar{\gamma}$. This shows the exactness at $B^{\oplus \ell} \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} B^{\oplus \ell} \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} B^{\oplus \ell}$. The exactness at the other position can be shown in the same way.

In fact, this infinite complex is the totally acyclic complex (2.72) that we met before in Section 2.4, where we studied the chiral ring for matrix factorizations. We recall that we denoted it by $\mathcal{C}_Q$.

If we replace $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}$ by

$$\bigoplus_{m \in \mathbf{Z}} p^m \mathcal{V} = \cdots \oplus p^{-2}\mathcal{V} \oplus p^{-1}\mathcal{V} \oplus \mathcal{V} \oplus p\mathcal{V} \oplus p^2\mathcal{V} \oplus \cdots \tag{10.28}$$

in the definition of $(\widehat{\mathcal{V}}, \widehat{Q}, \widehat{\rho}, \widehat{R})$ for $\mathfrak{B} = (\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$, then we obtain an infinite complex of vector bundles unbounded both in the left and right. If we regard it as a complex of modules over the ring $B = \mathbf{C}[x_1, \ldots, x_N]/G(x)$, and if we ignore the grading, it is 2-periodic and coincides with the totally acyclic complex $\mathcal{C}_{\overline{Q}}$ associated with the matrix factorization $\overline{Q} = Q|_{p=1}$ of the polynomial $G(x)$. In particular, it is exact and can be regarded as a graded version of $\mathcal{C}_{\overline{Q}}$. We denote it by $\mathcal{C}_{\mathfrak{B}}$. Our semi-infinite complex (10.25) is obtained from this exact complex by chopping off the semi-infinite part corresponding to the negative power components $p^{-m}\mathcal{V}$. This proves that (10.25) is exact at large enough degrees.

The fact that the complex $(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}, \widehat{Q})$ is a part of the exact complex $\mathcal{C}_{\mathfrak{B}}$ also shows that there is an alternative description: Take the remaining part (i.e. the negative power part

$\oplus_{m>0} p^{-m}\mathcal{V}$) and shift it by 1 to the right. This produces a semi-infinite complex which is unbounded to the left, but bounded from the right. Of course, this left semi-infinite complex is quasi-isomorphic to the right semi-infinite complex $(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}, \widehat{Q})$. For example, the left semi-infinite version of the complex $(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}_0, \widehat{Q}_0)$ that represents $\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}_0)$ is

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc} & & \mathcal{O}(-7)_{-5} & \stackrel{X}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-6)^{\oplus 3}_{-4} & \stackrel{X^2}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-4)_{-3} & \stackrel{X}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-3)^{\oplus 3}_{-2} & & \\ \cdots & \oplus & & \nearrow_{X^2} & \oplus & \searrow^{X} & \oplus & \nearrow_{X^2} & \oplus & \searrow^{X} & \\ & \mathcal{O}(-8)^{\oplus 3}_{-5} & \stackrel{X}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-7)_{-4} & \stackrel{X^2}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-5)^{\oplus 3}_{-3} & \stackrel{X}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-4)_{-2} & \stackrel{X^2}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-2)^{\oplus 3}_{-1} & \end{array}$$

If we attatch $\mathcal{O}(-1)_0$ to this complex with the map (x_1, x_2, x_3) from the right-most entry, $\mathcal{O}(-2)^{\oplus 3}_{-1}$, the result is an exact complex. (This can be seen by showing that the bounday potential $\{Q, Q^\dagger\}$ is positive, or by noting that it is the complement of the exact complex $(\widehat{E}_+, \widehat{Q}_+)$ in the exact complex $\mathcal{C}_{\mathfrak{B}_+}$.) Namely, there is a quasi-isomorphism from this complex to $\mathcal{O}(-1)[1]$. Thus, we obtain again the same result for $\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}_0)$.

Complete Intersection Of Hypersurfaces In Toric Variety

It is straighforward to generalize the above construction to the case where M is a complete intersection of hypersurfaces in a toric variety. Let us consider a $U(1)^k$ gauge theory which has $(N+l)$ fields $X_1, \ldots, X_N$, $P_1, \ldots, P_l$ with charge $Q_1^a, \ldots, Q_N^a$, $-d_1^a, \ldots, -d_l^a$, and the superpotential

$$W = \sum_{\beta=1}^{l} P_\beta G_\beta(X_1, ..., X_N) \tag{10.29}$$

where $G(X)_\beta$ are homogeneous polynomials of degree d_β^a with respect to the a-th gauge group. We assign R-charges 0 to X_i's and 2 to P_β's. We suppose that there is a phase in which the gauge group is completely broken by the values of the X_i's and the non-compact variety X is the total space of the rank l vector bundle $\oplus_{\beta=1}^{l}\mathcal{O}(-\vec{d}_\beta)$ over a compact toric manifold X_B. Then, the low energy theory is the non-linear sigma model on the critical locus $P_\beta = G_\beta = 0$ $(\beta = 1, \ldots, l)$, which is the complete intersection M of hypersurfaces $G_\beta(x) = 0$ in the toric variety X_B. If we have a D-brane $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$ in the linear sigma model, then the brane in the low energy sigma model is given by

$$\widehat{\mathcal{V}} = \bigoplus_{m_1, \ldots, m_l \geq 0} p_1^{m_1} \cdots p_l^{m_l} \mathcal{V}, \tag{10.30}$$

$$\widehat{Q} = Q|_{G_1 = \cdots = G_l = 0}. \tag{10.31}$$

The gauge and R-symmetry representations $\widehat{\rho}$ and $\widehat{R}$ are determined by the charges of p_β's and by the initial condition: $\widehat{\rho} = \rho$, $\widehat{R} = R$ in the subspace $\mathcal{V} \subset \widehat{\mathcal{V}}$, provided the

B-field is given by

$$B^a = \theta^a + \left(\sum_{\beta=1}^{l} d_\beta^a\right)\pi. \tag{10.32}$$

The brane $(\widehat{\mathcal{V}}, \widehat{Q}, \widehat{\rho}, \widehat{R})$ defines a semi-infinite complex $(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}, \widehat{Q})$ of vector bundles over M which is bounded from the left but unbounded to the right. It is exact at large enough degrees and hence is quasi-isomorphic to a finite complex. This follows from the property of the Knörrer map, but also can be shown algebraically. Indeed, if we relax the condition on the range of the sum in (10.30), for example, if we include the sum over negative m_1 as well, then we have an exact complex of modules over the complete intersection ring $B = \mathbf{C}[x_1, \ldots, x_N]/(G_1, \ldots, G_l)$. To see that, just regard B as the hypersurface ring of $A = \mathbf{C}[x_1, \ldots, x_N]/(G_2, \ldots, G_l)$ and apply Eisenbud's proof to the matrix factorization of $G_1(x)$ over the ring A. In particular, we have various other versions of $(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}, \widehat{Q})$ corresponding to various different ranges of the sum (10.30). As an example, consider the sum where all m_i's run over negative integers. From this, with shift by l to the right, we obtain a left semi-infinite complex that is quasi-isomorphic to $(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}, \widehat{Q})$.

10.3.2 $D(M) \longrightarrow MF_W(X)$

We now construct the inverse map. The key is to consider the opposite identification in the Knörrer map, $U = G$, $V = P$. Setting $p = 0$ is straightforward, but extracting power series of G from a given matrix factorization is hardly practical. This motivates us to reformulate the Knörrer map.

Reformulation Of The Knörrer Map

The reformulation is best described using the language of rings and modules that we introduced in Section 9. Let us first describe the original formulation of the Knörrer map in that language.

A matrix factorization $(\mathcal{V}, Q)$ of the superpotential $W = W_L(x) + uv$ can be regarded as the pair (M, Q) where M is a $\mathbf{Z}_2$-graded free module over the polynomial ring $\mathcal{R} = \mathbf{C}[x_1, ..., x_n, u, v]$ and Q is an odd endomorphism of M that squares to the multiplication map by W. Setting $v = 0$ corresponds to replacing M by the module $M/v = M \otimes_{\mathcal{R}} (\mathcal{R}/(v))$ over the ring $\mathcal{R}/(v)$ which is isomorphic to

$$A = \mathbf{C}[x_1, \ldots, x_n, u].$$

The Knörrer map image $(\widehat{M}, \widehat{Q})$ is then obtained by regarding M/v as a module over the ring $B = \mathbf{C}[x_1, ..., x_n]$ which does not include the variable u. If M has rank r over $\mathcal{R}$, then $\widehat{M}$ has infinite rank, $\widehat{M} = B^{\oplus r} \oplus uB^{\oplus r} \oplus u^2 B^{\oplus r} \oplus \cdots$. As we have seen, this infinite-size matrix factorization is isomorphic to a finite one, which we denote by (M_L, Q_L).

Now let us describe the new formulation. The key step is to view B as the quotient of A by the ideal (u),

$$B = A/(u),$$

and to *regard the B-module M_L as an A-module* by the rule $a \cdot m := [a]m$, for $a \in A$ and $[a] \in B$. We denote the result by $i_*(M_L, Q_L)$. It is a matrix factorization of $W_L(x)$ over A. By itself, $i_* M_L$ is not a free A-module but one can find its free resolution, using the canonical resolution of $B = A/(u)$,

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{u\times} A \longrightarrow B \longrightarrow 0.$$

Namely, we replace each B in $M_L \cong B^{\oplus s}$ by $A \oplus A$ and add the map $A \xrightarrow{u\times} A$ to Q_L. In other words, we take the graded tensor product $\mathcal{V}_L \otimes_{\mathbf{C}} (\mathbf{C}|0\rangle \oplus \mathbf{C}\overline{\eta}|0\rangle)$ and consider the sum $Q_L + u\eta$. This free resolution is nothing but $(M/(v), Q|_{v=0})$, if Q is obtained from Q_L in the way described in Section 3.4. In general, Q is of such a form up to the trivial matrix factorizations $(1, W)$, $(W, 1)$, and the trivial pieces are certainly trivial even after setting $v = 0$. Thus, we find

$$(M/(v), Q|_{v=0}) \cong \text{free resolution of } i_*(M_L, Q_L). \tag{10.33}$$

This is the property that the low energy brane (M_L, Q_L) must have. This can be used to find the inverse map: given a matrix factorization (M_L, Q_L) of $W_L(x)$ over the ring B, we push it forward by i_* to a matrix factorization over the ring A, and then take its free resolution. The final step is to recover the variable v.

Hypersurface In Projective Space

Let us apply the above reformulation to Example (A). With the identification $u = G(x)$ and $v = p$, the rings that appear are $\mathcal{R} = \mathbf{C}[x_1, \ldots, x_N, p]$,

$$A = \mathbf{C}[x_1, \ldots, x_N], \quad \text{and}$$
$$B = \mathbf{C}[x_1, \ldots, x_N]/G(x).$$

Of course, everything is graded with respect to the gauge charge, and we also work in the large volume phase $r \gg 0$ where the locus $\{x_1 = \cdots = x_N = 0\}$ is deleted. Namely

instead of graded A-modules (*resp.* B-modules) we consider coherent sheaves over the projective space $\mathbf{CP}^{N-1}$ (*resp.* the hypersurface $\{G(x)=0\}$). In this context, the map i_* sending B-modules to A-modules becomes the pushforward of sheaves by the embedding $i:\{G(x)=0\}\hookrightarrow \mathbf{CP}^{N-1}$. Let $(\mathcal{E}_L, Q_L)$ be a bounded complex of coherent sheaves over the hypersurface $M=\{G=0\}$. The first step is to push it forward to $\mathbf{CP}^{N-1}$ and take its free resolution. At this stage, we have a bounded complex of vector bundles over $\mathbf{CP}^{N-1}$ of the form

$$\mathcal{C}: \qquad 0\to\cdots\longrightarrow \bigoplus_{i=1}^{b_{j-1}}\mathcal{O}(q_{i,j-1})\longrightarrow \bigoplus_{i=1}^{b_j}\mathcal{O}(q_{i,j})\longrightarrow \bigoplus_{i=1}^{b_{j+1}}\mathcal{O}(q_{i,j+1})\longrightarrow\cdots\to 0$$

This determines the data $(\mathcal{V}, Q_0, \rho, R)$ where Q_0 is a matrix polynomial of $x_1,...,x_N$ obeying

$$Q_0(x)^2=0.$$

Of course, Q_0 is gauge invariant and has R-charge 1 with respect to the representation (ρ,R) of the gauge and R-symmetry group. The final step is to recover the variable p, that is, to find the extension of $Q_0(x)$ to a matrix factorization of $pG(x)$,

$$Q(p,x)=Q_0(x)+pQ_1(x)+p^2Q_2(x)+\cdots,$$

which is gauge invariant and has R-charge 1. The condition $Q(p,x)^2=pG(x)\cdot \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{V}}$ can be decomposed into a set of equations

$$\{Q_0,Q_1\}=G\cdot \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{V}}, \tag{10.34}$$

$$\{Q_0,Q_n\}=-\frac{1}{2}\sum_{\substack{l+k=n\\ l,k\geq 1}} Q_lQ_k, \qquad n\geq 2. \tag{10.35}$$

The (gauge,R)-charge of $Q_m(x)$ must be $(Nm, 1-2m)$. We shall find such Q_m's recursively, starting with Q_1. Multiplication by $G(x)$ defines a cochain map $\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{C}(N)$. Since $\mathcal{C}$ is a resolution of the complex $i_*(\mathcal{E}_L,Q_L)$ supported at $G(x)=0$, this map has to be null homotopic. This shows that there is a map $Q_1:\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{C}(N)$ of degree -1 such that $\{Q_0,Q_1\}$ equals the $G(x)$-multiplication. Thus, we found $Q_1(x)$ of charge $(N,-1)$ obeying (10.34). The rest of $Q_l(x)$ are found by induction. Suppose that we found $Q_2,...,Q_{m-1}$ that solves (10.35) for all n below m. Then

$$[Q_0,\sum_{\substack{l+k=m\\ l,k\geq 1}}\{Q_l,Q_k\}]=\sum_{\substack{l+k=m\\ l,k\geq 1}}\Big([\{Q_0,Q_l\},Q_k]-[Q_l,\{Q_0,Q_k\}]\Big)=0$$

This means that $\sum\{Q_l,Q_k\}:\mathcal{C}\to\mathcal{C}(Nm)$ is a cochain map. The degree of this map is $2-2m$ which is negative. Since the Ext group $\mathrm{Ext}^j(\mathcal{C},\mathcal{C})$ is zero for any negative degree

j, the cochain map $\sum\{Q_l, Q_k\}$ has to be null-homotopic. This shows the existence of a degree $1-2m$ map $Q_m : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}(Nm)$ that satisfies (10.35) for $n = m$.

In this way we obtain the data $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$ of a brane in the linear sigma model. Obviously, this is the one that must descend to the complex $(\mathcal{E}_L, Q_L)$ that we started with. There is one subtlety though, concerning the value of the theta parameter and the overall shift of R-charge. The theta parameter must be related to the B-field of the low energy sigma model by

$$\theta = B + N\pi. \tag{10.36}$$

The choice of R-symmetry is a matter of convention. However, if we want to be consistent with the one in (10.23) that was used in the map $MF_W(X) \to D(M)$, we need to replace $R(\lambda)$ by

$$R(\lambda) \to R(\lambda)\lambda. \tag{10.37}$$

To see this, let us come back to the derivation of the Knörrer map and its reformulation. The lift of a low energy brane $(\mathcal{V}_L, Q_L)$ to the high energy theory is given by $\mathcal{V} = \mathcal{V}_L \otimes (\mathbf{C}|0\rangle \oplus \mathbf{C}\overline{\eta}|0\rangle)$ and $Q = Q_L + u\eta + v\overline{\eta}$. In the discussion of the map $MF_W(X) \to D(M)$ we used the identification $u = p, v = G$, while we used $u = G, v = p$ for the inverse map $D(M) \to MF_W(X)$. However, to compare the two stories, it is better to use a common framework. We can actually use $u = p, v = G$ also in the discussion of the inverse map — we just have to change the notation as $\eta = \overline{\eta}', \overline{\eta} = \eta', |0\rangle = \overline{\eta}'|0\rangle'$. The charge assignment for $|0\rangle, \overline{\eta}|0\rangle$ was $(q, R) = (-\frac{N}{2}, 0), (\frac{N}{2}, 1)$. The gauge charge is canonical but the R-charge is a choice. This choice is the one corresponding to (10.23). Thus, in the inverse map, we must use

vector	$\|0\rangle'$	$\overline{\eta}'\|0\rangle'$
(q, R)	$(\frac{N}{2}, 1)$	$(-\frac{N}{2}, 0)$

In view of this charge assignment, the free resolution of $B = A/(v)$ must be

$$v\eta' : A(-\tfrac{N}{2})_0 \longrightarrow A(\tfrac{N}{2})_1,$$

instead of the standard one $A(-N)_{-1} \longrightarrow A(0)_0$ which was used above in obtaining (ρ, R). Thus, we must shift the charges as

$$(q_i, R_i) \to (q_i + \tfrac{N}{2}, R_i + 1). \tag{10.38}$$

The shift of the R-charge is nothing but (10.37). The shift of the gauge charge can be traded for the shift of the B-field $B \to B + N\pi$ which gives (10.36).

As an example we consider D-branes on the Fermat type elliptic curve, $M = \{G(x) = x_1^3 + x_2^3 + x_3^3 = 0\} \subset \mathbf{CP}^2$. We first consider the D2-brane with trivial gauge field, the

structure sheaf $\mathcal{O}$ of the curve, with some value $B_* \in \mathbf{R}$ of the B-field. Its pushforward to $\mathbf{CP}^2$ is the sheaf $\mathcal{O}_M$ supported at $M \subset \mathbf{CP}^2$, and its free resolution is given by $\mathcal{C} : \mathcal{O}(-3) \xrightarrow{G} \underline{\mathcal{O}(0)}$. It is easy to find its lift to the linear sigma model:

$$\left(\mathcal{W}(-3)_0 \underset{p}{\overset{G}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{W}(0)_1 \right), \qquad \theta = B_* + 3\pi.$$

If we apply the map $MF_W(X) \to D(M)$ to this brane, we obtain the complex on the curve M,

$$\mathcal{O}(-3)_0 \xrightarrow{0} \mathcal{O}(0)_1 \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} \mathcal{O}(0)_2 \xrightarrow{0} \mathcal{O}(3)_3 \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} \mathcal{O}(3)_4 \xrightarrow{0} \cdots, \qquad B = B_* + 6\pi.$$

This is quasi-isomorphic to $\mathcal{O}(-3)$ with $B = B_* + 6\pi$ and that is indeed equivalent to $\mathcal{O}(0)$ with the original value $B = B_*$ of the B-field, the brane we started with. A more elaborate example is the D0-brane at the point $\mathfrak{p} = \{x_1 + x_2 = x_3 = 0\}$, the skyscraper sheaf $\mathcal{O}_\mathfrak{p}$ on M. A free resolution of its pushforward $i_*\mathcal{O}_\mathfrak{p}$ to $\mathbf{CP}^2$ is given by

$$\mathcal{O}(q-1) \xrightarrow{\binom{-x_3}{x_1+x_2}} \mathcal{O}(q)^2 \xrightarrow{(x_1+x_2, x_3)} \underline{\mathcal{O}(q+1)}$$

for any $q \in \mathbf{Z}$. This readily lifts to the matrix factorization

$$\mathfrak{B}_p : \quad \left(\mathcal{W}(q)_0^{\oplus 2} \underset{f}{\overset{g}{\rightleftarrows}} \begin{array}{c} \mathcal{W}(q+1)_1 \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(q-1)_{-1} \end{array} \right), \qquad \theta \equiv B_* + 3\pi,$$

with

$$g = \begin{pmatrix} x_1+x_2 & x_3 \\ -px_3^2 & p(x_1^2 - x_1x_2 + x_2^2) \end{pmatrix}, \quad f = \begin{pmatrix} p(x_1^2 - x_1x_2 + x_2^2) & -x_3 \\ px_3^2 & x_1+x_2 \end{pmatrix}. \qquad (10.39)$$

Complete Intersection Of Hypersurfaces In A Toric Variety

The above construction extends straightforwardly to the case of a complete intersection M of hypersurfaces in a toric variety: Given a complex of sheaves on M, push it forward to the ambient toric variety, and then take its free resolution. This defines a data $(\mathcal{V}, Q_0, \rho, R)$ such that $Q_0^2 = 0$. The step to find its extension to a matrix factorization

$$Q = \sum_{n_1,\ldots,n_l \geq 0} p_1^{n_1} \cdots p_l^{n_l} Q_{\vec{n}}(x)$$

of $\sum_{\beta=1}^{l} p_\beta G_\beta(x)$ is a line by line generalization of the case of projective hypersyrface. The shift of the theta parameter is opposite to (10.32):

$$\theta^a = B^a + \left(\sum_{\beta=1}^{l} d_\beta^a\right)\pi.$$

In order to be consistent with the map $MF_W(X) \to D(M)$ given earlier, we also need to shift the R-charge by l.

At this point, we would like to acknowledge the work by Avramov and Buchweitz [93] on the relation between matrix factorizations and modules on hypersurface rings, which follows earlier works by Shamash [94] and Eisenbud [11]. Later, in [95] their results were turned into computer algorithms. In the following we compare our formulations of the Knörrer map to the latter reference.

In the terminology adapted to the current context, (i) they constructed a matrix factorization $(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$ from a given module over the complete intersection ring $B = \mathbf{C}[x_1, ..., x_N]/(G_1, ..., G_l)$, (ii) constructed the left semi-infinite complex of graded free B-modules corresponding to that matrix factorization, and (iii) proved that that semi-infinite complex is quasi-isomorphic to the original B-module. The construction of the inverse map $D(M) \to MF_W(X)$ presented here is inspired from their work. Especially the reconstruction of $Q(p, x)$ from $Q_0(x)$ is a copy of their proof for the part (i). On the other hand, we constructed the map $MF_W(X) \to D(M)$, corresponding to their part (ii), using a completely different method, and that was done when we were not aware of their work. Finally, we hope that it is clear that we have given an independent derivation of their isomorphism (iii) which is physically transparent — the original B-module and the semi-infinite complex are simply two different ways to describe the low energy behaviour of the same brane in the linear sigma model.

10.4 CY/LG Correspondence — More Examples

Combining the brane transportation rule described in Section 10.1 with the reduction and lift maps found in Sections 10.2 and 10.3, we obtain a very explicit map between D-branes of a LG orbifold point and those in a large volume phase. Given a brane in the initial phase, we lift it to the linear sigma model and find its grade or band restricted representative with respect to the chosen path in the Kähler moduli space. After transportation through phase boundaries, we reduce it to the low energy theory in the final phase.

For example, let us consider D-brane transport in Example (A) with Fermat-cubic polynomial $G = x_1^3 + x_2^3 + x_3^3$, along a path in the Kähler moduli space through the window $-\pi < \theta < \pi$ which corresponds to the grade restriction rule $\{-1, 0, 1\}$. Take the Recknagel-Schomerus brane $\mathcal{B}_{(0,0,0),2,1}$ at the orbifold theory. We have seen in Section 10.2 that it lifts to the brane $\mathfrak{B}_0$ given in (10.5) which is already grade restricted. In the large volume phase, we have seen that this reduces to $\mathcal{O}(-1)[1]$. Thus the transportation gives

$$\mathcal{B}_{(0,0,0),2,1} \in MF_{\mathbf{Z}_3}(G) \longmapsto \mathcal{O}(-1)[1] \in D(M).$$

As another example, let us consider the D0-brane on the elliptic curve M at the point $\mathfrak{p}$ given by $x_1 + x_2 = 0, x_3 = 0$. It is given by the skyscraper sheaf $\mathcal{O}_\mathfrak{p}$ of M and lifts to the brane $\mathfrak{B}_\mathfrak{p}$ given in (10.39) with any value of q. The one with $q = 0$ is grade restricted and can be transported to the LG phase. By reduction, we find the brane at the LG orbifold point. This process gives

$$\mathcal{O}_\mathfrak{p} \in D(M) \longmapsto \left(\mathcal{O}(\overline{0})_0^{\oplus 2} \underset{f}{\overset{g}{\rightleftarrows}} \begin{matrix} \mathcal{O}(\overline{1})_{\frac{1}{3}} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{O}(\overline{2})_{-\frac{1}{3}} \end{matrix} \right) \in MF_{\mathbf{Z}_3}(G)$$

where g and f are obtained by setting $p = 1$ in (10.39).

In what follows, we consider more examples of D-brane transport.

10.4.1 Fermat Quintic

We first consider the Fermat quintic

$$G(x_1, ..., x_5) = x_1^5 + x_2^5 + x_3^5 + x_4^5 + x_5^5.$$

We will find the large volume image of the RS-branes with $\mathbf{L} = (0, 0, 0, 0, 0)$ and of a class of permutation branes at the LG orbifold point, as well as the LG image of the D4-brane wrapped on a divisor of the quintic. Throughout, we consider the paths through the window $w : -5\pi < \theta < -3\pi$ with the grade restriction rule $\mathfrak{C}^w = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$.

$\mathbf{L} = 0^5$ *RS-Branes*

We first consider the Recknagel-Schomerus branes $\mathcal{B}_{\mathbf{L},q,r}$ with $\mathbf{L} = (0, 0, 0, 0, 0)$:

$$\overline{Q}_{0^5} = \sum_{i=1}^{5} \Big(x_i \eta_i + x_i^4 \overline{\eta}_i \Big)$$

represented on the Clifford module $\mathcal{V}_5$. Recall from Section 2.4.1 that the labels q and r specify the representations of the orbifold group and the R-symmetry group. In particular the R-charge of the vector $|0\rangle$ is

$$\overline{R}_{|0\rangle} = -\frac{q}{5} + r.$$

We will only look at those with $r = 0$, as the others can be recovered by overall shifts of the R-degree. The vector $|0\rangle$ is even for this choice.

We first consider the brane $\mathcal{B}_{0^5,0,0}$ for which $\overline{R}_{|0\rangle} = 0$. The R-charges of the other basis elements of $\mathcal{V}_5$ can be found by noting that the $\overline{\eta}_i$'s have R-charge $-\frac{3}{5}$:

vector	$\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_i\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_i\overline{\eta}_j\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_i\overline{\eta}_j\overline{\eta}_k\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_i\overline{\eta}_j\overline{\eta}_k\overline{\eta}_l\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_1\cdots\overline{\eta}_5\|0\rangle$
$\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}}$	0	$-\frac{3}{5}$	$-\frac{6}{5}$	$-\frac{9}{5}$	$-\frac{12}{5}$	-3

The first step is to lift it to a grade restricted brane in the linear sigma model. This is done by solving the equation (10.14), that is,

$$\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}} = R_{\mathbf{i}} - 2q_{\mathbf{i}}/5$$

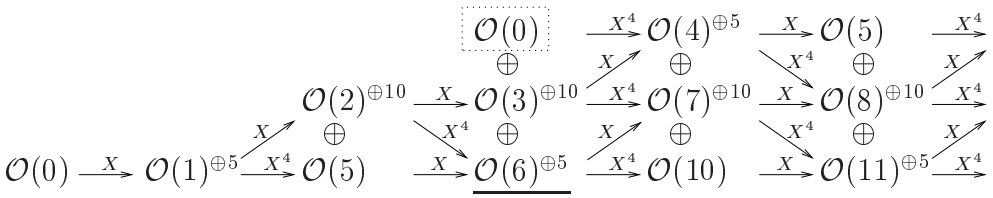
where $R_{\mathbf{i}}$ is an even (odd) integer for an even (odd) Chan-Paton vector and $q_{\mathbf{i}}$ must be taken from the grade restriction range $\mathfrak{C}^w = \{0,1,2,3,4\}$. For the even vector $|0\rangle$ with $\overline{R} = 0$ the equation is solved by $R = 0$ and $q = 0$. This corresponds to the Wilson line brane $\mathcal{W}(0)_0$. For the odd vectors $\overline{\eta}_i|0\rangle$ with $\overline{R} = -3/5$, the solution must have odd R and is given by $R = 1$, $q = 4$, which yields $\mathcal{W}(4)_1$. Since we have five elements $\overline{\eta}_1|0\rangle$, ..., $\overline{\eta}_5|0\rangle$, we have the sum of five copies $\mathcal{W}(4)_1^{\oplus 5}$. The solutions for all the basis vectors of $\mathcal{V}_5$ are listed in the following table:

vector	$\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_i\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_i\overline{\eta}_j\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_i\overline{\eta}_j\overline{\eta}_k\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_i\overline{\eta}_j\overline{\eta}_k\overline{\eta}_l\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_1\cdots\overline{\eta}_5\|0\rangle$
$R_{\mathbf{i}}$	0	1	0	-1	-2	-3
$q_{\mathbf{i}}$	0	4	3	2	1	0
	$\mathcal{W}(0)_0$	$\mathcal{W}(4)_1^{\oplus 5}$	$\mathcal{W}(3)_0^{\oplus 10}$	$\mathcal{W}(2)_{-1}^{\oplus 10}$	$\mathcal{W}(1)_{-2}^{\oplus 5}$	$\mathcal{W}(0)_{-3}$

The variable p can be included to $\overline{Q}_{0^5}$ simply by multiplying each entry by the right power of p so that the degrees $R_{\mathbf{i}}, q_{\mathbf{i}}$ match. For example, the map $x_i^4\overline{\eta}_i$ sending $\mathcal{W}(0)_0$ to $\mathcal{W}(4)_1^{\oplus 5}$ needs no power of p while the map $x_i^4\overline{\eta}_i$ sending $\mathcal{W}(4)_1^{\oplus 5}$ to $\mathcal{W}(3)_0^{\oplus 10}$ needs to be multiplied by a single power of p. In this way, we find the matrix factorization $Q(p,x)$ of $pG(x)$. This completes the construction of grade restricted lift $(\mathcal{V}_5, Q, \rho, R)$ of the brane $\mathcal{B}_{0^5,0,0}$.

The next step is to reduce $(\mathcal{V}_5, Q, \rho, R)$ down to the low energy theory in the large volume phase, applying the map $MF_W(X) \to D(M)$ in Section 10.3.1: We first write the

Wilson line branes in the above table in the order of the R-charges $R_{\mathbf{i}}$ and then write its copies successively, shifting the position by 2 and the gauge degree q by 5 at each step. The arrows are determined by $Q(p,x)$ but they can also be read directly from the original matrix factroization $\overline{Q}_{0^5}$ with the aid of the gauge degree information. This yields the following semi-infinite complex over the quintic hypersurface M

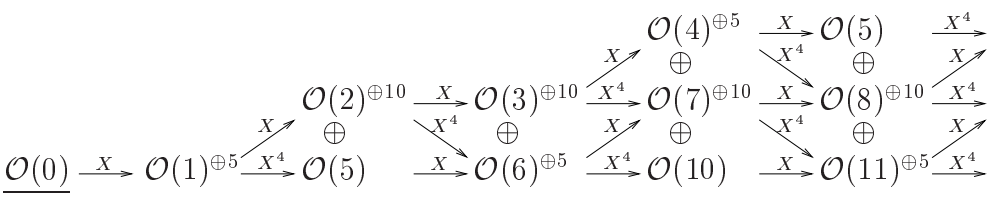


This complex $\mathcal{C} = (\widehat{\mathcal{E}}, \widehat{Q})$ is the large volume image of the RS-brane $\mathcal{B}_{0^5,0,0}$. As always, the 2-periodic part is exact and we can take out a finite length complex of coherent sheaves. One way is to replace the infinite part of non-negative R-degrees by the kernel sheaf of the map $\mathcal{E}^0 \to \mathcal{E}^1$. However, in the present case there is a simpler complex that is quasi-isomorphic to $\mathcal{C}$.

To see this, let us digress for a moment to study the following brane $\mathfrak{B}_1$ in the linear sigma model:

$$Q_1 = \sum_{i=1}^{5} \Big(x_i \eta_i + p x_i^4 \overline{\eta}_i \Big)$$

We assign, say, charge $(q,R) = (5,5)$ to the Clifford vacuum $|0\rangle$, so that the other vectors $\overline{\eta}_i|0\rangle$, $\overline{\eta}_i\overline{\eta}_j|0\rangle$, ..., $\overline{\eta}_1 \cdots \overline{\eta}_5|0\rangle$ have charges $(4,4)$, $(3,3)$, ..., $(0,0)$ respectively. Note that the boundary potential $\{Q_1, Q_1^\dagger\} = \sum_{i=1}^5 (|x_i|^2 + |px_i^4|^2)$ is positive everywhere in the large volume phase where $\{x_1 = \cdots = x_5 = 0\}$ is deleted. Thus, we know that this brane is empty at low energies. It is the analog of the brane $\mathfrak{B}_+$ in the model for the Fermat cubic curve. Applying the reduction map $MF_W(X) \to D(M)$, we obtain the following complex



One can check either by computing the potential $\{\widehat{Q}_1, \widehat{Q}_1^\dagger\}$ or algebraically that it is exact and hence trivial at low energies, as expected. We denote this complex by $\mathcal{K}$.

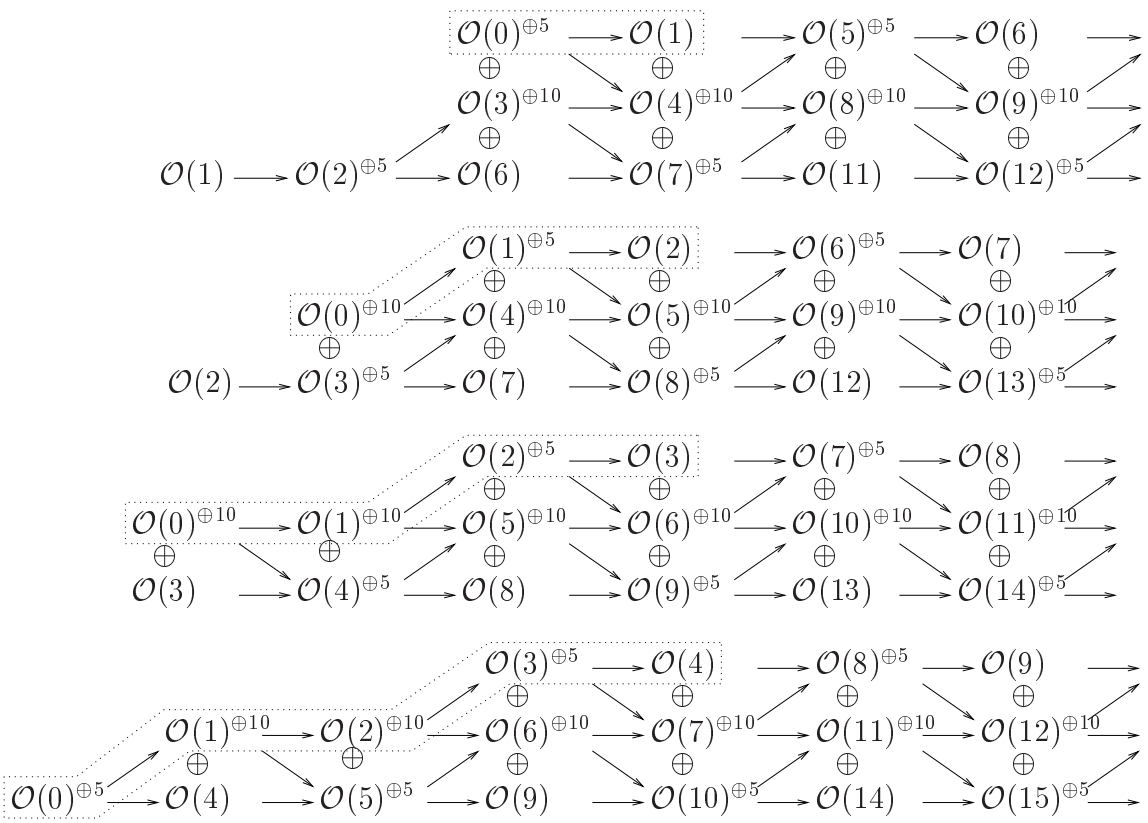
Let us come back to the complex $\mathcal{C}$. If we omit $\mathcal{O}(0)$ inside the box of dashed lines, the remaning part is nothing but the complex $\mathcal{K}$ shifted to the left by 3. Since the

latter is empty, we are simply left with $\mathcal{O}(0)$ in that box. In other words, we have the quasi-isomorphism relation

$$\mathcal{C} = \mathrm{Cone}(\mathcal{O}(0)[-1] \longrightarrow \mathcal{K}[3]) \;\cong\; \mathcal{O}(0)[0].$$

Thus, the large volume image of the brane $\mathcal{B}_{0^5,0,0}$ is the structure sheaf $\mathcal{O}$ of the quintic hypersurface, that is, the D6-brane with trivial gauge bundle on it.

The large volume images of the other $\mathbf{L} = 0^5$ RS-branes $\mathcal{B}_{0^5,q,0}$ can be found in a similar way. The semi-infinite complexes that we obtain for $q = 1, 2, 3, 4$ are respectively



We see that they are the same as the exact complexes $\mathcal{K}(q)[3]$ for $q = 1, 2, 3, 4$, if we ignore the finite parts in the dashed box. Thus, only the latter

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{O}(0)^{\oplus 5} &\xrightarrow{X} \underline{\mathcal{O}(1)},\\
\mathcal{O}(0)^{\oplus 10} &\xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus 5} \xrightarrow{X} \underline{\mathcal{O}(2)},\\
\mathcal{O}(0)^{\oplus 10} &\xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus 10} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(2)^{\oplus 5} \xrightarrow{X} \underline{\mathcal{O}(3)},\\
\mathcal{O}(0)^{\oplus 5} &\xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus 10} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(2)^{\oplus 10} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(3)^{\oplus 5} \xrightarrow{X} \underline{\mathcal{O}(4)},
\end{aligned}$$

remain. We further notice that they are quasi-isomorphic to the sheaves of sections of the vector bundles $\wedge^q(T^*_{\mathbf{P}^4}(1))$ of the ambient space $\mathbf{CP}^4$, at R-degree $-q$, which are restricted to the hypersurface M. Thus, the large volume images of the $\mathbf{L} = 0^5$ Recknagel-Schomerus branes are:

$$\mathcal{B}_{0^5,q,0} \longmapsto \Omega^q_{\mathbf{P}^4}(q)[q]\Big|_M, \qquad \text{for } \; q = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4. \tag{10.40}$$

The value of the B-field is related to the theta parameter by

$$B = \theta + 5\pi.$$

In particular, it is in the domain $0 < B < 2\pi$ for the chosen window.

We notice that the images (10.40) are very similar to the results (8.27) of the transport of the fractional branes $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\bar{q})$ in the non-compact version of the theory. This observation leads us to an alternative way to derive the same result. We first notice that the grade restricted lift of the RS-brane $\mathcal{B}_{0^5,q,0}$ is the same as the grade restricted lift $\mathfrak{B}'_{\bar{q}}$ of the fractional brane $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\bar{q})$ shown in (8.25), except that we need to add the oppositely oriented arrows, either X^4 or pX^4. We next recall that $\mathfrak{B}'_{\bar{q}}$ is presented as the bound state of the X-Koszul complex $\mathfrak{B}_{\bar{q}}$ and another complex $\mathfrak{B}''_{\bar{q}}$. It is straightforward to find the matrix factorization version of this bound state. It is a bound state of the matrix factorization $\mathfrak{B}_1$, obtained from the X-Koszul complex $\mathfrak{B}_{\bar{q}}$ by adding the opposite arrows pX^4, and the matrix factorization $\mathfrak{B}''_{0^5,q,0}$ given by

$$\mathfrak{A}_q(5)[-1] \underset{G}{\overset{p}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathfrak{A}_q.$$

Here $\mathfrak{A}_q$ is the complex defined in (8.26). Since the brane $\mathfrak{B}_1$ is trivial in the large volume regime, we can simply take the brane $\mathfrak{B}''_{0^5,q,0}$ as a lift of the large volume image of the RS-brane. At this stage, we apply the second formulation of the Knörrer map: Set $p = 0$ and ask if that is presented as the pushforward of some complex over the quintic hypersurface $G = 0$. And yes it is! It is the pushforward of the complex associated with $\mathfrak{A}_q(5)[-1]$:

$$\mathcal{O}(5)^{\oplus\binom{5}{q}}_{-q+1} \xrightarrow{X} \cdots \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(q+4)^{\oplus 5}_0 \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(q+5)_1$$

Applying the R-charge shift (10.38) (backwards of course) and trading the difference in the B-field shifts, (10.24) versus (10.36), for a charge shift, we have

$$\mathcal{O}(0)^{\oplus\binom{5}{q}}_{-q} \xrightarrow{X} \cdots \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(q-1)^{\oplus 5}_{-1} \xrightarrow{X} \mathcal{O}(q)_0.$$

This is precisely the result obtained above.

The pattern (10.40) was conjected in [1] based on the analysis of R-R charge and using mirror symmetry. We have given a proof of the conjecture.

Other RS-Branes

We do not explicitly write down the large volume images of RS-branes for other $\mathbf{L}$'s, since it is very straightforward. However, we do indicate a way to extract a finite piece from the semi-infinite complex. Analogously to $\mathfrak{B}_+$ for the elliptic curve and to $\mathfrak{B}_1$ for the $\mathbf{L} = 0^5$ RS-branes, we consider the brane $\mathfrak{B}^{\rm triv}_{\mathbf{L}}$ given by

$$Q^{\rm triv}_{\mathbf{L}} = \sum_{i=1}^{5} \Big(x_i^{L_i+1} \eta_i + p x_i^{4-L_i} \overline{\eta}_i \Big)$$

with any consistent choice of gauge and R-charge of Chan-Paton vectors. The potential

$$\{Q^{\rm triv}_{\mathbf{L}}, Q^{\rm triv\dagger}_{\mathbf{L}}\} = \sum_{i=1}^{5} \Big(|x_i|^{2(L_i+1)} + |p|^2 |x_i|^{2(4-L_i)} \Big)$$

is everywhere positive in the large volume phase. Therefore, the semi-infinite complex $\mathcal{K}_{\mathbf{L}}$ obtained from this brane must be exact. The large volume image of a general RS-brane $\mathcal{B}_{\mathbf{L},q,r}$ is first given by a semi-infinite complex, and this is presented as a bound state of a finite length complex $\mathcal{F}_{\mathbf{L},q,r}$ and the exact complex $\mathcal{K}_{\mathbf{L}}$ possibly with some shifts in gauge and R-degrees. Thus, one can extract the finite piece $\mathcal{F}_{\mathbf{L},q,r}$ as the large volume image of the RS-brane. Since it is a complex of sums of line bundles $\mathcal{O}(q)$, we have proved that the large volume images of the RS-branes are always restriction of finite complexes of vector bundles of the ambient space $\mathbf{CP}^4$.

Permutation Branes

Next we consider some examples of permutation branes of the Gepner model [96] which were recently studied in terms of matrix factorizations in [97, 98]. Take the following matrix factorization of $W = G(x)$;

$$\overline{Q} = \sum_{i=1}^{3} \Big(a_i \eta_i + b_i \bar{\eta}_i \Big),$$

which is represented on the Clifford module $\mathcal{V}_3$, where

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= x_1 + x_2, \quad b_1 = x_1^4 - x_1 x_2^3 + x_1^2 x_2^2 - x_1 x_2^3 + x_2^4, \\ a_2 &= x_3 + x_4, \quad b_2 = x_3^4 - x_3 x_4^3 + x_3^2 x_4^2 - x_3 x_4^3 + x_4^4, \\ a_3 &= x_5, \quad b_3 = x_5^4. \end{aligned}$$

The brane at the Landau-Ginzburg orbifold point is specified by the orbifold action and the R-charge of the Clifford vacuum $|0\rangle$. Let $\mathcal{P}_{q,r}$ be the brane such that $\rho(\omega)|0\rangle = \omega^q |0\rangle$

and $\overline{R}_{|0\rangle} = -2q/5 + r$. Let us start with the brane $\mathcal{P}_{0,0}$. The R-charges $\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}}$ of all the Chan-Paton vectors in the Landau-Ginzburg model as well as their grade restricted lifts in the linear sigma model are listed in the following table:

vector	$\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_i\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_i\overline{\eta}_j\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_1\overline{\eta}_2\overline{\eta}_3\|0\rangle$
$\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}}$	0	$-\frac{3}{5}$	$-\frac{6}{5}$	$-\frac{9}{5}$
$R_{\mathbf{i}}$	0	1	0	-1
$q_{\mathbf{i}}$	0	4	3	2
	$\mathcal{W}(0)_0$	$\mathcal{W}(4)_1^{\oplus 3}$	$\mathcal{W}(3)_0^{\oplus 3}$	$\mathcal{W}(2)_{-1}$

More explicitly, the grade restricted lift is given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{W}(0)_0 & \underset{pa}{\overset{b}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(4)_1^{\oplus 3} \\ \oplus & \overset{pb}{\underset{a}{\nearrow\!\!\swarrow}} & \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(3)_0^{\oplus 3} & \underset{a}{\overset{pb}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(2)_{-1} \end{pmatrix},$$

where a and b correspond to $\sum_i a_i\eta_i$ and $\sum_i b_i\overline{\eta}_i$. Let us apply the reduction map to this brane in the large volume phase. This time, we take the left semi-infinite version:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & \overset{b}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-6)^{\oplus 3} & \overset{a}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-5) & \overset{b}{\to} & \underline{\mathcal{O}(-1)^{\oplus 3}} \\ \cdots & \overset{a}{\nearrow} & \oplus & \overset{b}{\searrow} & \oplus & \overset{a}{\nearrow} & \\ & \overset{b}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-3) & \overset{a}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-2)^{\oplus 3} & & \end{array}. \tag{10.41}$$

This is the large volume image of the permutation brane $\mathcal{P}_{0,0}$. The two-periodic part is exact and thus we can cut off the degree ≤ -2 parts and replace the degree -1 component by the cokernel of the map from the degree -2 component. This is one way to find a finite complex of coherent sheaves. Alternatively, we may try to proceed as in the RS-branes: Take the matrix factorization $Q = \sum_i (a_i\eta_i + pb_i\overline{\eta}_i)$ and compare its geometric image $\mathcal{K}$ with (10.41). This time, however, the potential for Q is $\{Q, Q^\dagger\} = \sum_i |a_i|^2$ for $p = 0$ and fails to be positive everywhere. As a consequence the complex $\mathcal{K}$ fails to be exact. But the potential is positive except at $a_1 = a_2 = a_3 = 0$, which is a rational curve D on the quintic M. Accordingly, the complex $\mathcal{K}$ can be made exact by adjoining the sheaf $\mathcal{O}_D$ supported at D. In this way we obtain the following exact complex

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc} & \overset{b}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-6)^{\oplus 3} & \overset{a}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-5) & \overset{b}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-1)^{\oplus 3} & \overset{a}{\to} & \mathcal{O} & \overset{q}{\to} & \mathcal{O}_D \\ \cdots & \overset{a}{\nearrow} & \oplus & \overset{b}{\searrow} & \oplus & \overset{a}{\nearrow} & & & & & \\ & \overset{b}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-3) & \overset{a}{\to} & \mathcal{O}(-2)^{\oplus 3} & & & & & & \end{array}$$

Here q is the restriction map to D. We see that the complex (10.41) sits inside it. In particular, there is a quasi-isomorphism of (10.41) to the complex $\underline{\mathcal{O}} \overset{q}{\to} \mathcal{O}_D$, mapping the

right-most $\mathcal{O}(-1)^{\oplus 3}$ to $\mathcal{O}$ by a. Thus, we can take $\underline{\mathcal{O}} \xrightarrow{q} \mathcal{O}_D$ as the large volume image of $\mathcal{P}_{0,0}$.

Repeating this procedure, we find the following simple images of the permutation branes $\mathcal{P}_{q,0}$ for $q = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{P}_{0,0} &\longmapsto \left(\underline{\mathcal{O}} \xrightarrow{q} \mathcal{O}_D\right) \\
\mathcal{P}_{1,0} &\longmapsto \left(\mathcal{O}^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{a} \underline{\mathcal{O}(1)} \xrightarrow{q} \mathcal{O}_D(1)\right) \\
\mathcal{P}_{2,0} &\longmapsto \left(\mathcal{O}^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{a} \mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus 3} \xrightarrow{a} \underline{\mathcal{O}(2)} \xrightarrow{q} \mathcal{O}_D(2)\right) \\
\mathcal{P}_{3,0} &\longmapsto \mathcal{O}_D(-2)[1] \\
\mathcal{P}_{4,0} &\longmapsto \mathcal{O}_D(-1)[1]
\end{aligned}$$

Note that the images of $\mathcal{P}_{3,0}$ and $\mathcal{P}_{4,0}$ are the (anti-)D2-branes wrapped on the curve D. The Chern characters of these complexes $F\mathcal{P}_{q,0}$ are

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{ch}(F\mathcal{P}_{0,0}) &= 1 - \tfrac{1}{5}H^2 - \tfrac{1}{5}H^3, \\
\mathrm{ch}(F\mathcal{P}_{1,0}) &= -2 + H + \tfrac{3}{10}H^2 - \tfrac{7}{30}H^3, \\
\mathrm{ch}(F\mathcal{P}_{2,0}) &= 1 - H + \tfrac{3}{10}H^2 + \tfrac{7}{30}H^3, \\
\mathrm{ch}(F\mathcal{P}_{3,0}) &= -\tfrac{1}{5}H^2 + \tfrac{1}{5}H^3, \\
\mathrm{ch}(F\mathcal{P}_{4,0}) &= -\tfrac{1}{5}H^2.
\end{aligned}$$

where we used that $\mathrm{ch}(\mathcal{O}_D) = \frac{1}{5}H^2 + \frac{1}{5}H^3$. This reproduces the result of [98] on the K-theory charges of the large volume images of the permutation branes (up to an overall sign which can be traced to the shift $\mathcal{P}_{q,0} \to \mathcal{P}_{q,1}$).

D4-Brane

As a final example for a D-brane on the quintic hypersurface (not necessarily of Fermat type), let us consider a D4-brane $\mathcal{O}_H(0)$ on a hyperplane H, which is determined by a linear form $h(x) = \alpha \cdot X = \sum_{i=1}^{5} \alpha_i x_i$ with parameters $\alpha \in \mathbf{CP}^4$. We take the B-field in the interval $B \in (0, 2\pi)$.

We would like to find its image at the LG orbifold point. In order to apply the map $D(M) \longrightarrow MF_W(X)$, we notice that, as an object on the ambient space $\mathbf{CP}^4$, this D-brane is supported on the complete intersetion $\{h(x) = 0\} \cap \{G(x) = 0\}$ and thus can be realized as Koszul complex of these two polynomials. For the lift to the linear sigma model, we have to fill in the field p to obtain a matrix factorization. Taking into account

the shifts (10.36) and (10.37) of the B-field and the R-charge, respectively, the lift is simply

$$\mathcal{W}(-1)_{-1} \underset{(0,-p)}{\overset{\binom{h}{-G}}{\rightleftarrows}} \begin{matrix}\mathcal{W}(0)_0\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(4)_0\end{matrix} \underset{\binom{p}{0}}{\overset{(G,h)}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{W}(5)_1 .$$

Here, we shifted the charges so that the theta parameter lies in the window $w : -5\pi < \theta < -3\pi$, with the grade restriction range $\mathfrak{C}^w = \{0,1,2,3,4\}$. We see that the Wilson line branes $\mathcal{W}(-1)_{-1}$ and $\mathcal{W}(5)_1$ must be eliminated when we want to transport the D4-brane through w. This can be done by binding the infra-red empty branes $\mathcal{K}_+^{\mathrm{mf}}(-1)$ and $\mathcal{K}_+^{\mathrm{mf}}$, defined in (10.10), to the matrix factorization. Let us consider the former process first:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc} & & \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-1} & & \begin{matrix}\mathcal{W}(0)_0\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(4)_0\end{matrix} & & \mathcal{W}(5)_1 & & & & \\ & \overset{\mathrm{id}}{\nearrow} & & \overset{\varphi_1}{\nearrow} & & \overset{\varphi_2}{\nearrow} & & & & & \\ \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-2} & \underset{pG'}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 5}_{-1} & \underset{pG'}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 10}_{0} & \underset{pG'}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(2)^{\oplus 10}_{1} & \underset{pG'}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(3)^{\oplus 5}_{2} & \cdots . \end{array}$$

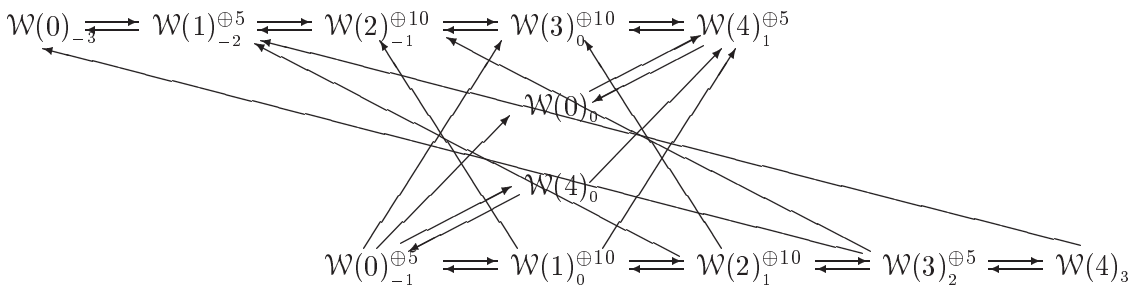
Here, X and G' are the short-hand notation for $\sum_i x_i \overline{\eta}_i$ and $\frac{1}{5}\sum_i \eta_i \partial_i G$ respectively, where η_i and $\overline{\eta}_i$ are the Clifford generators that are used to construct $\mathcal{K}_+^{\mathrm{mf}}$. The binding map is given by

$$\varphi_1 = \begin{pmatrix} -\alpha \\ G' \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \varphi_2 = \alpha G',$$

in which $\alpha = \sum_i \eta_i \alpha_i$. Following the procedure from (3.7) to (3.8), we eliminate the trivial brane-antibrane pair $\mathcal{W}(-1)_{-2} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-1}$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} & & \begin{matrix}\mathcal{W}(0)_0\\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(4)_0\end{matrix} & & \mathcal{W}(5)_1 & & & & \\ & \overset{(0,pX)}{\swarrow} & \overset{\varphi_1}{\nearrow} & \overset{\varphi_2}{\nearrow} & & & & & \\ \mathcal{W}(0)^{\oplus 5}_{-1} & \underset{pG'}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(1)^{\oplus 10}_{0} & \underset{pG'}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(2)^{\oplus 10}_{1} & \underset{pG'}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(3)^{\oplus 5}_{2} & \underset{pG'}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(4)_3 . \end{array}$$

Let us next adjoin the matrix factorization $\mathcal{K}_+^{\mathrm{mf}}$ in order to eliminiate the $\mathcal{W}(5)_1$. Starting with the identity to $\mathcal{W}(5)_2$ in $\mathcal{K}_+^{\mathrm{mf}}$, we first find the arrows in the ordinary direction, from left to right, so that we obtain a complex if we ignore the arrows linear in p that goes in the opposite way. Unlike in the first binding shown above, this does not yet make a matrix factorization of $pG(x) - Q^2$ has entries other than $pG(x) \cdot \mathrm{id}$. This problem itself can be fixed by introducing arrows linear in p, but the new arrows procude a problem at different entries. This process terminates by finding arrows which are cubic in p. The final form of the grade restricted matrix factorization, obtained after elimination of $\mathcal{W}(5)_1 \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} \mathcal{W}(5)_2$, is



To avoid cluttering the diagram, we do not include the detail of the arrows. It is left as an exercise to the reader.

We can now perform the transport to the LG orbifold point, where we set $p = 1$ and shift the R-symmetry as $\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}} = R_{\mathbf{i}} - 2q_{\mathbf{i}}/5$. The final result is the matrix factorization of $G(x)$ on R-graded $\mathbf{Z}_5$-equivariant vector bundles on $\mathbf{C}^5$,

$$\left(\mathcal{E}_0 \underset{f}{\overset{g}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{E}_1 \right),$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}_0 &= \mathcal{O}(\bar{0})_0 \oplus \mathcal{O}(\bar{4})_{-\frac{8}{5}} \oplus \mathcal{O}(\bar{1})^{\oplus 10}_{-\frac{5}{2}} \oplus \mathcal{O}(\bar{3})^{\oplus 5}_{\frac{4}{5}} \oplus \mathcal{O}(\bar{1})^{\oplus 5}_{-\frac{12}{5}} \oplus \mathcal{O}(\bar{3})^{\oplus 10}_{-\frac{6}{5}}, \\
\mathcal{E}_1 &= \mathcal{O}(\bar{0})^{\oplus 5}_{-1} \oplus \mathcal{O}(\bar{2})^{\oplus 10}_{\frac{1}{5}} \oplus \mathcal{O}(\bar{4})_{\frac{7}{5}} \oplus \mathcal{O}(\bar{0})_{-3} \oplus \mathcal{O}(\bar{2})^{\oplus 10}_{-\frac{9}{5}} \oplus \mathcal{O}(\bar{4})^{\oplus 5}_{-\frac{3}{5}},
\end{aligned}$$

where the matrices are

$$g = \begin{pmatrix}
0 & X & G' & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & X & G' & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & X & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{4!}(G'')^4\alpha & G' & 0 \\
0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{2}\alpha(G'')^2 & \frac{1}{3}(G'')^3\alpha & X & G' \\
-G' & -\alpha & G''\alpha & 0 & 0 & X
\end{pmatrix},$$

$$f = \begin{pmatrix}
-\alpha & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -X \\
G' & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
X & G' & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & X & G' & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & -\frac{1}{3!}\alpha(G'')^3 & \frac{1}{4!}(G'')^4\alpha & X & G' & 0 \\
-\alpha G'' & \frac{1}{2}(G'')^2\alpha & 0 & 0 & X & G'
\end{pmatrix}.$$

Here $G'' = \frac{1}{5\cdot 4}\sum_{ij}\overline{\xi}_i\eta_j\partial_i\partial_j G$ in which ξ_i and $\overline{\xi}_i$ are the Clifford generators to realize the second $\mathcal{K}^{\mathrm{mf}}_+$ as $Q = \sum_i \left(\xi_i x_i + \frac{1}{5}\overline{\xi}_i p\partial_i G\right)$. The X, G', α in parts of the entries of the

matrices are $X = \sum_i \xi_i x_i$, $G' = \frac{1}{5}\sum_i \overline{\xi}_i \partial_i G$ and $\alpha = \sum_i \overline{\xi}_i \alpha_i$, and the remaining parts are those using the $\overline{\eta}_i$'s and the η_i's. Which is which should be obvious.

This is a completely new result. Unlike the previous examples, there was no attempt in the literature to make an educated guess for the LG image of the D4-brane $\mathcal{O}_H(0)$ from R-R charge and mirror symmetry considerations.

10.4.2 Two-Parameter Model

Let us consider the two parameter model — Example (C) — with superpotential $W = PG(X)$ where

$$G(x_1, ..., x_6) = x_1^8 x_6^4 + x_2^8 x_6^4 + x_3^4 + x_4^4 + x_5^4.$$

This model has four phases as depicted in Fig. 3. Phase I is the large volume regime where the low energy theory is the non-linear sigma model on the hypersurface $M = \{G = 0\}$ in a toric variety. At the point $\mathrm{e}^{-t_1} = \mathrm{e}^{-t_2} = 0$ in Phase III, the theory reduces to the LG model of five variables $X_1, .., X_5$ with Fermat type superpotential

$$W = X_1^8 + X_2^8 + X_3^4 + X_4^4 + X_5^4,$$

modulo the $\mathbf{Z}_8$ orbifold group $X_a \mapsto \omega X_a$, $X_i \mapsto \omega^2 X_i$ ($\omega^8 = 1$) for $a = 1, 2$, $i = 3, 4, 5$. The R-charges of the variables are $\overline{R}[x_a] = \frac{1}{4}$, $\overline{R}[x_i] = \frac{1}{2}$. We consider paths in the Kähler moduli space between the LG orbifold point and the large volume phase via Phase II. For a suitable choice of windows at the two phase boundaries (i.e. window w_1 at the III-II boundary and window w' at the II-I boundary; see Section 8.4.2), we have the grade restriction rule:

$$\mathfrak{C}^w = \{(0,0), (0,1), (1,0), (1,1), (2,0), (2,1), (3,0), (3,1)\}. \tag{10.42}$$

$\mathbf{L} = 0^5$ *RS-Branes*

We consider the $\mathbf{L} = (0,0,0,0,0)$ RS-branes $\mathcal{B}_{0^5,q,r}$ at the LG orbifold point given by the matrix factorization

$$\overline{Q}_{0^5} = \sum_{a=1,2} \left(x_a \eta_a + x_a^7 \overline{\eta}_a\right) + \sum_{i=3,4,5} \left(x_i \eta_i + x_i^3 \overline{\eta}_i\right). \tag{10.43}$$

The R-charges of the Clifford generators are $\overline{R}[\overline{\eta}_a] = -\frac{3}{4}$, $\overline{R}[\overline{\eta}_i] = -\frac{1}{2}$. Using these, we find the R-charges of the Chan-Paton vectors in terms of the one $\overline{R}_{|0\rangle}$ for the vacuum

vector $|0\rangle$. For example, $\overline{R}[\overline{\eta}_a|0\rangle] = \overline{R}_{|0\rangle} - \frac{3}{4}$, $\overline{R}[\overline{\eta}_i|0\rangle] = \overline{R}_{|0\rangle} - \frac{1}{2}$. We focus on the branes $\mathcal{B}_{0^5,q,0}$ where $|0\rangle$ is even.

Now let us consider the lift to the linear sigma model. The first step is to solve the equation

$$\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}} = R_{\mathbf{i}} - \frac{2(2q_{\mathbf{i}}^1 + q_{\mathbf{i}}^2)}{8} \tag{10.44}$$

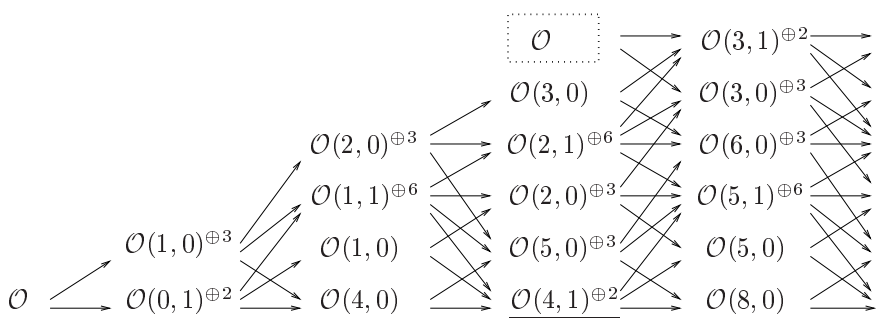
for each Chan-Paton vector. There is a unique solution if we require $(q_{\mathbf{i}}^1, q_{\mathbf{i}}^2)$ to be in the grade restriction range (10.42). Once $(R_{\mathbf{i}}, q_{\mathbf{i}}^1, q_{\mathbf{i}}^2)$ are determined, we multiply each entry of the matrix $\overline{Q}_{0^5}$ by an appropriate power of p and x_6 so that the gauge invariance holds. This leads to the matrix factorization $Q(p, x_1, .., x_6)$ of $W = pG(x)$ for the linear sigma model brane.

Let us first consider the brane $\mathcal{B}_{0^5,0,0}$ with $\overline{R}_{|0\rangle} = 0$. The solution to the equation (10.44) is listed in the table below.

vector	$\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_a\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_i\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_1\overline{\eta}_2\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_a\overline{\eta}_i\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_i\overline{\eta}_j\|0\rangle$
$\overline{R}$	0	$-\frac{3}{4}$	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{3}{2}$	$-\frac{5}{4}$	-1
R	0	1	1	0	0	0
(q^1, q^2)	(0,0)	(3,1)	(3,0)	(3,0)	(2,1)	(2,0)
image	$\mathcal{W}(0,0)$	$\mathcal{W}(3,1)^{\oplus 2}$	$\mathcal{W}(3,0)^{\oplus 3}$	$\mathcal{W}(3,0)$	$\mathcal{W}(2,1)^{\oplus 6}$	$\mathcal{W}(2,0)^{\oplus 3}$

$\overline{\eta}_1\overline{\eta}_2\overline{\eta}_i\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_a\overline{\eta}_i\overline{\eta}_j\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_3\overline{\eta}_4\overline{\eta}_5\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_1\overline{\eta}_2\overline{\eta}_i\overline{\eta}_j\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_a\overline{\eta}_3\overline{\eta}_4\overline{\eta}_5\|0\rangle$	$\overline{\eta}_1\cdots\overline{\eta}_5\|0\rangle$
-2	$-\frac{7}{4}$	$-\frac{3}{2}$	$-\frac{5}{2}$	$-\frac{9}{4}$	-3
-1	-1	-1	-2	-2	-3
(2,0)	(1,1)	(1,0)	(1,0)	(0,1)	(0,0)
$\mathcal{W}(2,0)^{\oplus 3}$	$\mathcal{W}(1,1)^{\oplus 6}$	$\mathcal{W}(1,1)$	$\mathcal{W}(1,0)^{\oplus 3}$	$\mathcal{W}(0,1)^{\oplus 2}$	$\mathcal{W}(0,0)$

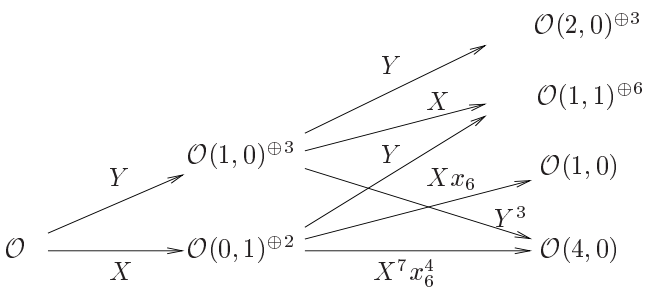
Applying the reduction map in the large volume regime, we find the following semi-infinite complex of vector bundles on the hypersurface M:



Each arrow corresponds to

$$X = \sum_{a=1,2} x_a \eta_a, \quad X^7 = \sum_{a=1,2} x_a^7 \overline{\eta}_a, \qquad Y = \sum_{i=3,4,5} x_i \eta_i, \quad Y^3 = \sum_{i=3,4,5} x_i^3 \overline{\eta}_i$$

possibly with multiplication by a power of x_6. The power of x_6 can be found by matching the gauge charges of the source and the target. For example, the arrows for the first few parts of the complex is given as follows:



The part of the complex other than $\mathcal{O}$ in the dashed box is exact. Thus, the whole complex is quasi-isomorphic to $\mathcal{O}$ at R-degree 0.

One may repeat this procedure to find the large volume images of the other $\mathbf{L} = 0^5$ RS-branes. However, as we have done in the quintic case, we may proceed more economically, using what we have done for McKay correspondence. The grade restricted lift of the RS-brane $\mathcal{B}_{0^5,q,0}$, obtained by solving (10.44), is the same as the grade restricted lift $\mathfrak{B}'_{\bar{q}}$ of the fractional brane $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}(\bar{q})$, when we supplement it by extra arrows going in the opposite direction. For example, compare the above table with the complex $\mathfrak{B}'_{\bar{0}}$ written in page 177. As we have seen in Section 8.4.2, the complex $\mathfrak{B}'_{\bar{q}}$ is presented as the bound state of a complex that is trivial in the large volume regime and another complex of the form

$$\mathfrak{A}_q(4,0)[1] \xrightarrow{p} \mathfrak{A}_q.$$

Here $\mathfrak{A}_q$ is the Wilson line counterpart of the complex $\mathcal{A}_q$ of vector bundles shown in (8.29). There is a complete parallel in the matrix factorization version: the grade restricted lift of the RS-brane can be presented as a bound state of a matrix factorization that is trivial at large volume and another matrix factorization given by

$$\mathfrak{A}_q(4,0)[-1] \underset{G}{\overset{p}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathfrak{A}_q.$$

Applying the second Knörrer map to this complex, we find the large volume image. The result is simply the restriction of the large volume image of the fractional brane to the

hypersurface $M = \{G = 0\}$. To summarize, the transport of the $\mathbf{L} = 0^5$ RS-branes from the LG orbifold to the large volume regime results in the maps

$$\mathcal{B}_{0^5,q,0} \longmapsto \mathcal{A}_q\Big|_M, \qquad \text{for } \; q = 0, 1, ..., 7.$$

This can also be obtained from the semi-infinite complex by eliminating the exact pieces. The Chern character of these branes are obtained from those of $\mathcal{A}_q|_E$ listed in (8.29) by restriction to M. It matches with the one in [79], up to a translation of labelling.

Short Orbit Branes

We next consider the short orbit branes in the LG orbifold with $L_i + 1 = \frac{d_i}{2}$ for all i, that is, $\mathbf{L} = (3, 3, 1, 1, 1) =: \frac{\mathbf{k}}{\mathbf{2}}$. Recall from Section 2.4.1 that they are denoted by $\widehat{\mathcal{B}}_{\frac{\mathbf{k}}{\mathbf{2}},q,r}$. The associated matrix factorization is

$$\overline{Q} = x_1^4\,\xi_1 + x_2^4\,\xi_2 + x_3^2\,\xi_3 + x_4^2\,\xi_4 + x_5^2\,\xi_5$$

represented on a complex module $\mathcal{V}_3$ over the real Clifford algebra

$$\{\xi_i, \xi_j\} = 2\delta_{i,j} \qquad \text{for } \; 0 \le i, j \le 5.$$

The ξ_i's are invariant under the R-symmetry and transform as $\xi_i \to -\xi_i$ under the orbifold group generator. The module $\mathcal{V}_3$ is generated by a vector $|0\rangle$ which is annihilated by $\xi_1 + i\xi_2$, $\xi_3 + i\xi_4$, $\xi_5 + i\xi_0$. It has dimension $2^3 = 8$. The $\mathbf{Z}_2$-grading is such that even multiples of the ξ_i's on $|0\rangle$ are even.

Let us first consider $\widehat{\mathcal{B}}_{\frac{\mathbf{k}}{\mathbf{2}},0,0}$ where all the vectors of $\mathcal{V}_3$ have $\overline{R} = 0$. The grade restricted lift to the linear sigma model is found by solving $\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}} = R_{\mathbf{i}} - 2(2q_{\mathbf{i}}^1 + q_{\mathbf{i}}^2)/8$:

vector	even	odd
$\overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}}$	0	0
$R_{\mathbf{i}}$	0	1
$q_{\mathbf{i}}$	(0,0)	(2,0)
	$\mathcal{W}(0,0)^{\oplus 4}$	$\mathcal{W}(2,0)^{\oplus 4}$

The explicit factorization is

$$\left(\mathcal{W}(0,0)_0^{\oplus 4} \underset{pg}{\overset{g}{\rightleftarrows}} \mathcal{W}(2,0)_1^{\oplus 4} \right)$$

with

$$g = x_1^4 x_6^2\, \xi_1 + x_2^4 x_6^2\, \xi_2 + x_3^2\, \xi_3 + x_4^2\, \xi_4 + x_5^2\, \xi_5.$$

The large volume image is

$$0 \to \underline{\mathcal{O}(0,0)^{\oplus 4}} \xrightarrow{g} \mathcal{O}(2,0)^{\oplus 4} \xrightarrow{g} \mathcal{O}(4,0)^{\oplus 4} \xrightarrow{g} \cdots .$$

Or, we may simply take the kernel of the first map. Repeating the same procedure, we find the following transportarion rule for the $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{\frac{k}{2}}$ short orbit branes

$$\begin{aligned}
\widehat{\mathcal{B}}_{\mathbf{\frac{k}{2}},0,0} &\longmapsto \mathrm{Ker}\Big(g : \mathcal{O}(0,0)^{\oplus 4} \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}(2,0)^{\oplus 4}\Big),\\
\widehat{\mathcal{B}}_{\mathbf{\frac{k}{2}},1,0} &\longmapsto \mathrm{Ker}\Big(g : \mathcal{O}(0,1)^{\oplus 4} \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}(2,1)^{\oplus 4}\Big),\\
\widehat{\mathcal{B}}_{\mathbf{\frac{k}{2}},2,0} &\longmapsto \mathrm{Ker}\Big(g : \mathcal{O}(1,0)^{\oplus 4} \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}(3,0)^{\oplus 4}\Big),\\
\widehat{\mathcal{B}}_{\mathbf{\frac{k}{2}},3,0} &\longmapsto \mathrm{Ker}\Big(g : \mathcal{O}(1,1)^{\oplus 4} \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}(3,1)^{\oplus 4}\Big).
\end{aligned}$$

The images of the remaining branes can be found using $\widehat{\mathcal{B}}_{\mathbf{\frac{k}{2}},q+4,r} \cong \widehat{\mathcal{B}}_{\mathbf{\frac{k}{2}},q,r-1}$.

10.5 Monodromy

Let us now study monodromies in the compact models, that is, D-brane transport along non-trivial loops in the moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$. For this purpose it is best to stay at the intermediate energy scale $\mu \gg m_W$ and simply work with the description of D-branes through matrix factorizations, i.e., study the hat diagram (10.8). Then, the essential ideas carry over from the non-compact models. When necessary, we can always translate the result in terms of the low energy description.

Example (A)

Let us first consider Example (A) with superpotential $W = PG(X_1, ..., X_N)$ for a degree N polynomial $G(x_1, ..., x_N)$. The Kähler moduli space is the same as for the theory without superpotential. It is complex one dimsnional and has three special points: the large volume limit $r \to +\infty$, the LG orbifold point $r \to -\infty$ and a singular point $\mathrm{e}^t = (-N)^N$.

The monodromies around the large volume limit and LG orbifold point come from shifting the theta parameter, $\theta \to \theta + 2\pi$. This is equivalent to keeping the theta parameter fixed and shifting the representation of the gauge group:

$$\mathrm{M}_{\theta\to\theta+2\pi}\big(\pi_r(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho(g), R)\big) = \pi_r(\mathcal{V}, Q, g\rho(g), R), \tag{10.45}$$

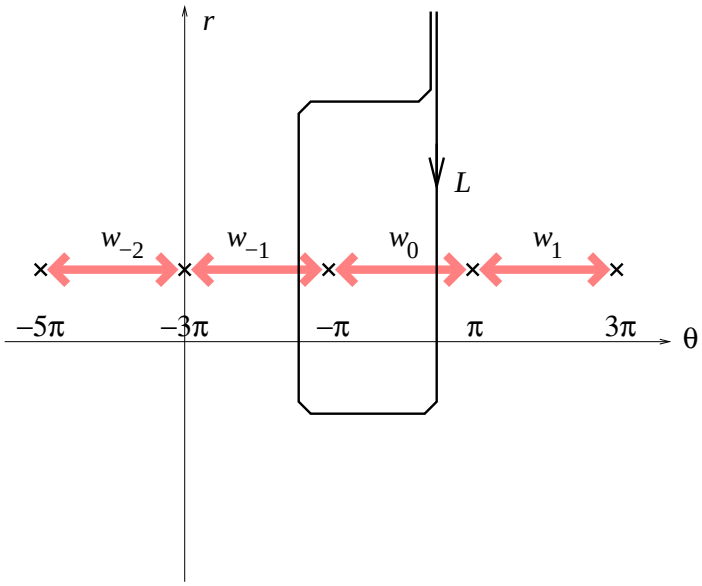


Figure 29: A loop around the singular point in $\mathfrak{M}_K$

i.e., the matrix factorization is tensored by $\mathcal{W}(1)$. In the large volume regime we can express the monodromy in terms of D-branes in $D(M)$, so that (10.45) simply becomes tensoring by $\mathcal{O}(1)$. In the Landau-Ginzburg phase, as encountered in Section 10.2, the vacuum expectation value, $p = 1$, enforces a shift of the R-symmetry action, i.e., $\overline{R_{\mathbf{i}}} = R_{\mathbf{i}} - 2q_{\mathbf{i}}/N$. Therefore, for a loop around the LG orbifold point, the monodromy action (10.45) on $\mathbf{Z}_N$-graded matrix factorizations becomes

$$\mathrm{M}_{GP}(\mathcal{V}, \bar{Q}, \bar{\rho}(\omega), \bar{R}(\lambda)) = (\mathcal{V}, \bar{Q}, \omega\bar{\rho}(\omega), \lambda^{-2/N}\bar{R}(\lambda)).$$

This yields the relation

$$(\mathrm{M}_{GP})^N \cong [2],$$

where $[2]$ denotes the shift of R-charge by -2. From the linear sigma model point of view this is a consequence of the D-isomorphism $\pi_-(\mathcal{V}, Q, g^N\rho(g), R) \cong \pi_-(\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho(g), \lambda^{-2}R)$, which is a consequence of the fact that the cone of the map

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{V}^{od}(N) & \underset{g}{\overset{f}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{V}^{ev}(N) \\ {\scriptstyle p\cdot \mathrm{id}_{od}}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle p\cdot \mathrm{id}_{ev}} \\ \mathcal{V}^{od}[2] & \underset{g}{\overset{f}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{V}^{ev}[2] \end{array}$$

is an empty D-brane.

Next, we consider the monodromy around the singular point. To be specific, we take the example with $N = 3$ and the Fermat polynomial $G = x_1^3 + x_2^3 + x_3^3$. Consider the

loop L as depicted in Fig 29 which is based at large volume and goes around the singular point. As we follow L we have to grade restrict first according to the window w_0 and then with respect to the window w_{-1}. The grade restriction rules for these windows are:

$$\mathfrak{C}^{w_0} = \{-1, 0, 1\} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathfrak{C}^{w_{-1}} = \{0, 1, 2\}.$$

Let us illustrate the monodromy around the singular point by looking at its action on the D0-brane, $\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}} \in D(M)$, at the point $\mathfrak{p} = \{x_1 + x_2 = x_3 = 0\}$ of the elliptic curve. In Section 10.3.2 we found that it is lifted to the matrix factorization

$$\mathfrak{B}_{\mathfrak{p}}: \quad \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{W}(0)_0 \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(0)_0 \end{pmatrix} \underset{f}{\overset{g}{\rightleftarrows}} \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{W}(1)_1 \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-1} \end{pmatrix},$$

where f and g are given in (10.39). Following the loop L we note that $\mathfrak{B}_{\mathfrak{p}}$ indeed fits into the grade restricted set $\mathfrak{MF}_W(\mathcal{T}^{w_0})$, and thus can be transported to the Landau-Ginzburg phase. When going back to the large volume phase through the window w_{-1} we note that the Wilson line component $\mathcal{W}(-1)$ is in conflict with $\mathfrak{C}^{w_{-1}}$. So, we have to eliminate it first by binding $\mathfrak{B}_{\mathfrak{p}}$ with the brane $\mathfrak{B}_-$ given in (10.2) that is trivial in the Landau-Ginzburg phase. The resulting matrix factorization is

$$\mathfrak{B}'_{\mathfrak{p}}: \quad \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{W}(0)_0 \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(0)_0 \end{pmatrix} \underset{f'}{\overset{g'}{\rightleftarrows}} \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{W}(1)_1 \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(2)_1 \end{pmatrix},$$

with

$$g' = \begin{pmatrix} x_1+x_2 & x_3 \\ -x_3^2 & x_1^2 - x_1x_2 + x_2^2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad f' = p \begin{pmatrix} x_1^2 - x_1x_2 + x_2^2 & -x_3 \\ x_3^2 & x_1+x_2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Back at the large volume regime, as a geometric D-brane in $D(M)$ this matrix factorization becomes

$$\underline{\mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus 2}} \xrightarrow{(x_1+x_2, x_3)} \mathcal{O}(2) \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}$$

with the B-field in the range $B \in (0, 2\pi)$. The monodromy along the loop L is therefore:

$$\mathrm{M}_L(\mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}}) \cong \left(\underline{\mathcal{O}(1)^{\oplus 2}} \xrightarrow{(x_1+x_2, x_3)} \mathcal{O}(2) \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathfrak{p}} \right).$$

In the spirit of [71] let us understand the monodromy action in terms of binding massless D-branes to the original brane. For that let us start with a D-brane in $MF_W(M)$ represented via its lift in the grade restricted set $\mathfrak{MF}_W(\mathcal{T}^{w_0})$. When we follow the loop we have to apply grade restriction with respect to the window w_{-1}, which means that

we have to eliminate all components $\mathcal{W}(-1)$ by binding of the matrix factorization $\mathfrak{B}_-$ given in (10.2). When we are back to the large volume phase we try to find again a representative in $\mathfrak{MF}_W(\mathcal{T}^{w_0})$. So, we have to eliminate the component $\mathcal{W}(2)$ in $\mathfrak{B}_-$ in terms of binding $\mathfrak{B}_+$ given in (10.3). In total, to every Wilson line component $\mathcal{W}(-1)$ at R-degree j in the original D-brane $\mathfrak{B}$ we have to bind the matrix factorization,

$$\mathfrak{B}_0 : \quad \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-2} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(1)_0^{\oplus 3} \end{pmatrix} \underset{f_0}{\overset{g_0}{\rightleftarrows}} \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{W}(0)_{-1}^{\oplus 3} \\ \oplus \\ \mathcal{W}(-1)_{-1} \end{pmatrix},$$

with appropriate shifts in R-degree. The matrices f_0 and g_0 are defined in (10.5). Chiral ring elements in $\mathcal{H}^j(\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}), \pi_+(\mathfrak{B}_0)[-1])$ are in one-to-one correspondence with the number of Wilson line component $\mathcal{W}(-1)$ at R-degree $-j$. This lets us write the monodromy action around the singular point as

$$\mathrm{M}_L(\pi_+(\mathfrak{B})) = \mathrm{Cone}\left(\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}) \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{j\in\mathbf{Z}} \mathcal{H}^j(\pi_+(\mathfrak{B}), \pi_+(\mathfrak{B}_0)) \otimes \pi_+(\mathfrak{B}_0)[j]\right)[-1]. \quad (10.46)$$

If we want to express this monodromy action in terms of objects in $D(M)$, we need to map $\mathfrak{B}_0$ to its image as geometric D-brane. We know that the image is the line bundle $\mathcal{O}$ with the B-field in the interval $(0, 2\pi)$. On a general D-brane $\mathcal{B} \in D(M)$ the monodromy action is therefore

$$\mathrm{M}_L(\mathcal{B}) = \mathrm{Cone}\left(\mathcal{B} \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{j\in\mathbf{Z}} \mathcal{H}^j(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{O}) \otimes \mathcal{O}[j]\right)[-1].$$

In the context of derived categories this monodromy action was first suggested by Kontsevich and further studied in [6, 72–75]. Indeed, from considerations in the mirror dual theory the D-brane $\mathcal{O}$ was found to become massless at the singular point, see for instance [76].

Similar arguments show that the monodromy around the singular point following the loop L_1 in Fig. 30, which has its base point at small volume, is given by:

$$\mathrm{M}_{L_1}(\pi_-(\mathfrak{B})) = \mathrm{Cone}\left(\bigoplus_{j\in\mathbf{Z}} \mathcal{H}^j(\pi_-(\mathfrak{B}_0), \pi_-(\mathfrak{B})) \otimes \pi_-(\mathfrak{B}_0)[-j] \longrightarrow \pi_-(\mathfrak{B})\right). \quad (10.47)$$

This monodromy action on matrix factorizations in Landau-Ginzburg orbifold models was recently suggested in [99]. In fact, $\pi_-(\mathfrak{B}_0)$ is one of the $\mathbf{L} = 0^3$ RS-branes of the Gepner model associated with the LG orbifold.

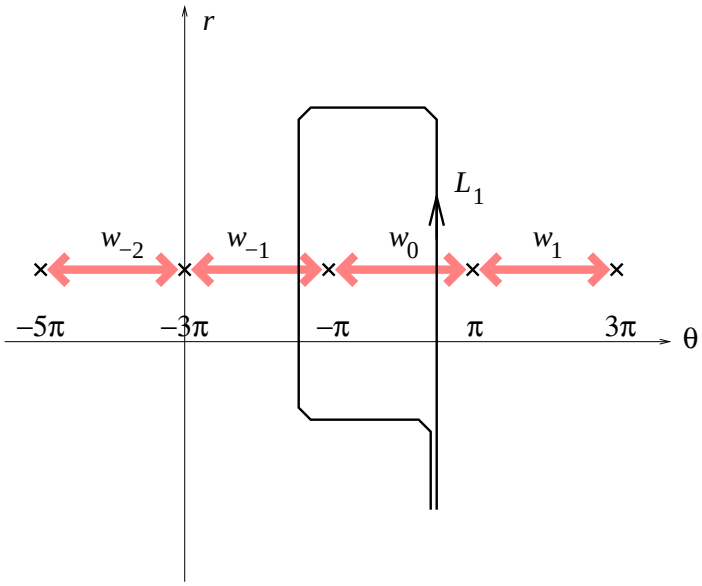


Figure 30: Another loop around the singular locus in $\mathfrak{M}_K$

For general N, the brane that plays the rôle of $\mathfrak{B}_0$ is

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc} & & & & & & & & \mathcal{W}(q{+}N)_{-1} & \underset{-G}{\overset{-p}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(q)_{-2} \\ & & & & & & & & & \overset{\mathrm{id}}{\searrow}\ \ \overset{G'}{\swarrow} & \\ \mathcal{W}(q)_{-N} & \underset{pG'}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(q{+}1)^{\oplus N}_{-N+1} & \underset{pG'}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(q{+}2)^{\oplus\binom{N}{2}}_{-N+2} & \underset{pG'}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} & \cdots & \underset{pG'}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(q{+}N{-}1)^{\oplus N}_{-1} & \underset{pG'}{\overset{X}{\rightleftarrows}} & \mathcal{W}(q{+}N)_0 . \end{array}$$

It satisfies the grade restriction for $\mathfrak{C}^w = \{q, q+1, \ldots, q+N-1\}$ after eliminating the trivial pair and, therefore, $\mathfrak{B}_0$ induces the monodromy around the singular point $r = N \log N$, $\theta/2\pi = -q - N/2$. In the large volume phase it becomes the D-brane $\mathcal{O}(q)$ with $B = \theta + N\pi$, and at the LG orbifold point it becomes one of the Recknagel-Schomerus $\mathbf{L} = 0^N$ RS-branes if G is the Fermat polynomial.

The General Case

It is straightforward now to find "the vanishing cycle", the D-brane that induces the monodromy around the singular point, in a general theory with one-dimensional moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$. It is obtained by binding two D-branes that are trivial at $r \ll 0$ and $r \gg 0$. Such trivial branes had been written down in (10.11) and (10.10) respectively. The map

which binds them together is

$$\varphi : \mathcal{K}_-^{\rm mf}(\mathcal{S}) \to \mathcal{K}_+^{\rm mf}$$

that sends the leftmost $\mathcal{W}(\mathcal{S})$ to the rightmost $\wedge^k \mathcal{W}_+ \cong \mathcal{W}(\mathcal{S})$ by the identity and sends $\mathcal{W}_-(\mathcal{S})$ to $\wedge^{k-1}\mathcal{W}_+$ by the map c associated with $c_{ij}(x,y)$ satisfying the identities

$$a_i = \sum_{j=1}^{l} c_{ij}(x,y) y_j, \qquad b_j = \sum_{i=1}^{k} x_i c_{ij}(x,y).$$

Such c_{ij} exists since a_i have negative and b_j have positive charges. (In particular, we have $W = \sum_{i,j} x_i c_{ij}(x,y) y_j$.) Here we have defined the R-charge of the trivial branes in such a way that $\mathcal{W}(\mathcal{S})$ has R-charge zero in both $\mathcal{K}_-^{\rm mf}$ and $\mathcal{K}_+^{\rm mf}$. It is easy to see that φ is then a degree zero map. The vanishing cycle is thus

$$\mathfrak{V}^{\rm mf} = {\rm Cone}\Big(\varphi : \mathcal{K}_-^{\rm mf}(\mathcal{S}) \longrightarrow \mathcal{K}_+^{\rm mf} \Big) \tag{10.48}$$

Monodromies in theories with higher dimensional moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$ are described in the same way as in one-parameter models. Loops around special points deep inside a Kähler cone correspond to shifts of the gauge charges: the loop $\theta^a \to \theta^a + 2\pi$ induces $\mathcal{W}(q^1, \ldots, q^a, \ldots, q^k) \to \mathcal{W}(q^1, \ldots, q^a + 1, \ldots, q^k)$ on every Wilson line component of the matrix factorization. The monodromy around the singular locus $\mathfrak{S}$ between two phases is controlled by the associated band restriction rule, say $\mathfrak{C}^w_{\rm I,II}$. We start with a D-brane in Phase I and take its representative in the band restricted set $\mathfrak{MF}_W(\mathcal{T}^w_{\rm I,II})$. When we circle around the singular locus the band will be shifted and some Wilson line components will fall out of the new band. These components must be eliminated through binding matrix factorizations $\mathcal{K}^{\rm mf}_{-,A}$ associated with $\Delta_-^{\rm I,II}$, which appears in the relation (4.22) between the deleted sets. The subscript "A" stems from the fact that there are a multitude of D-branes $\mathcal{K}^{\rm mf}_{-,A}$, which are related by shifts of the gauge charges along the band. Then, back in Phase I we may band restrict again with respect to $\mathfrak{C}^w_{\rm I,II}$ using the matrix factorization $\mathcal{K}^{\rm mf}_{+,A}$ that comes with $\Delta_+^{\rm I,II}$. Altogether we bind D-branes $\mathfrak{V}^{\rm mf}_A = {\rm Cone}(\mathcal{K}^{\rm mf}_{-,A} \to \mathcal{K}^{\rm mf}_{+,A})$ to the original D-brane. For the loop in the opposite direction, the branes that are bound are $\mathfrak{V}'^{\rm mf}_A = {\rm Cone}(\mathcal{K}^{\rm mf}_{+,A} \to \mathcal{K}^{\rm mf}_{-,A})$. One may find formulas analogous to (10.46) and (10.47). However, we point out once again that our approach does not rely on determining chiral ring spectra between D-branes and, therefore, facilidates computations considerably.

10.6 Relation To Orlov's Functors

Suppose a linear sigma model reduces in one phase to the non-linear sigma model on a Calabi-Yau manifold $M_{\rm LV}$ and in another phase to the Landau-Ginzburg orbifold with a

superpotential $W_{\rm LG}$ and an orbifold group Γ. We know how to transport D-branes along any path τ in the moduli space $\mathfrak{M}_K$ that passes through phase boundaries and connects these two phases. This leads to a map of low energy D-branes

$$F_\tau : MF_\Gamma(W_{\rm LG}) \longrightarrow D(M_{\rm LV}), \tag{10.49}$$

and its inverse. Since the parallel transport preserves the chiral sector, as the truncated version of the above map, we have a functor between the categories of D-branes

$$\Phi_\tau : \mathbf{MF}_\Gamma(W_{\rm LG}) \longrightarrow \mathbf{D}(M_{\rm LV}), \tag{10.50}$$

and its inverse, that is, an equivalence of the two categories. Of course, this is just an example — we have an equivalence of D-brane categories for any pair of phases. For example, if the model has two large volume phases corresponding to different Calabi-Yau manifolds, M_1 and M_2, we have an equivalence of the derived categories, $\mathbf{D}(M_1) \stackrel{\cong}{\longrightarrow} \mathbf{D}(M_2)$. If it has two LG phases, we have an equivalence $\mathbf{MF}_{\Gamma_1}(W_1) \stackrel{\cong}{\longrightarrow} \mathbf{MF}_{\Gamma_2}(W_2)$.

Equivalences of the type (10.50) were constructed by Dmitri Orlov [5] in the case of projective hypersurfaces. Here we would like to comment on the relation of that work to ours. Thus, we consider Example (A) with superpotential $W = PG(X_1, \ldots, X_N)$ for which $\Gamma = \mathbf{Z}_N$ and $W_{\rm LG} = G(X_1, \ldots, X_N)$. We shall denote the correspinding Calabi-Yau hypersurface $\{G = 0\} \subset \mathbf{CP}^{N-1}$ by M_G.

Early Constructions

As backgrounds, we first list various different ways to describe the category $\mathbf{MF}(G)$ of matrix factorizations of $G(x)$, that is, the category of B-type D-branes in LG model with superpotential $G(x)$ (without orbfiold for now). The basic references for this material are Eisenbud [11] and Buchweitz [12]. See also the book [100]. The main players are finitely generated modules over the ring

$$B = \mathbf{C}[x_1, \ldots, x_N]/G(x). \tag{10.51}$$

The grading that exists in this ring, associated with the $U(1)$ gauge symmetry, plays no rôle in the present discussion.

Let us consider a matrix factorization of $G(x)$

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & f(x) \\ g(x) & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad Q(x)^2 = G(x) \cdot \mathbf{1}_{2\ell}.$$

To this, we shall associated a B-module

$$M_Q = \mathrm{coker}\left(\bar{f} : B^{\oplus \ell} \to B^{\oplus \ell}\right).$$

This is an example of a *maximal Cohen-Macaulay (MCM) module* over B. There are several ways to define the MCM condition, but for the ring B as above, it is enough to define it as a module which admits such a presentation. To the trivial matrix factorizations, $(f, g) = (1, G)$ and $(G, 1)$, we have the trivial module $M_{(1,G)} = 0$ and the free module $M_{(G,1)} = B$ respectively. The category $\mathbf{MF}(G)$ is equivalent to the category of MCM B-modules modulo the subcategory of projective modules.

As we have discussed in Section 2.4 and 10.3.1, we can also associate to a matrix factorization Q a 2-periodic exact sequence of free modules

$$\mathcal{C}_Q : \quad \cdots \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} B^{\oplus \ell} \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} B^{\oplus \ell} \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} \underline{B^{\oplus \ell}} \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} B^{\oplus \ell} \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} B^{\oplus \ell} \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} B^{\oplus \ell} \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} \cdots . \tag{10.52}$$

As a matter of convention we place the target of one of $\bar{f}$'s at degree 0 (the underlined $B^{\oplus \ell}$). This is an example of a totally acyclic complex. In general, a *totally acyclic complex* of B-modules is an exact complex of projective modules of finite ranks, whose B-dual complex is also exact. We have seen in Section 2.4 that chiral ring elements between the D-branes corresponding to two matrix factorizations, Q_1 and Q_2, are in one-to-one correspondence with homotopy classes of cochain maps of the corresponding complexes, $\mathcal{C}_{Q_1}$ and $\mathcal{C}_{Q_2}$, see (2.73). In fact, the category $\mathbf{MF}(G)$ is equivalent to the homotopy category of totally acyclic complexes of B-modules, denoted by $\mathbf{TAC}(B)$.

The MCM module M_Q "fits in the middle" of the complex $\mathcal{C}_Q$,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccccc} \cdots & \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} & B^{\oplus \ell} & \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} & B^{\oplus \ell} & \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} & \underline{B^{\oplus \ell}} & \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} & B^{\oplus \ell} & \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} & B^{\oplus \ell} & \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} & B^{\oplus \ell} & \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} & \cdots \\ & & & & & & & \searrow & \uparrow & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & & & M_Q & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & & \nearrow & & \searrow & & & & & \\ & & & & & & 0 & & & & 0 & & & & \end{array}$$

Namely, the two sequences, one ending at M_Q and the other starting with M_Q, are both exact, and the triangle in the middle commutes. In general, any MCM module fits in the middle of a totally acyclic complex. Such a complex is called the complete resolution of the MCM module.

As the final ingredient, we discuss the rôle of *perfect complexes*, that is, bounded complexes of projective modules. Let $\mathbf{D}(B)$ be the derived category of B-modules consisting of complexes with bounded cohomologies. The main claim is that the category $\mathbf{MF}(G)$ is equivalent to the derived category $\mathbf{D}(B)$ modulo the subcategory $\mathbf{P}(B)$ consisting of

perfect complexes. The functor $\mathbf{MF}(G) \to \mathbf{D}(B)/\mathbf{P}(B)$ is straighforward: To each matrix factorization Q we associate the one-term complex $M_Q[0]$. Since M_Q fits in the middle of the totally acyclic complex $\mathcal{C}_B$, this object is quasi-isomorphic to the left-half of it, $\mathcal{C}_B^{\leq 0}$, and also to a shift of the right-half, $\mathcal{C}_B^{\geq 1}[1]$. Since we are modding out by perfect complexes, we can take any position to truncate $\mathcal{C}_Q$ into a half. Namely, as the image of Q, we can take the left semi-infinite complex $\mathcal{C}_Q^{\leq j}$ or the right semi-infinite complex $\mathcal{C}_Q^{\geq j}[1]$ for any $j \in \mathbf{Z}$ — they are all isomorphic in $\mathbf{D}(B)/\mathbf{P}(B)$. The other direction $\mathbf{D}(B)/\mathbf{P}(B) \to \mathbf{MF}(G)$ is less straighforward, but the idea is simple. To each complex $\mathcal{C} \in \mathbf{D}(B)$, we first find a complex $P^{\cdot}$ of projective modules, bounded from the right, that is quasi-isomorphic to it. It is unbounded to the left unless $\mathcal{C}$ was perfect. Since it has bounded cohomologies, it is exact at low enough degrees, say, at degrees $j \leq -j_*$. Discarding a perfect part, it is isomorphic in $\mathbf{D}(B)/\mathbf{P}(B)$ to the truncated complex $P^{\cdot \leq -j_*-1}$ which is exact except at the right-most term P^{-j_*-1}. In fact, it is a truncated version of a totally acyclic complex. This gives an object of $\mathbf{TAC}(B)$ and hence of $\mathbf{MF}(G)$.

To summarize, we have equivalences of categories

$$\mathbf{MF}(G) \;\cong\; \mathbf{TAC}(B) \;\cong\; \frac{\mathbf{MCM}(B)}{\text{projectives}} \;\cong\; \mathbf{D}(B)/\mathbf{P}(B). \tag{10.53}$$

Some of these categories are naturally triangulated, and these are equivalences of triangulated categories. The part other than $\mathbf{MF}(G)$ holds also for a more general ring than (10.51), see [12]. The category $\mathbf{D}(B)/\mathbf{P}(B)$ is also discussed more recently in [101] where it is called the category of singulariries.

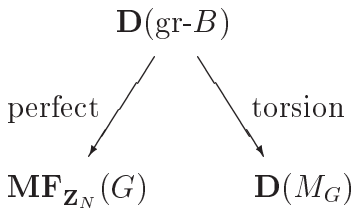
Orlov's Construction

Let us now describe the construction of [5]. The main players are finitely generated *graded* modules over the *graded* ring

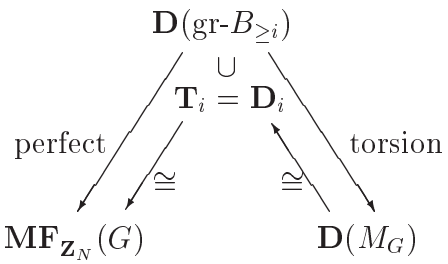
$$B = \mathbf{C}[x_1, \ldots, x_N]/G(x), \tag{10.54}$$

where the x_i's have degree 1. They form an Abelian category and we denote by $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B)$ the derived category consisting of complexes with bounded cohomologies. If we mod out these categories by the subcategories consisting of (complexes of) torsion modules, we obtain the category of coherent sheaves on the hypersurface M_G and its derived category $\mathbf{D}(M_G)$, just as in the case of toric varieties as described in Section 9. If we mod out the derived category $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B)$ by the subcategory $\mathbf{P}(\text{gr-}B)$ consisting of perfect complexes, then we obtain a category which is equivalent to $\mathbf{MF}_{\mathbf{Z}_N}(G)$. The last connection is the

graded version of (10.53) (see below for the precise mapping). Thus, we have projections to the categories of our interest:



The next step is to consider lifts of the downstairs categories, $\mathbf{MF}_{\mathbf{Z}_N}(G)$ and $\mathbf{D}(M_G)$, into the derived category of modules. To obtain a finitely generated modules for the latter, we need to choose a cut-off $i \in \mathbf{Z}$, that is, we restrict our attention to modules which are trivial at (gauge) degree less than i. There is a natural functor from $\mathbf{D}(M_G)$ to the subcategory $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B_{\geq i})$ of complexes of such modules. The image of this functor is denoted by $\mathbf{D}_i$. On the other hand, $\mathbf{MF}_{\mathbf{Z}_N}(G)$ is still obtained from $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B_{\geq i})$ by modding out by a certain subcategory $\mathbf{P}_{\geq i}$. There is a complement of $\mathbf{P}_{\geq i}$ in $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B_{\geq i})$, denoted by $\mathbf{T}_i$, which is equivalent to $\mathbf{MF}_{\mathbf{Z}_N}(G)$ under the projection functor. The precise $\mathbf{P}_{\geq i}$ and $\mathbf{T}_i$ will be described momentarily. The fact is that the two subcategroies, $\mathbf{D}_i$ and $\mathbf{T}_i$, are equal under the Calabi-Yau condition, i.e., when the degree of G is equal to the number N of variables. Thus, we have a "hat-diagram"



(10.55)

which proves the equivalence. (There is also a simple relation between $\mathbf{T}_i$ and $\mathbf{D}_i$ in the non-Calabi-Yau cases, which results in a simple relation between $\mathbf{MF}_{\mathbf{Z}_N}(G)$ and $\mathbf{D}(M_G)$.)

The subcategories $\mathbf{P}_{\geq i}$ and $\mathbf{T}_i$ of $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B_{\geq i})$ are defined as follows. $\mathbf{P}_{\geq i}$ is the category generated by free modules $B(\nu)$ for $\nu \leq -i$. (Note that the lowest degree element, 1, of $B(\nu)$ has degree $-\nu$, and therefore $B(\nu)$ belongs to $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B_{\geq i})$ if $\nu \leq -i$.) $\mathbf{T}_i$ is the "left-orthogonal" of $\mathbf{P}_{\geq i}$ in $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B_{\geq i})$, that is, the subcategory consisting of all objects $L^{\cdot}$ such that $\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B_{\geq i})}(L^{\cdot}, P^{\cdot}) = 0$ for all $P^{\cdot} \in \mathbf{P}_{\geq i}$.

In order to use this construction, we would better have some understanding of the subcategory $\mathbf{T}_i$. If we were working in the full $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B)$ without a cut-off, an example of an object in $\mathbf{T}_i$ would be $B(\nu)$ for $\nu > -i$ since there are no morphisms from $B(a)$ to $B(b)$ if $a > b$. Similarly any complex built out of the $B(\nu)$ for $\nu > -i$ would be in $\mathbf{T}_i$. The latter

remark is useful when the resulting complex happens to be quasi-isomorphic to an object in $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B_{\geq i})$ since this provides a way to construct objects in the real $\mathbf{T}_i \subset \mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B_{\geq i})$.

The Functor $\mathbf{MF}_{\mathbf{Z}_N}(G) \to \mathbf{D}(M_G)$

Let us try to explicitly evaluate the functor $\Phi_i^{\text{Orlov}} : \mathbf{MF}_{\mathbf{Z}_N}(G) \to \mathbf{D}(M_G)$ induced by the contruction (10.55). The key step is of course to find a lift of a given object in $\mathbf{MF}_{\mathbf{Z}_N}(G)$ to the subcategory $\mathbf{T}_i$. But first we need a lift to $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B)$, or more precisely, to $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B_{\geq i})$.

Let us pick a $\mathbf{Z}_N$-equivariant matrix factorization $\mathcal{B} = (\mathcal{V}, \overline{Q}, \overline{\rho}, \overline{R}) \in \mathbf{M}_{\mathbf{Z}_N}(G)$. To this we can associate a totally acyclic complex $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}$ of *graded* B-modules:

$$\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B} : \quad \cdots \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}^{-2} \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}^{-1} \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}^{0} \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}^{1} \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}^{2} \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}^{3} \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} \cdots \ . \tag{10.56}$$

Namely, we first construct the complex $\mathcal{C}_{\overline{Q}}$ of ungraded B-modules as before (10.52), and then provide it with a grading using the information of R-symmetry

$$\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}^j = \bigoplus_{\sigma_\mathbf{i}=(-1)^j} B(\tfrac{N}{2}(j - \overline{R}_\mathbf{i})), \qquad \text{for} \quad j \in \mathbf{Z}. \tag{10.57}$$

The numbers $\frac{N}{2}(j - \overline{R}_\mathbf{i})$ that appear here are all integers, since $\mathrm{e}^{2\pi i(j-\overline{R}_\mathbf{i})/2} = \sigma_\mathbf{i}\, \mathrm{e}^{-\pi i \overline{R}_\mathbf{i}}$ are eigenvalues of $\sigma_\mathcal{V}\overline{R}(\,\mathrm{e}^{-\pi i}) = \overline{\rho}(\,\mathrm{e}^{2\pi i/N})$ and hence must have order N. The complex $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}$ is 2-periodic up to a shift, $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}^{j+2} = \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}^j(N)$. As the object in $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B)/\mathbf{P}(\text{gr-}B)$ corresponding to $\mathcal{B} \in \mathbf{MF}_{\mathbf{Z}_N}(G)$ we can take the truncation of $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}$ at any position, that is, the left semi-infinite $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}^{\leq j}$ or the right semi-infinite $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}^{\geq j}[1]$ for any $j \in \mathbf{Z}$. A representative that lands in $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B_{\geq i})$ is obtained by truncating far enough to the left. For example, take the left semi-infinite complex $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}^{\leq j_0}$ with sufficiently small j_0 so that it includes only $B(\nu)$'s with $\nu < -i$.

Next, let us find an object L which lies in $\mathbf{T}_i$ and fits into a distinguished triangle

$$P \ \longrightarrow \ L \ \longrightarrow \ \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}^{\leq j_0} \tag{10.58}$$

for some $P \in \mathbf{P}_{\geq i}$. As such an L, we propose to take the left semi-infinite complex obtained from $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}$ by keeping *all* $B(\nu)$'s with $\nu \leq -i$ and discarding all higher $B(\nu)$'s. It is obviously an object of $\mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B_{\geq i})$. Also, $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}^{\leq j_0}$ is obtained from L by discarding its subcomplex P consisting of finitely many $B(\nu)$'s (with $\nu \leq -i$ of course). Thus, L indeed fits into a triangle (10.58) with $P \in \mathbf{P}_{\geq i}$. What is less obvious is that L lies in $\mathbf{T}_i$. To see this, let us consider the complement L^c of L in $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{B}$, which is a right semi-infinite

complex. Since $\mathcal{C}_B$ is exact, $L^c[1]$ is quasi-isomorphic to $L \in \mathbf{D}(\text{gr-}B_{\geq i})$. Obviously, it consists of $B(\nu)$'s with $\nu > -i$. By the remark at the end of the description of Orlov's construction, the object $L \cong L^c[1]$ belongs to $\mathbf{T}_i$. Thus, L or equivalently $L^c[1]$ is the lift of $\mathcal{B} \in \mathbf{MF}_{\mathbf{Z}_N}(G)$ that lands in $\mathbf{T}_i$.

To find its image in $\mathbf{D}(M_G)$, we just regard the complex of B-modules as a complex of vector bundles on the hypersurface M_G, by the replacement $B(\nu) \to \mathcal{O}(\nu)$.

To summarize, we have a simple way to find the large volume image of a given brane in the LG orbifold, under the functor Φ_i^{Orlov} induced by (10.55): *Take the corresponding totally acyclic complex and keep only $B(\nu)$'s with $\nu \leq -i$. (Alternatively, keep only $B(\nu)$'s with $\nu \geq -i+1$ and shift by one to the left.) Then, regard the semi-infinite complex as a complex of vector bundles on M_G.*

Comparison

This is essentially the same as the result of our transport for a certain choice of window. The key point is that for any linear sigma model lift $\mathfrak{B} = (\mathcal{V}, Q, \rho, R)$ of a brane $\mathcal{B} = (\mathcal{V}, \overline{Q}, \overline{\rho}, \overline{R})$ of the LG orbifold, the totally acyclic complex $\mathcal{C}_{\mathfrak{B}}$ that was introduced around Eqn (10.28) precisely matches with the totally acyclic complex $\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{B}}$ defined by (10.56) and (10.57). To see this, it is enough to rewrite the equation (10.14) that relates $\mathfrak{B}$ and $\mathcal{B}$ as

$$q_{\mathbf{i}} = \frac{N}{2}(R_{\mathbf{i}} - \overline{R}_{\mathbf{i}}),$$

and compare it with (10.57). The actual low energy image $(\widehat{\mathcal{E}}, \widehat{Q}) \in \mathbf{D}(M_G)$ of $\mathfrak{B}$ is obtained from the trunction of $\mathcal{C}_{\mathfrak{B}}$ that corresponds to the truncation

$$\bigoplus_{m \in \mathbf{Z}} p^m \mathcal{V} \;\; \longmapsto \;\; \widehat{\mathcal{V}} = \bigoplus_{m \geq 0} p^m \mathcal{V},$$

see (10.28) and (10.20). If the lift $\mathfrak{B}$ obeys the grade restriction rule $\{a, \ldots, a+N-1\}$, the truncation is to keep all $B(\nu)$'s with $\nu \geq a$ and to discard all lower $B(\nu)$'s. The result is precisely the image of $\mathcal{B}$ in the subcategory $\mathbf{T}_i$ with $a = -i+1$, shifted by one to the right. Note that the above grade restriction rule corresponds to to the window, $-\frac{N}{2} - a < \frac{\theta}{2\pi} < -\frac{N}{2} - a + 1$. To summarize, the functor induced by the construction (10.55) is related to ours (10.50) by

$$\Phi_i^{\text{Orlov}} = [1] \circ \Phi_\tau \tag{10.59}$$

where τ is a path through the window $i - \frac{N}{2} - 1 < \frac{\theta}{2\pi} < i - \frac{N}{2}$.

Acknowledgement

We would like to thank Denis Auroux, Alexey Bondal, Ilka Brunner, Ragnar Buchweitz, Alastair Crow, David Eisenbud, Tohru Eguchi, Matthias Gaberdiel, Dongfeng Gao, Ezra Getzler, Paul Horja, Kazuo Hosomichi, Amer Iqbal, Misha Kapranov, Anton Kapustin, Ludmil Katzarkov, Kris Kennaway, Alastair King, Yi Lin, Emil Martinec, Grisha Mikhalkin, Greg Moore, Dave Morrison, Dmitri Orlov, Mikael Passare, Hubert Saleur, David Tong, Cumrun Vafa and Johannes Walcher for useful discussions, correspondence, and earlier collaborations that are relevant to the present work. We especially want to thank Ragnar Buchweitz for patient and clear explanations on homological algebra and other mathematics, from the very basic to advanced.

We are grateful to the Fields Institute, Toronto and the Perimeter Institute, Waterloo, as well as the coorganizers of a program there, "The Geometry of String Theory" (2004-2005), which brought the authors together. We are happy to thank the participants of the program for fruitful conversations.

All three of us also thank MSRI and the town of Berkeley, California, along with the organizers of the workshop "Generalized McKay correspondences and representation theory" (March 2006) where great progress was made. For the same reason, M.H. and K.H. thank KITP, Santa Barbara (August 2005), ESI, Wien (June 2006), LMU, Munchen (July 2006), IAS, Princeton (January 2007), EPFL, Lausanne (September 2007) and the organizers of the workshops that were held there.

M.H. wants to thank the string theory group at DESY, Hamburg, including Yasuaki Hikida, Yuji Okawa, Ioannis Papadimitriou, Sylvain Ribault, Volker Schomerus, Jörg Teschner, for valuable discussions. An essential part of his contribution to this work was done during the time at DESY. M.H. further wants to thank MPRG, Philadelphia (September 2005), CERN, Geneva (January and October 2006), University of Toronto (March 2006), Trinity College, Dublin (March 2007), ETH, Zürich (March 2007), ASC, Munich (May 2007), CSF, Ascona (August 2007), University of Augsburg (February 2008) and MPI, Potsdam (March 2008) for hospitality during his visit.

K.H. thanks CEA Saclay, Paris for warm hospitality during his visit (May-June 2006), as well as other places, in particular, KdV Institute, Amsterdam (July 2006), DESY, Hamburg (July 2006), ETH, Zürich (July 2006 and September 2007), BIRS, Banff (March 2007 and October 2005), Aspen Center for Physics, Aspen (Summer 2007) and RIMS, Kyoto (December 2007) where crucial progress was made. K.H. is supported also by NSERC and the Alfred P. Sloan Foundation.

A Supersymmetry

Here we record the supersymmetry variation of the bulk action.

A.1 Non-Linear Sigma Models And Landau-Ginzburg Models

We consider the non-linear sigma model on a Kähler manifold (M, g) with a superpotential W. We suppose that the metric is given in terms of a Kähler potential K in a coordinate patch, $g_{i\overline{\jmath}} = \partial_i \partial_{\overline{\jmath}} K$. The bulk Lagrangian is the sum of the following two terms (no partial integration to be used):

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{L}_K &= \int K(\Phi, \overline{\Phi}) \mathrm{d}^4\theta + \partial_+ \partial_- K(\phi, \overline{\phi}) \\
&= 2 g_{i\overline{\jmath}} \left(\partial_+ \phi^i \partial_- \overline{\phi}^{\overline{\jmath}} + \partial_- \phi^i \partial_+ \overline{\phi}^{\overline{\jmath}} + i \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_- \overleftrightarrow{D}_+ \psi^i_- + i \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_+ \overleftrightarrow{D}_- \psi^i_+ \right) + R_{i\overline{\jmath}k\overline{l}} \psi^i_+ \psi^k_- \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_- \overline{\psi}^{\overline{l}}_+ \\
&\quad + g_{i\overline{\jmath}} \widetilde{F}^i \overline{\widetilde{F}}^{\overline{\jmath}} \qquad \text{(A.1)} \\
&= g_{i\overline{\jmath}} \left(\partial_0 \phi^i \partial_0 \overline{\phi}^{\overline{\jmath}} - \partial_1 \phi^i \partial_1 \overline{\phi}^{\overline{\jmath}} + i \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_- (\overleftrightarrow{D}_0 + \overleftrightarrow{D}_1) \psi^i_- + i \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_+ (\overleftrightarrow{D}_0 - \overleftrightarrow{D}_1) \psi^i_+ \right) \\
&\quad + R_{i\overline{\jmath}k\overline{l}} \psi^i_+ \psi^k_- \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_- \overline{\psi}^{\overline{l}}_+ + g_{i\overline{\jmath}} \widetilde{F}^i \overline{\widetilde{F}}^{\overline{\jmath}} \\
\mathcal{L}_W &= \frac{1}{2} \int W(\Phi) \mathrm{d}^2\theta \ + \ c.c. \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \left(F^i \partial_i W(\phi) - \partial_i \partial_j W(\phi) \psi^i_+ \psi^j_- \ + \ c.c. \right) \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \left(\widetilde{F}^i \partial_i W(\phi) - D_i \partial_j W(\phi) \psi^i_+ \psi^j_- \ + \ c.c. \right) \qquad \text{(A.2)}
\end{aligned}$$

Here $\widetilde{F}^i$ are the covariantized auxiliary fields

$$\widetilde{F}^i = F^i - \Gamma^i_{jk} \psi^j_+ \psi^k_- . \qquad \text{(A.3)}$$

Under $(2,2)$ supersymmetry transformation $\delta = i\epsilon_+ \mathbf{Q}_- - i\epsilon_- \mathbf{Q}_+ - i\overline{\epsilon}_+ \overline{\mathbf{Q}}_- + i\overline{\epsilon}_- \overline{\mathbf{Q}}_+$,

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta\phi^i &= \epsilon_+ \psi^i_- - \epsilon_- \psi^i_+ , \\
\psi^i_\pm &= \pm 2i\overline{\epsilon}_\mp \partial_\pm \phi^i + \epsilon_\pm F^i , \qquad \text{(A.4)} \\
\delta F^i &= -2i\overline{\epsilon}_+ \partial_- \psi^i_+ - 2i\overline{\epsilon}_- \partial_+ \psi^i_- ,
\end{aligned}$$

$\mathcal{L}_K$ and $\mathcal{L}_W$ transform as

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta\mathcal{L}_K &= \partial_- \left[\epsilon_+ g_{i\overline{\jmath}} \left(2\psi^i_- \partial_+ \overline{\phi}^{\overline{\jmath}} - i \widetilde{F}^i \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_+ \right) \right] - \partial_+ \left[\epsilon_- g_{i\overline{\jmath}} \left(2\psi^i_+ \partial_- \overline{\phi}^{\overline{\jmath}} + i \widetilde{F}^i \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_- \right) \right] \\
&\quad + \partial_+ \epsilon_+ \left[4 g_{ij} \psi^i_- \partial_- \overline{\phi}^{\overline{\jmath}} \right] - \partial_- \epsilon_- \left[4 g_{ij} \psi^i_+ \partial_+ \overline{\phi}^{\overline{\jmath}} \right] \ + \ c.c. \qquad \text{(A.5)} \\
\delta\mathcal{L}_W &= -\epsilon_+ \partial_- \left[i \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\imath}}_+ \partial_{\overline{\imath}} \overline{W} \right] - \epsilon_- \partial_+ \left[i \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\imath}}_- \partial_{\overline{\imath}} \overline{W} \right] \ + \ c.c. \qquad \text{(A.6)}
\end{aligned}$$

We see that the supercurrent $G^\mu_\pm, \overline{G}^\mu_\pm$ defined by

$$\delta S = \int \mathrm{d}^2x \, (\partial_\mu \epsilon_+ G^\mu_- - \partial_\mu \epsilon_- G^\mu_+ \ + \ c.c.)$$

is given by

$$G^\mu_- : \qquad G^+_- = 4g_{i\overline{\jmath}}\psi^i_- \partial_- \overline{\phi}^{\overline{\jmath}}, \ \ G^-_- = i\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\imath}}_+ \partial_{\overline{\imath}} \overline{W}, \tag{A.7}$$

$$G^\mu_+ : \qquad G^+_+ = -i\overline{\psi}^{\overline{\imath}}_- \partial_{\overline{\imath}} \overline{W}, \ \ G^-_+ = 4g_{i\overline{\jmath}}\psi^i_+ \partial_+ \overline{\phi}^{\overline{\jmath}}. \tag{A.8}$$

Let us formulate this theory on the left half space $\mathbb{S} = \{(t,s) | s \leq 0\}$ which has one timelike boundary line at $s = 0$. We focus on the $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ supersymmetry generated by $\mathbf{Q} = \overline{\mathbf{Q}}_+ + \overline{\mathbf{Q}}$, $\mathbf{Q}^\dagger = \mathbf{Q}_+ + \mathbf{Q}$. The corresponding variation $\delta = i\epsilon \mathbf{Q}^\dagger - i\overline{\epsilon}\mathbf{Q}$ is obtained from the $(2,2)$ variation by setting

$$\epsilon_+ = -\epsilon_- = \epsilon, \qquad \overline{\epsilon}_+ = -\overline{\epsilon}_- = \overline{\epsilon}.$$

The bulk action variation is found from (A.5)-(A.6):

$$\delta S_{\text{bulk}} = \mathrm{Re} \int_{\partial \mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t \, \overline{\epsilon} \left(2g_{i\overline{\jmath}} \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_- \partial_+ \phi^i - 2g_{i\overline{\jmath}} \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_+ \partial_- \phi^i + i g_{i\overline{\jmath}} \overline{\widetilde{F}}^{\overline{\jmath}} (\psi^i_+ + \psi^i_-) + i(\psi^i_+ + \psi^i_-) \partial_i W \right). \tag{A.9}$$

The standard boundary term is defined by

$$L^{(0)}_{\text{bdry}} = -\frac{i}{2} g_{i\overline{\jmath}} \left(\psi^i_+ \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_- + \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_+ \psi^i_- \right) \tag{A.10}$$

and its $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ variation is

$$\delta L^{(0)}_{\text{bdry}} = \mathrm{Re} \left[\overline{\epsilon} \left(+2g_{i\overline{\jmath}} \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_+ \partial_- \phi^i - 2g_{i\overline{\jmath}} \overline{\psi}^{\overline{\jmath}}_- \partial_+ \phi^i - i g_{i\overline{\jmath}} \overline{\widetilde{F}}^{\overline{\jmath}} (\psi^i_+ + \psi^i_-) \right) \right] \tag{A.11}$$

The sum of (A.9) and (A.11) is simply

$$\delta S_{\text{bulk}} + \delta \int_{\partial \mathbb{S}} L^{(0)}_{\text{bdry}} = \mathrm{Re} \int_{\partial \mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t \, \overline{\epsilon} \Big(i(\psi^i_+ + \psi^i_-) \partial_i W \Big). \tag{A.12}$$

This is the Warner term [32].

A.2 Linear Sigma Model

The gauge kinetic term, the matter kinetic term and the FI-theta term are given by

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{L}_{\rm g} &= \int \mathrm{d}^4\theta \left(-\frac{1}{2e^2}\overline{\Sigma}\Sigma\right) + \text{total derivative} \\
&= \frac{1}{2e^2}\left[|\partial_0\sigma|^2 - |\partial_1\sigma|^2 + i\overline{\lambda}_-(\overleftrightarrow{\partial}_0 + \overleftrightarrow{\partial}_1)\lambda_- + i\overline{\lambda}_+(\overleftrightarrow{\partial}_0 - \overleftrightarrow{\partial}_1)\lambda_+ + v_{01}^2 + D^2\right],
\end{aligned} \tag{A.13}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{L}_{\rm m} &= \int \mathrm{d}^4\theta\ \overline{\Phi}\,\mathrm{e}^V\Phi + \text{total derivative} \\
&= |D_0\phi|^2 - |D_1\phi|^2 + i\overline{\psi}_-(\overleftrightarrow{D_0} + \overleftrightarrow{D_1})\psi_- + i\overline{\psi}_+(\overleftrightarrow{D_0} - \overleftrightarrow{D_1})\psi_+ + \overline{\phi}D\phi + |F|^2 \\
&\quad -|\sigma\phi|^2 - \overline{\psi}_-\sigma\psi_+ - \overline{\psi}_+\overline{\sigma}\psi_- - i\overline{\phi}\lambda_-\psi_+ + i\overline{\phi}\lambda_+\psi_- + i\overline{\psi}_+\overline{\lambda}_-\phi - i\overline{\psi}_-\overline{\lambda}_+\phi,
\end{aligned} \tag{A.14}$$

$$\mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{FI}\,\theta} = \mathrm{Re}\int \mathrm{d}^2\widetilde{\theta}\Big(-t\Sigma\Big) = -rD + \theta v_{01}. \tag{A.15}$$

Only the special case of $T = U(1)$ and with just one charge 1 matter field is presented, since the generalization is obvious. The superpotential term is

$$\mathcal{L}_W = \mathrm{Re}\int \mathrm{d}^2\theta\, W(\Phi) = \mathrm{Re}\left[\ \sum_{i=1}^{N} F_i\frac{\partial W}{\partial\phi_i}(\phi) - \sum_{i,j=1}^{N}\frac{\partial^2 W}{\partial\phi_i\partial\phi_j}(\phi)\psi_+^i\psi_-^j\ \right]. \tag{A.16}$$

The $(2,2)$ supersymmetry transformation of the component fields is given by (where $v_\pm := \frac{1}{2}(v_0 \pm v_1)$)

$$\begin{aligned}
&\delta v_\pm = \frac{i}{2}\overline{\epsilon}_\pm\lambda_\pm + \frac{i}{2}\epsilon_\pm\overline{\lambda}_\pm, \\
&\delta\sigma = -i\overline{\epsilon}_+\lambda_- - i\epsilon_-\overline{\lambda}_+, \\
&\delta D = \frac{1}{2}\Big(-\overline{\epsilon}_+(\partial_0 - \partial_1)\lambda_+ - \overline{\epsilon}_-(\partial_0 + \partial_1)\lambda_- + \epsilon_+(\partial_0 - \partial_1)\overline{\lambda}_+ + \epsilon_-(\partial_0 + \partial_1)\overline{\lambda}_-\Big). \\
&\delta\lambda_+ = i\epsilon_+(D + iv_{01}) + \epsilon_-(\partial_0 + \partial_1)\overline{\sigma}, \\
&\delta\lambda_- = i\epsilon_-(D - iv_{01}) + \epsilon_+(\partial_0 - \partial_1)\sigma,
\end{aligned} \tag{A.17}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
&\delta\phi = \epsilon_+\psi_- - \epsilon_-\psi_+, \\
&\delta\psi_+ = i\overline{\epsilon}_-(D_0 + D_1)\phi + \epsilon_+F - \overline{\epsilon}_+\overline{\sigma}\phi, \\
&\delta\psi_- = -i\overline{\epsilon}_+(D_0 - D_1)\phi + \epsilon_-F + \overline{\epsilon}_-\sigma\phi, \\
&\delta F = -i\overline{\epsilon}_+(D_0 - D_1)\psi_+ - i\overline{\epsilon}_-(D_0 + D_1)\psi_- + (\overline{\epsilon}_+\overline{\sigma}\psi_- + \overline{\epsilon}_-\sigma\psi_+) + i(\overline{\epsilon}_-\overline{\lambda}_+ - \overline{\epsilon}_+\overline{\lambda}_-)\phi.
\end{aligned} \tag{A.18}$$

Under this, the Lagrangians vary as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta\mathcal{L}_{\rm g} &= \partial_+\epsilon_+\left(-\frac{2i}{e^2}\overline{\lambda}_-\partial_-\sigma\right)-\partial_-\epsilon_-\left(\frac{2i}{e^2}\overline{\lambda}_+\partial_+\overline{\sigma}\right)+\partial_-\epsilon_+\left(\frac{i}{e^2}v_{01}\overline{\lambda}_+\right)-\partial_+\epsilon_-\left(\frac{i}{e^2}v_{01}\overline{\lambda}_-\right)\\
&\quad+\partial_-\left[\frac{\epsilon_+}{2e^2}\left(-2i\overline{\lambda}_-\partial_+\sigma+\overline{\lambda}_+(D+iv_{01})\right)\right]-\partial_+\left[\frac{\epsilon_-}{2e^2}\left(2i\overline{\lambda}_+\partial_-\overline{\sigma}-\overline{\lambda}_-(D-iv_{01})\right)\right]\\
&\quad+c.c. \qquad\qquad (A.19)\\
\delta\mathcal{L}_m &= \partial_+\epsilon_+4D_-\overline{\phi}\psi_- -\partial_-\epsilon_-4D_+\overline{\phi}\psi_+ +\partial_-\epsilon_+(-\overline{\phi\lambda}_+\phi)-\partial_+\epsilon_-\overline{\phi\lambda}_-\phi\\
&\quad+\partial_-\left[\epsilon_+\left(2D_+\overline{\phi}\psi_- +\overline{\phi\lambda}_+\phi-i\overline{\phi}\sigma\psi_+ -i\overline{\psi}_+F\right)\right]\\
&\quad-\partial_+\left[\epsilon_-\left(2D_-\overline{\phi}\psi_+ -\overline{\phi\lambda}_-\phi-i\overline{\phi}\overline{\sigma}\psi_- +i\overline{\psi}_-F\right)\right]\\
&\quad+c.c. \qquad\qquad (A.20)\\
\delta\mathcal{L}_{{\rm FI},\theta} &= \partial_-\epsilon_+(r\overline{\lambda}_+)-\partial_+\epsilon_-(-r\overline{\lambda}_-)+\partial_-\left[-t\epsilon_+\overline{\lambda}_+\right]-\partial_+\left[\overline{t}\epsilon_-\overline{\lambda}_-\right]\\
&\quad+c.c. \qquad\qquad (A.21)\\
\delta\mathcal{L}_W &= \partial_-\epsilon_+\left(i\overline{\psi}_+^{\overline{\imath}}\partial_{\overline{\imath}}\overline{W}\right)-\partial_+\epsilon_-\left(-i\overline{\psi}_-^{\overline{\imath}}\partial_{\overline{\imath}}\overline{W}\right)\\
&\quad+\partial_-\left(-i\epsilon_+\overline{\psi}_+^{\overline{\imath}}\partial_{\overline{\imath}}\overline{W}\right)-\partial_+\left(i\epsilon_-\overline{\psi}_-^{\overline{\imath}}\partial_{\overline{\imath}}\overline{W}\right)\\
&\quad+c.c. \qquad\qquad (A.22)
\end{aligned}$$

This shows that the supercurrent is given by

$$G_-^+ = -\frac{2i}{e^2}\overline{\lambda}_-\partial_-\sigma+4D_-\overline{\phi}\psi_- \qquad (A.23)$$

$$G_-^- = \left(r-|\phi|^2+\frac{i}{e^2}v_{01}\right)\overline{\lambda}_+ +i\overline{\psi}_+^{\overline{\imath}}\partial_{\overline{\imath}}\overline{W}, \qquad (A.24)$$

$$G_+^+ = -\left(r-|\phi|^2-\frac{i}{e^2}v_{01}\right)\overline{\lambda}_- -i\overline{\psi}_-^{\overline{\imath}}\partial_{\overline{\imath}}\overline{W}, \qquad (A.25)$$

$$G_+^- = \frac{2i}{e^2}\overline{\lambda}_+\partial_+\overline{\sigma}+4D_+\overline{\phi}\psi_+. \qquad (A.26)$$

Let us formulate the model on the left-half space $\mathbb{S}$ and consider the $\mathcal{N}=2_B$ super-

symmetry $\epsilon_\pm = \pm\epsilon$, $\overline{\epsilon}_\pm = \pm\overline{\epsilon}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta v_0 &= \frac{i}{2}\overline{\epsilon}(\lambda_+ - \lambda_-) + \frac{i}{2}\epsilon(\overline{\lambda}_+ - \overline{\lambda}_-),\\
\delta v_1 &= \frac{i}{2}\overline{\epsilon}(\lambda_+ + \lambda_-) + \frac{i}{2}\epsilon(\overline{\lambda}_+ + \overline{\lambda}_-),\\
\delta\sigma &= -i\overline{\epsilon}\lambda_- + i\epsilon\overline{\lambda}_+,\\
\delta D &= -\overline{\epsilon}\partial_-\lambda_+ + \overline{\epsilon}\partial_+\lambda_- + \epsilon\partial_-\overline{\lambda}_+ - \epsilon\partial_+\overline{\lambda}_-,\\
\delta\lambda_+ &= i\epsilon(D + iv_{01} + 2i\partial_+\overline{\sigma}),\\
\delta\lambda_- &= -i\epsilon(D - iv_{01} + 2i\partial_-\sigma).\\
\delta\phi &= \epsilon(\psi_+ + \psi_-),\\
\delta\psi_+ &= -i\overline{\epsilon}(D_0 + D_1)\phi + \epsilon F - \overline{\epsilon\sigma}\phi,\\
\delta\psi_- &= -i\overline{\epsilon}(D_0 - D_1)\phi - \epsilon F - \overline{\epsilon}\sigma\phi,\\
\delta F &= -i\overline{\epsilon}(D_0 - D_1)\psi_+ + i\overline{\epsilon}(D_0 + D_1)\psi_- + \overline{\epsilon\sigma}\psi_- - \overline{\epsilon}\sigma\psi_+ - i\overline{\epsilon}(\overline{\lambda}_+ + \overline{\lambda}_-)\phi,
\end{aligned} \tag{A.27}$$

The variation of the terms of the action can be easily read from (A.19)-(A.22).

Gauge kinetic term Variation of the gauge kinetic term can be written succinctly in terms of the $\mathcal{N} = 2_B$ boundary superspace [9, 10] as

$$\delta\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}^2 s\, \mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{g}} = -\frac{1}{2\pi}\mathrm{Re}\left[\frac{i}{2e^2}\int_{\partial_B\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t\mathrm{d}\theta\, \overline{\epsilon}\,\overline{D}\Sigma\overline{D\Sigma}\right]. \tag{A.28}$$

The following counter term can cancel it:

$$S_{\mathrm{g}}^{\mathrm{c.t.}} = -\frac{1}{2\pi}\mathrm{Re}\int_{\partial_B\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t\mathrm{d}\theta\, \left(\sum_i a_i\overline{D}b_i\right) \tag{A.29}$$

where a_i and b_i are functions of Σ and $\overline{\Sigma}$ such that

$$\Theta := \sum_i a_i\mathrm{d}b_i \quad \text{obeys} \quad \mathrm{d}\Theta = \frac{i}{2e^2}\mathrm{d}\sigma\wedge\mathrm{d}\overline{\sigma}.$$

The boundary counter term in (5.2) corresponds to the choice $\Theta = \frac{i}{4e^2}\left(\sigma\mathrm{d}\overline{\sigma} - \overline{\sigma}\mathrm{d}\sigma\right)$. Other choice of Θ differs from this by an exact 1-form and hence the corresponding counter term differs from (5.2) by a boundary D-term.

Matter kinetic term Variation of the matter kinetic term is

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}^2 s\, \mathcal{L}_{\mathrm{m}} \;=\; \frac{1}{2\pi}\mathrm{Re}\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} \mathrm{d}t\,\overline{\epsilon}\Big[&\overline{\phi}(\lambda_+ + \lambda_-)\phi + \overline{\psi}_-(D_0 + D_1)\phi - \overline{\psi}_+(D_0 - D_1)\phi\\
&+ i\overline{\psi}_+\overline{\sigma}\phi - i\overline{\psi}_-\sigma\phi + i\overline{F}(\psi_+ + \psi_-)\Big]
\end{aligned} \tag{A.30}$$

This is canceled by a simple boundary Lagrangian

$$S_{\rm m}^{\rm c.t.} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} {\rm d}t\ \left[\frac{i}{2}(\overline{\psi}_-\psi_+ - \overline{\psi}_+\psi_-) - \frac{i}{2}\overline{\phi}(\sigma-\overline{\sigma})\phi\right]. \tag{A.31}$$

FI-theta term Variation of the FI-theta term is

$$\delta\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\mathbb{S}} {\rm d}^2 s\,\mathcal{L}_{{\rm FI}\,\theta} = \frac{1}{2\pi}{\rm Re}\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} {\rm d}t\ \left[t\epsilon\overline{\lambda}_+ - t\overline{\epsilon}\lambda_-\right] = \frac{1}{2\pi}{\rm Im}\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} {\rm d}t\,(t\delta\sigma) \tag{A.32}$$

This is cancelled by the variation of the counter term

$$S_{{\rm FI}\,\theta}^{\rm c.t.} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\partial\mathbb{S}} {\rm d}t\,{\rm Im}\Big(-t\sigma\Big), \tag{A.33}$$

References

[1] I. Brunner, M. R. Douglas, A. E. Lawrence and C. Romelsberger, "D-branes on the quintic," JHEP **0008** (2000) 015 [arXiv:hep-th/9906200].

[2] E. Witten, "Phases of N = 2 theories in two dimensions," Nucl. Phys. B **403** (1993) 159 [arXiv:hep-th/9301042].

[3] M. Kontsevich, "Homological Algebra of Mirror Symmetry," arXiv:alg-geom/9411018.

[4] T. Bridgeland, A. King and M. Reid, "The Mckay Correspondence As An Equivalence Of Derived Categories," J. Am. Math. Soc. **14**, 535 (2001).

[5] D. Orlov, "Derived categories of coherent sheaves and triangulated categories of singularities," [arXiv:math/0503632].

[6] M. R. Douglas, "D-branes, categories and N = 1 supersymmetry," J. Math. Phys. **42** (2001) 2818 [hep-th/0011017].

[7] K. Hori, A. Iqbal and C. Vafa, "D-branes and mirror symmetry," arXiv:hep-th/0005247.

[8] S. Govindarajan, T. Jayaraman and T. Sarkar, "On D-branes from gauged linear sigma models," Nucl. Phys. B **593** (2001) 155 [arXiv:hep-th/0007075].

[9] K. Hori, "Linear models of supersymmetric D-branes", In: *Symplectic geometry and mirror symmetry*, 111–186 (World-Scientific, 2001); hep-th/0012179.

[10] S. Hellerman, S. Kachru, A. E. Lawrence and J. McGreevy, "Linear sigma models for open strings," JHEP **0207** (2002) 002 [arXiv:hep-th/0109069].

[11] D. Eisenbud, "Homological Algebra on a Complete Intersection, with an Application to Group Representations," Transactions of the American Mathematical Society, **260**, 35 (1980), No. 1

[12] Ragnar-Olaf Buchweitz, "Maximal Cohen-Macaulay Modules And Tate-Cohomology Over Gorenstein Rings", preprint, 1987.

[13] M. B. Green, J. H. Schwarz and E. Witten, *Superstring theory. Vol. 1: Introduction*, (Cambridge University Press, 1987).

[14] T. Takayanagi, S. Terashima and T. Uesugi, "Brane-antibrane action from boundary string field theory," JHEP **0103** (2001) 019 hep-th/0012210.

[15] P. Kraus and F. Larsen, "Boundary string field theory of the DD-bar system," Phys. Rev. D **63** (2001) 106004 hep-th/0012198.

[16] D. Quillen, "Superconnections and the Chern character," Topology **24** (1985) 89–95.

[17] E. Witten, "Chern-Simons Gauge Theory As A String Theory," Prog. Math. **133** (1995) 637 [arXiv:hep-th/9207094].

[18] C. I. Lazaroiu, "Generalized complexes and string field theory," JHEP **0106** (2001) 052 [arXiv:hep-th/0102122].

[19] D. E. Diaconescu, "Enhanced D-brane categories from string field theory," JHEP **0106** (2001) 016 [arXiv:hep-th/0104200].

[20] A. I. Bondal and M. M. Kapranov, "Enhanced Triangulated Category", Math. USSR Sbornik, Vol.70 (1991) 93–107.

[21] E. Witten, "Some comments on string dynamics," arXiv:hep-th/9507121.

[22] D. Friedan, E. J. Martinec and S. H. Shenker, "Conformal Invariance, Supersymmetry And String Theory," Nucl. Phys. B **271** (1986) 93.

[23] H. Ooguri, Y. Oz and Z. Yin, "D-branes on Calabi-Yau spaces and their mirrors," Nucl. Phys. B **477** (1996) 407 [arXiv:hep-th/9606112].

[24] S.I. Gelfand and Yu.I. Manin, *Mathods of homological algebra*, (Springer, 2002).

[25] E. R. Sharpe, "D-branes, derived categories, and Grothendieck groups," Nucl. Phys. B **561** (1999) 433 [arXiv:hep-th/9902116].

[26] A. Bondal and A. Rosly, to appear; a talk by A. Bondal, "Derived categories of complex analytic manifolds" in workshop *Categorical Aspects of Algebraic Geometry in Mirror Symmetry*, RIMS, Kyoto, December 3-7, 2007.

[27] J. Block, "Duality and Equivalence of Module Categories in Noncommutative Geometry I", arXiv:math/0509284.

[28] L. J. Dixon, J. A. Harvey, C. Vafa and E. Witten, "Strings On Orbifolds," Nucl. Phys. B **261** (1985) 678.

[29] M. R. Douglas and G. W. Moore, "D-branes, Quivers, and ALE Instantons," arXiv:hep-th/9603167.

[30] D. E. Diaconescu, M. R. Douglas and J. Gomis, "Fractional branes and wrapped branes," JHEP **9802**, 013 (1998) [arXiv:hep-th/9712230].

[31] D. E. Diaconescu and J. Gomis, "Fractional branes and boundary states in orbifold theories," JHEP **0010** (2000) 001 [arXiv:hep-th/9906242].

[32] N. P. Warner, "Supersymmetry in boundary integrable models," Nucl. Phys. B **450** (1995) 663, hep-th/9506064.

[33] A. Kapustin and Y. Li, "D-branes in Landau-Ginzburg models and algebraic geometry," JHEP **0312** (2003) 005 [arXiv:hep-th/0210296].

[34] K. Hori and J. Walcher, "F-term equations near Gepner points," JHEP **0501** (2005) 008 [arXiv:hep-th/0404196].

[35] J. L. Cardy, "Boundary Conditions, Fusion Rules And The Verlinde Formula," Nucl. Phys. B **324** (1989) 581.

[36] J. M. Maldacena, G. W. Moore and N. Seiberg, "Geometrical interpretation of D-branes in gauged WZW models," JHEP **0107** (2001) 046 [arXiv:hep-th/0105038].

[37] I. Brunner and K. Hori, "Orientifolds and mirror symmetry," JHEP **0411** (2004) 005 [arXiv:hep-th/0303135].

[38] I. Brunner, M. Herbst, W. Lerche and B. Scheuner, "Landau-Ginzburg realization of open string TFT," JHEP **0611** (2006) 043 [arXiv:hep-th/0305133].

[39] A. Kapustin and Y. Li, "Topological correlators in Landau-Ginzburg models with boundaries," Adv. Theor. Math. Phys. **7** (2004) 727 [arXiv:hep-th/0305136].

[40] K. Hori, "Boundary RG flows of N = 2 minimal models," In: *Mirror Symmetry V*, 381–404 (AMS/International Press, 2006); arXiv:hep-th/0401139.

[41] J. Walcher, "Stability of Landau-Ginzburg branes," hep-th/0412274.

[42] A. Recknagel and V. Schomerus, "D-branes in Gepner models," Nucl. Phys. B **531** (1998) 185 [arXiv:hep-th/9712186].

[43] I. Brunner, K. Hori, K. Hosomichi and J. Walcher, "Orientifolds of Gepner models," JHEP **0702** (2007) 001 [arXiv:hep-th/0401137].

[44] S. K. Ashok, E. Dell'Aquila and D. E. Diaconescu, "Fractional branes in Landau-Ginzburg orbifolds," Adv. Theor. Math. Phys. **8** (2004) 461 [arXiv:hep-th/0401135].

[45] C. Caviezel, S. Fredenhagen and M. R. Gaberdiel, "The RR charges of A-type Gepner models," JHEP **0601** (2006) 111 [arXiv:hep-th/0511078].

[46] A. Sen, "Tachyon condensation on the brane antibrane system," JHEP **9808** (1998) 012 [arXiv:hep-th/9805170];
"Non-BPS states and branes in string theory," arXiv:hep-th/9904207.

[47] J. A. Harvey, D. Kutasov and E. J. Martinec, "On the relevance of tachyons," arXiv:hep-th/0003101.

[48] A. A. Gerasimov and S. L. Shatashvili, "On exact tachyon potential in open string field theory," JHEP **0010** (2000) 034 [arXiv:hep-th/0009103];
D. Kutasov, M. Marino and G. W. Moore, "Some exact results on tachyon condensation in string field theory," JHEP **0010** (2000) 045 [arXiv:hep-th/0009148].

[49] I. Affleck, M. Dine and N. Seiberg, "Dynamical Supersymmetry Breaking In Four-Dimensions And Its Phenomenological Implications," Nucl. Phys. B **256** (1985) 557.

[50] K. Hori, S. Katz, A. Klemm, R. Pandharipande, R. Thomas, C. Vafa, R. Vakil and E. Zaslow, *Mirror Symmetry*, Clay Mathematics Monograph 1 (AMS, 2003).

[51] E. Witten, "D-branes and K-theory," JHEP **9812** (1998) 019 [arXiv:hep-th/9810188].

[52] M. R. Gaberdiel and A. Lawrence, "Bulk perturbations of N = 2 branes," JHEP **0705** (2007) 087 [arXiv:hep-th/0702036];
I. Brunner and D. Roggenkamp, "Defects and Bulk Perturbations of Boundary Landau-Ginzburg Orbifolds," arXiv:0712.0188 [hep-th].

[53] H. Knörrer, "Cohen-Macaulay modules on hypersurface singularities. I" Invent. Math. **88** (1987) 153-164.

[54] K. Hori, "D-branes, T-duality, and index theory," Adv. Theor. Math. Phys. **3** (1999) 281 [arXiv:hep-th/9902102].

[55] E. Witten, "Overview of K-theory applied to strings," Int. J. Mod. Phys. A **16** (2001) 693 [arXiv:hep-th/0007175].

[56] E. Sharpe, "Derived categories and stacks in physics," arXiv:hep-th/0608056.

[57] S. R. Coleman, "More About The Massive Schwinger Model," Annals Phys. **101** (1976) 239.

[58] D. R. Morrison and M. Ronen Plesser, "Summing the instantons: Quantum cohomology and mirror symmetry in toric varieties," Nucl. Phys. B **440** (1995) 279 [arXiv:hep-th/9412236].

[59] I. M. Gelfand, M. M. Kapranov, A. Z. Zelevinsky, *Discriminants, resultants, and multidimensional determinants*, Mathematics: Theory & Applications. Birkhäuser Boston, Inc. (Boston, 1994).

[60] M. Passare and A. Tsikh, to appear; a talk by M. Passare in conference *Asymptotic and Effective Results in Complex Geometry*, Johns Hopkins (Baltimore), March 15–21, 2004.

[61] B. Feng, Y. H. He, K. D. Kennaway and C. Vafa, "Dimer models from mirror symmetry and quivering amoebae," arXiv:hep-th/0511287.

[62] M. F. Atiyah, "Convexity and Commuting Hamiltonians", Bull. London Math. Soc., **14** (1982) 1–15;
V. Guillemin and S. Sternberg, "Convexity properties of the moment mapping", Invent. Math., **67** (1982) 491–513.

[63] A. Abouelsaood, C. G. . Callan, C. R. Nappi and S. A. Yost, "Open Strings In Background Gauge Fields," Nucl. Phys. B **280** (1987) 599.

[64] H. Dorn and H. J. Otto, "Open Bosonic Strings In General Background Fields," Z. Phys. C **32** (1986) 599;
A. A. Tseytlin, "Renormalization of Mobius Infinities and Partition Function Representation for String Theory Effective Action," Phys. Lett. B **202** (1988) 81.

[65] M. Bordag, H. Falomir, E. M. Santangelo and D. V. Vassilevich, "Boundary dynamics and multiple reflection expansion for Robin boundary conditions," Phys. Rev. D **65** (2002) 064032 [arXiv:hep-th/0111073].

[66] L. D. Faddeev, "The Feynman Integral For Singular Lagrangians," Theor. Math. Phys. 1 (1969) 1-13.

[67] S. Govindarajan, T. Jayaraman and T. Sarkar, "Worldsheet approaches to D-branes on supersymmetric cycles," Nucl. Phys. B **580** (2000) 519 [arXiv:hep-th/9907131].

[68] A. Kapustin and D. Orlov, "Remarks on A-branes, mirror symmetry, and the Fukaya category," J. Geom. Phys. **48** (2003) 84 [arXiv:hep-th/0109098].

[69] E. A. Mirabelli and M. E. Peskin, "Transmission of supersymmetry breaking from a 4-dimensional boundary," Phys. Rev. D **58** (1998) 065002 [arXiv:hep-th/9712214].

[70] D. Auroux, L. Katzarkov and D. Orlov, "Mirror symmetry for weighted projective planes and their noncommutative deformations", arXiv:math.AG/0404281, to appear in Ann. Math.

[71] A. Strominger, "Massless black holes and conifolds in string theory," Nucl. Phys. B **451**, 96 (1995) [arXiv:hep-th/9504090].

[72] P. Seidel and R. Thomas, "Braid group actions on derived categories of coherent sheaves," arXiv:math/0001043; Duke Math. Jour. **108** (2001) 37–108.

[73] R. P. Horja, "Hypergeometric functions and Mirror Symmetry in Toric Varieties," [arXiv:math.AG/9912109].

[74] P. S. Aspinwall and M. R. Douglas, "D-brane stability and monodromy," JHEP **0205**, 031 (2002) [arXiv:hep-th/0110071].

[75] P. S. Aspinwall, R. L. Karp and R. P. Horja, "Massless D-branes on Calabi-Yau threefolds and monodromy," Commun. Math. Phys. **259**, 45 (2005) [arXiv:hep-th/0209161].

[76] P. S. Aspinwall, "D-branes on Calabi-Yau manifolds," [arXiv:hep-th/0403166].

[77] T. Bridgeland, "Flops and derived categories," Invent. Math. **147**, 3 (2002) 613 [arXiv:math.AG/0009053].

[78] Y. Kawamata, "Log Crepant Birational Maps and Derived Categories," [arXiv:math.AG/0311139].

[79] D. E. Diaconescu and M. R. Douglas, "D-branes on stringy Calabi-Yau manifolds," arXiv:hep-th/0006224.

[80] S. Govindarajan and T. Jayaraman, "D-branes, exceptional sheaves and quivers on Calabi-Yau manifolds: From Mukai to McKay," Nucl. Phys. B **600** (2001) 457 [arXiv:hep-th/0010196];
P. Mayr, "Phases of supersymmetric D-branes on Kaehler manifolds and the McKay correspondence," JHEP **0101** (2001) 018 [arXiv:hep-th/0010223];
T. Takayanagi, "Holomorphic tachyons and fractional D-branes," Nucl. Phys. B **603** (2001) 259 [arXiv:hep-th/0103021]; "Tachyon condensation on orbifolds and McKay correspondence," Phys. Lett. B **519** (2001) 137 [arXiv:hep-th/0106142].

[81] Y. Ito and H. Nakajima, "McKay correspondence and Hilbert schemes in dimension three," Topology 39 (2000) 1155–1191.

[82] R. Hartshorne, *Algebraic Geometry*, (Springer, 1977).

[83] J.-P. Serre, "Faisceaux algébriques cohérents," Ann. Math. **61** (1955) 197–278.

[84] D. A. Cox, "The homogeneous coordinate ring of a toric variet," J. Alg. Geo. **4** (1995) 17–50.

[85] M. M. Kapranov, "On the derived categories of coherent sheaves on some homogeneous spaces," Invent. Math. **92** 479 (1988), no. 3.

[86] A. A. Beilinson, "Coherent sheaves on P^n and problems in linear algebra," Funktsional. Anal. i Prilozhen. **12**, 68 (1978), no. 3.

[87] A. Bondal, D. Orlov, "Derived categories of coherent sheaves," Proceedings of the International Congress of Mathematicians, Vol. II (Beijing, 2002), 47–56, Higher Ed. Press, Beijing, 2002. [arXiv:math/0206295]

[88] M. van den Bergh, "Non-commutative crepant resolutions," in "The legacy of Niels Henrik Abel," 749–770, Springer, Berlin, 2004, [arXiv:math/0211064].

[89] L. Hille and M. Perling, "A counterexample to King's conjecture", arXiv:math/0602258; Composito Math. **142** (2006) 1507–1521.

[90] A. King, "Tilting bundles on some rational surfaces", preprint (1997).

[91] M. M. Kapranov, "On the derived category of coherent sheaves on Grassmann manifolds," Math. USSR. Izv. **24** 183 (1985), no. 1.

[92] M. Artin, J. J. Zhang, "Noncommutative projective schemes," Adv. Math. **109** 228 (1994), no. 2.

[93] L. L. Avramov, R. O. Buchweitz, "Homological algebra modulo a regular sequence with special attention to codimension two," J. Algebra, **230(1)**, 24 (2000).

[94] J. Shamash, "The Poincare series of a local ring," J. Algebra **12** 453 (1969).

[95] L. L. Avramov, D. R. Grayson, "Resolutions and cohomology over complete intersections," in "Computations in algebraic geometry with Macaulay 2," 131–178, Algorithms Comput. Math., 8, Springer, Berlin, 2002.

[96] A. Recknagel, "Permutation branes," JHEP **0304** (2003) 041 [arXiv:hep-th/0208119].

[97] S. K. Ashok, E. Dell'Aquila, D. E. Diaconescu and B. Florea, "Obstructed D-branes in Landau-Ginzburg orbifolds," Adv. Theor. Math. Phys. **8**, 427 (2004) [arXiv:hep-th/0404167].

[98] I. Brunner and M. R. Gaberdiel, "Matrix factorisations and permutation branes," JHEP **0507**, 012 (2005) [arXiv:hep-th/0503207].

[99] H. Jockers, "D-brane monodromies from a matrix-factorization perspective," JHEP **0702**, 006 (2007) [arXiv:hep-th/0612095].

[100] Y. Yoshino, *Cohen-Macaulay Modules over Cohen-Macaulay Rings*, London Mathematical Society Lecture Note Series **146** (Cambridge Univ. Press, 1990).

[101] D. O. Orlov, "Triangulated categories of singularities and D-branes in Landau-Ginzburg models," Proc. Steklov Inst. Math. **246** (2004) 227-249; arXiv:math/0302304.

E-mail addresses:
`manfred.herbst@cern.ch`, `hori@physics.utoronto.ca`, `d.c.page@gmail.com`